

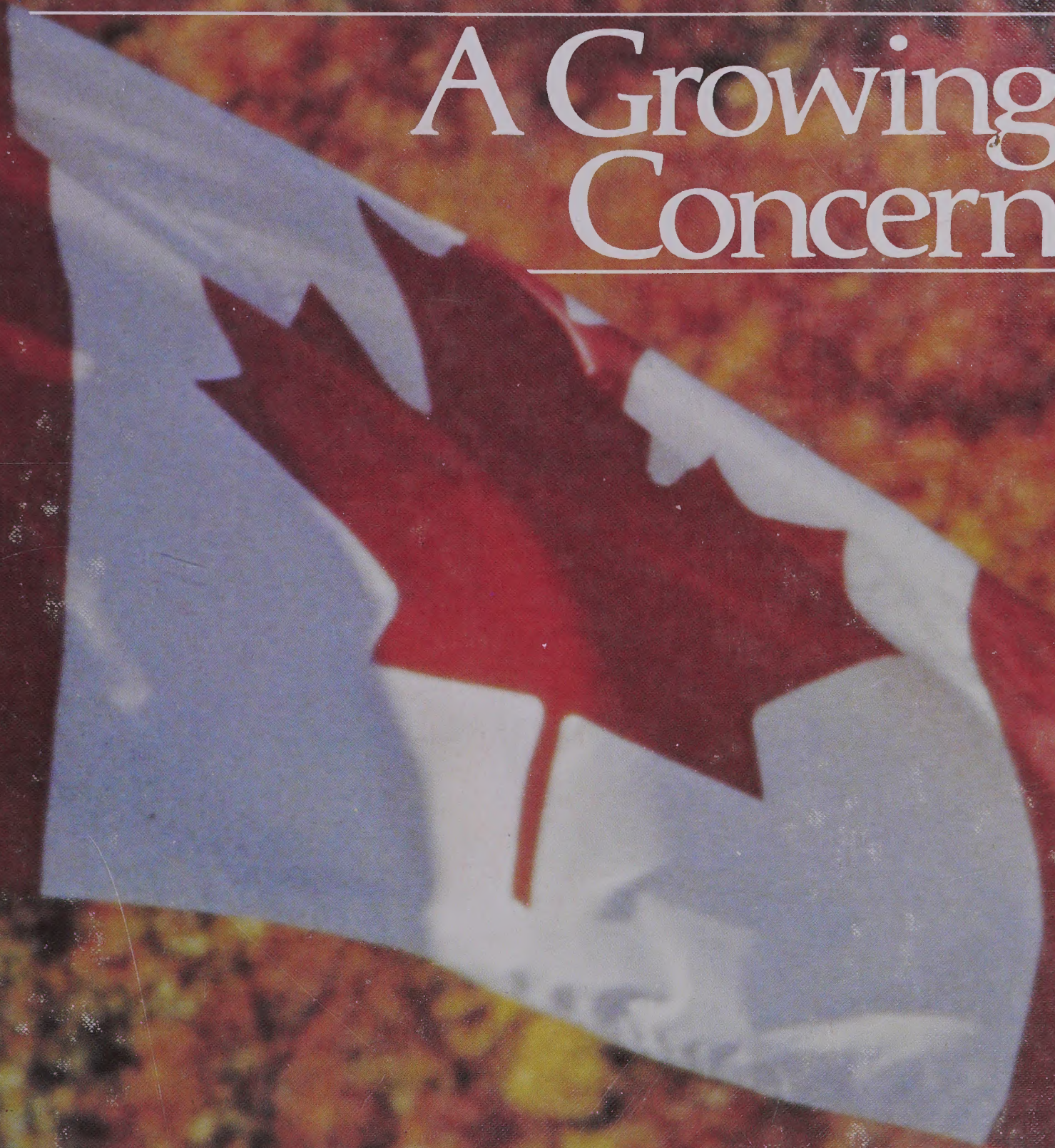
University Of Alberta



0 0001 13027 26

# CANADA:

## A Growing Concern



ALLAN HUX

FRED JARMAN





# Heritage Fund

The purchase of this material was made possible through an Alberta Advanced Education and Manpower Library Development Grant from the Alberta Heritage Savings Trust Fund.







# CANADA: A Growing Concern



# CANADA:

---



The Canada Studies Foundation

La Fondation d'Études du Canada

A curriculum development project, funded by the Royal Canadian Legion and sponsored by the Canada Studies Foundation, provided the impetus for this book.



# A Growing Concern

ALLAN D. HUX

FREDERICK E. JARMAN

WEST TORONTO SECONDARY SCHOOL

TORONTO



GLOBE/MODERN CURRICULUM PRESS

TORONTO



The authors would like to thank the Canada Studies Foundation and the Royal Canadian Legion for their support. The authors would also like to thank the students and teachers in the history department at West Toronto Secondary School. Their interest and ideas inspired us as teachers and as writers.

Note to Students and Teachers: *Canada: A Growing Concern* tells Canada's story from 1867 to 1980. The story of Canada is one of growth—of governments, of laws, of the economy, and of culture. It is also the story of challenges—from geographical differences, from regional language rivalries, and from world issues. Case studies, documents, and biographies introduce these concerns. Photographs, cartoons, and maps supplement the key ideas which are explained simply in the text. New terms are presented in bold face type and defined when they are used first. We believe that you will find *Canada: A Growing Concern* interesting to look through and easy to read.



*indicates a biographical study*



*indicates a fictional study*

Allan Hux and Fred Jarman

© Copyright 1981 by Globe/Modern Curriculum Press

All Rights Reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording or any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

#### Canadian Cataloguing in Publication Data

Hux, Allan, 1948 —  
Canada: A Growing Concern

Includes index.  
ISBN 0-88996-043-3

1. Canada—History. I. Jarman, Frederick E., 1945 —  
II. Title

FC170.H89 971.05 C81-094139-2  
F1033.H89

Printed and bound in Canada

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA



# CONTENTS

## UNIT ONE BUILDING A COUNTRY, 1867-1911

### CHAPTER ONE The Causes of Confederation

- When Did Canada Become A Country? 8
- What Was Canada Before Confederation? 8
- Why Was Britain Becoming Tired of the B.N.A. Colonies? 9
- How Did the U.S.A. Push the Colonies to Unite? 10
- Why Did Some People in the Colonies Want Confederation? 11

### CHAPTER TWO The Events That Led to Confederation

- Brown, Macdonald and Cartier Work Together 18
- The Charlottetown Conference 18
- The Quebec Conference 19
- What Did the People Think of Confederation? 20
- What Plan Was Finally Adopted for the New Country? 23

### CHAPTER THREE The Expansion of Canada, 1867-1878

- Canada's First Prime Minister 30
- Discontent in Nova Scotia 30
- Rebellion in the West 30
- British Columbia Joins Confederation 32
- Prince Edward Island Joins Confederation 33
- Opening the West 34
- The Pacific Scandal 34
- Alexander Mackenzie Forms a Cabinet 35
- Political Changes 37
- Economic Plans 37

### CHAPTER FOUR The National Policy

- What Was Macdonald's Plan? 42
- The Tariff 44
- The Railway 44
- Settlement of the West 47
- Conclusion 48

### CHAPTER FIVE Opposition to the National Policy

- Why Did Some Métis and Indians Rebel in 1885? 52

- Why Did Some Provinces Dislike Macdonald's National Policy? 58
- What Did Laurier and the Liberals Want Instead of the National Policy? 60
- What Did the Majority of Canadians Think About the National Policy? 61

### CHAPTER SIX Unrest and Prosperity Under Laurier

- Conservative Troubles 66
- The Manitoba Schools Question 66
- The Election of 1896 68
- Why Did Canada Become Prosperous Under Laurier's Government? 69
- Prosperity At Last 77
- Foreign Investment in Canada 78
- Prosperity, but... 78

### CHAPTER SEVEN Canada and the World, 1867-1911

- Who Controlled Canada's Relations with Other Countries After Confederation? 83
- Why Did Britain's Attitude Toward the Empire Change? 83
- How Did Britain Plan to Strengthen the Empire? 84
- How Did Canada React to British Requests for Help? 86
- What Were Canada's Relations with the U.S.A. up to 1911? 88
- Why Did Laurier Lose the Election of 1911? 90

## UNIT TWO CANADA CONFRONTS THE WORLD, 1911-1945

### CHAPTER EIGHT Canada in World War I

- What Were the Causes of World War I? 94
- How Was the War Fought? 96
- How Did Canadians At Home Help Win the War? 99
- Why Was There A Conscription Crisis in Canada? 104
- How Was Peace Restored? 109

### CHAPTER NINE Picking Up the Pieces, 1919-1929

- Why Were Many Canadians Unhappy and How Did They Protest? 115
- How Did Canadians Enjoy the 1920's? 120
- Prohibition 127



Women 128  
Influence of the United States 129

## **CHAPTER TEN The Great Depression**

What Caused the Great Depression? 133  
What Did the Canadian Government Do to  
Solve the Depression? 137  
How Did Canadians Live During the Great  
Depression? 140  
How Did The Politicians Promise To End The  
Great Depression? 145  
The 1935 Federal Election 149

## **CHAPTER ELEVEN World War II**

Why Was There A Second World War? 153  
How Was the War Fought? 162  
How Did Canadians At Home Help Win the  
War? 169  
Canadian Culture During World War II 170  
Why Was There A Conscription Crisis in  
Canada During World War II? 171  
How Was Peace Restored? 174

## **UNIT THREE MODERN CANADIAN CONCERNS, 1945-PRESENT**

### **CHAPTER TWELVE Canada and the World**

The Cold War 187  
NATO 188  
The Korean War 189  
The Suez Crisis 190  
The British Commonwealth of Nations 191  
Canada Greets the World 192  
China 194  
The Middle East 194  
Iran 196  
Afghanistan 197  
Canada and the Third World 199  
Refugees 200  
Conclusion 201

### **CHAPTER THIRTEEN Canada and the United States**

How Has the U.S.A. Shaped Canada's Defence  
Plans? 207  
How Does Canada's Economy Depend on the  
U.S.A.? 214  
Co-operation Between the U.S.A. and  
Canada 220

How Does American Culture Affect  
Canadians? 221

## **CHAPTER FOURTEEN Political Leaders in Canada, 1945-1981**

The Liberals in Power 229  
Newfoundland Joins Canada 232  
The Pipeline Debate 232  
The Diefenbaker Years 233  
Five Years With Lester Pearson 236  
Pierre Trudeau and Canada 242

## **CHAPTER FIFTEEN French Canadians in Canada**

Why Have Some French Canadians Become  
Separatists? 256  
How Do French Canadians Outside Quebec  
Feel About Canada? 269  
Conclusion 272

## **CHAPTER SIXTEEN Canadian Culture— What Is It?**

The Influence of Canada's Geography on  
Canadians 278  
Canadians Are Immigrants 278  
The American Influence on Canadians 279  
Radio and Television 279  
Sports 281  
The Performing Arts 284  
Literary and Visual Arts 287  
Humour 290

## **UNIT FOUR GOVERNMENT AND LAW**

### **CHAPTER SEVENTEEN Government and Law**

Rules 296  
Laws 296  
Values 296  
Issues, Pressure Groups, and  
Compromises 297  
The Canadian Bill of Rights 297  
How Does the Canadian Government  
Work? 297  
The Citizen and Politics 309  
What Political Parties Are In Canada? 313  
The Citizen and the Government 315  
The Citizen and the Law 319

**INDEX 332**

**ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS 336**



# UNIT ONE

## Building a Country

### 1867-1911





# CHAPTER ONE

## The Causes of Confederation

AIM: Why Did Canada Become a Country?

### When Did Canada Become a Country?

1. At one minute past midnight on July 1, 1867, a new country called Canada was born. In Ottawa, the capital of Canada, guns went off and bonfires were lit. People cheered and waved flags to celebrate the birth of their country; they were at a big birthday party.

2. The birth of Canada is called **Confederation** (a joining together). Every year, on July 1, Canadians celebrate the birthday of their country. This holiday is now called Canada Day. How old is Canada today?

### What Was Canada Before Confederation?

3. Before Confederation, Canada was a number of **colonies** owned by Britain. A colony is an area of land owned and run by another country. Colonies are similar to children who must listen to and obey their parents. The country which has colonies is sometimes called a “mother-country”. A mother-country must look after its colonies. A mother-country and the colonies it owns are called an **Empire**.

4. The name given to all the colonies owned by Britain in North America showed that Britain owned them. They were called the British North America colonies. Confederation brought together only some of the colonies—only the colonies of Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick agreed to join together.

5. Each of the British North America colonies had an **Assembly** (which was part of the government), elected by the people. The Assembly only made decisions on matters and problems that directly concerned the people, like road-building and raising taxes. These were called local concerns. Britain did not want to be bothered with these everyday decisions. However, Britain did control colonial governments by choosing a **Governor** for each colony, who represented the British government. The Governor had the right to refuse any law suggested by the Assembly. This shows the control a mother-country had over a colony.



BRITAIN AND SOME OF  
HER COLONIES

## Why Was Britain Becoming Tired of the B.N.A. Colonies?

6. In 1867, Victoria was Queen of Britain and of all the British colonies of the world called the British Empire. Elizabeth II, the present Queen of Canada, is Victoria's great great granddaughter. At this time, Britain was the richest and strongest country in the world. Britain was rich because it had huge industries such as iron, cloth, and ship-building. The factories of these industries used the best **technology**. This means that they had the best methods and machines which produced goods at the cheapest prices.

7. In the beginning, Britain made its colonies sell their raw materials such as grain, fish, wood, and minerals to Britain. In return, the colonies had to buy British factory goods. A tax called a **tariff** was put on goods from other countries. Since this tariff raised the cost of goods from other countries, the trade between Britain and its colonies was protected. As industries grew, the British factory owners demanded cheaper raw materials so that they could sell their goods at even cheaper prices. This would mean that more people could buy their goods. The factory owners wanted the British government to remove the tariffs protecting the colonies. As a result, Britain adopted **Free Trade** between 1846 and 1849. This meant that goods from anywhere in the world came into Britain and were not taxed. Without the tariff, the factory owners bought the cheapest raw materials available. The colonies lost the trade protection they once had.



THE COLONIES ARE TOO EXPENSIVE



#### British North America colonies

Canada East  
Canada West  
Newfoundland  
Nova Scotia  
New Brunswick  
Prince Edward Island  
British Columbia  
Vancouver Island

8. Free trade in Britain hurt the economies of the colonies. Many people living in the British North America colonies believed that they would have to start relying on themselves. The people thought that Britain had deserted them.

9. Britain also wanted the colonies to help pay for their own defence. Britain was tired of paying for soldiers, ships, and government workers to take care of the colonies. Again, the people living in the colonies felt that Britain was turning its back on them.

10. The idea began to grow that the colonies should work more closely together and trade with each other.

#### How Did the U.S.A. Push the Colonies to Unite?

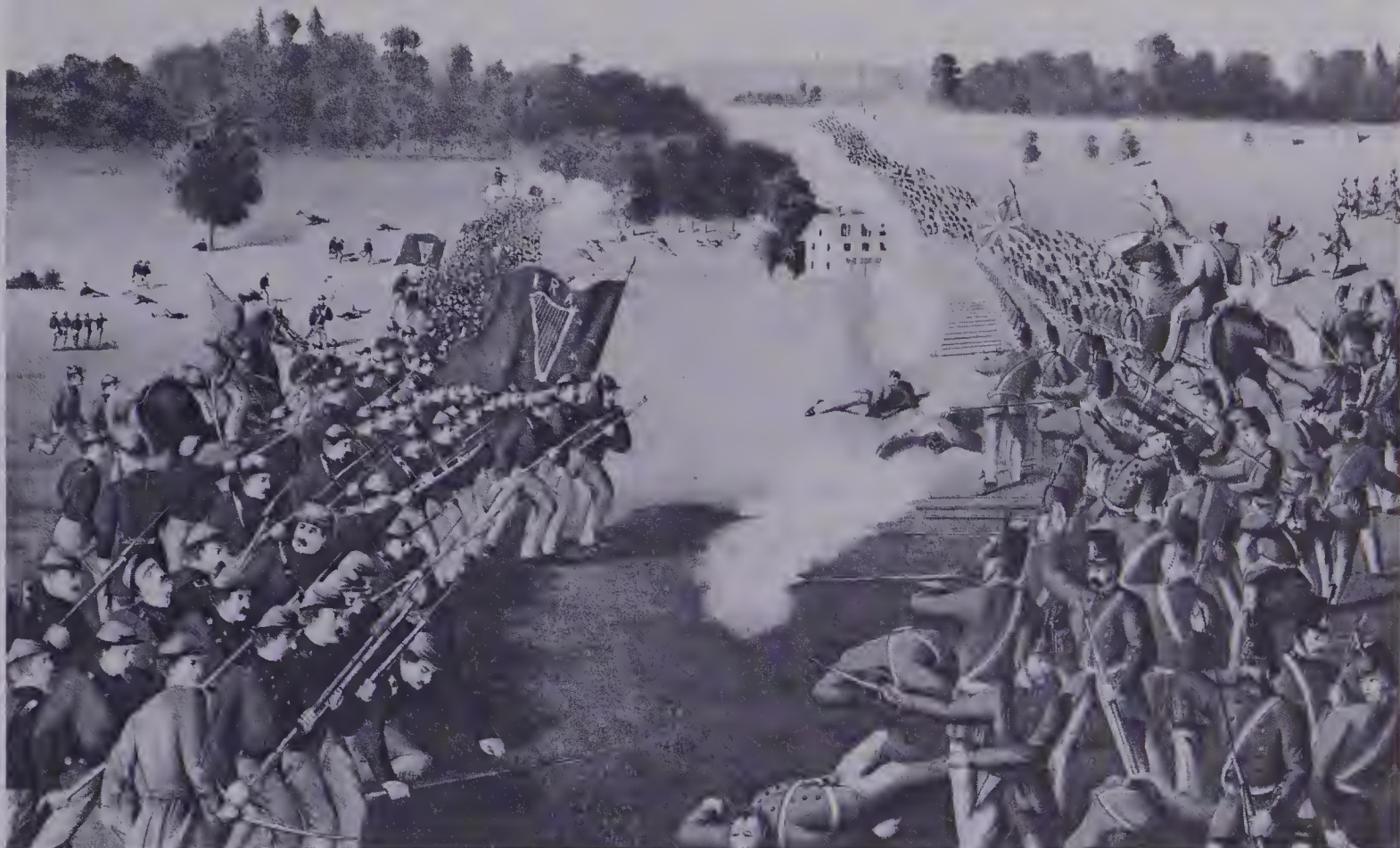
11. When the British North America colonies lost their customers in Britain, they began to depend more on the U.S.A. In 1854, a trade agreement called the Reciprocity Treaty was made. **Reciprocity** means free trade between countries. The British North America colonies were able to sell their raw materials to the U.S.A. without having to pay tariffs. The colonies prospered; people had jobs and made money.

12. However, the Civil War in the U.S.A. changed this situation. Between 1861 and 1865, the northern states and the southern states fought a bloody war. An important cause of the war was slavery. The South wanted slaves to grow cotton to sell it at a low price to Britain and its factories. The North was against slavery.

13. Britain liked the South because of the rich trade between the two. Britain did not send troops to help the South, but it did sell ships to the South that were used to fight the North. One ship, the "Alabama", captured and sank many of the North's ships. This made the North blame Britain for supporting the South. When the North won the war, it thought of revenge on Britain. Britain had the strongest navy in the world and was too far away to attack. However, at the end of the Civil War, the Americans had the largest army in the world and started to make threats against the British North America colonies. They demanded that Britain give them *all* the colonies as payment for the ships the North had lost in the war!

14. Britain sent 15 000 troops to the colonies at great cost. At the same time, Britain encouraged the colonies to come closer together to defend themselves.

15. Some Americans were actually attacking the colonies. The Fenians, a group of Irish Americans, wanted to free Ireland from Britain and make Ireland an independent country. The Fenians wanted to capture the colonies and hold them for ransom. They thought they could trade the captured colonies for Ireland! The Fenian attacks on the colonies of New Brunswick and Canada



*A Fenian charge, June 2, 1866*

convinced many people that the colonies would have to unite to defeat the Fenians.

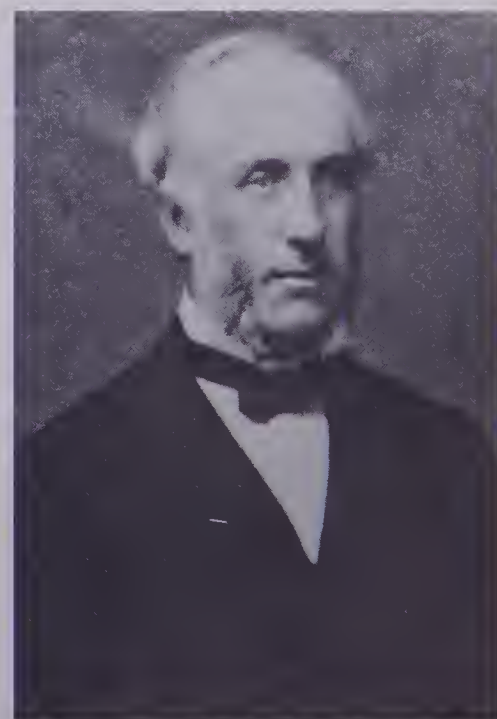
### Why Did Some People in the Colonies Want Confederation?

16. The colony of Canada was made up of two parts—Canada East (Quebec) and Canada West (Ontario). The voters who lived in Canada East and Canada West elected the same number of **representatives** to the Assembly for the colony. A representative is someone who acts for others.

17. The fact that both had the same number of representatives would appear to be fair since there were two parts to the colony. However, Canada West had about 250 000 more people than Canada East in 1861. People in Canada West called **Reformers** (those who want change) wanted more representatives than Canada East. They argued that each representative elected to the Assembly should represent the same number of voters. They called this **Representation by Population**. If “Rep by Pop” was put into effect, then Canada West would have more representatives than Canada East since it had more voters.

18. The leader of the Reformers in Canada West was George Brown. He said that the French-speaking Canadians in Canada East were unfair to English-speaking Canadians in Canada West by not agreeing to representation by population. As well as wanting rep by pop, he wanted to expand settlement to the West before the Americans took it over. He wanted to raise money to send settlers to the West and to buy more farmland.

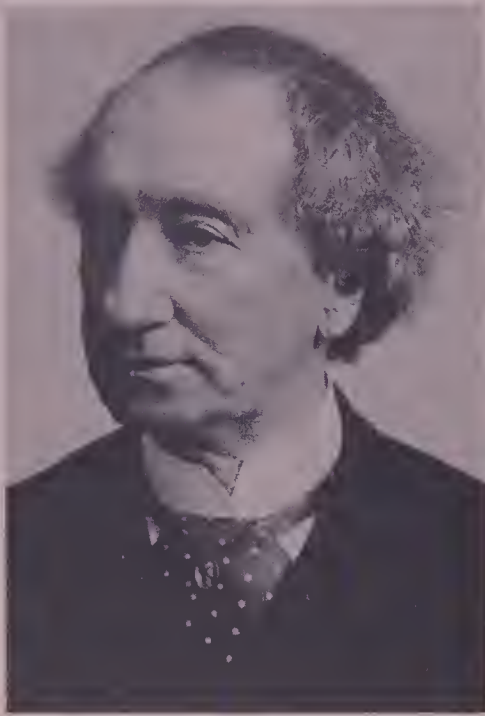
*George Brown*







**John A. Macdonald**



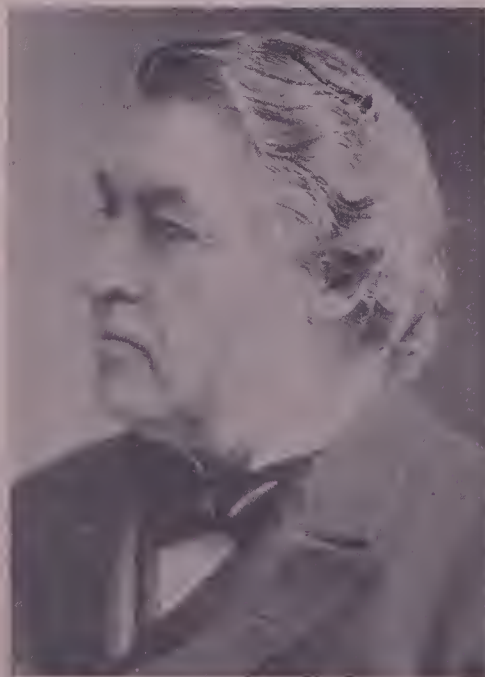
John A. Macdonald moved from Scotland to Kingston, Upper Canada, in 1820 when he was five years old. His mother made sure that he received a good education in pioneer Upper Canada. At the age of fourteen, he began working in a law office and started his own law office when he was twenty-one. He was a good-natured man and a great story teller.

He married Isabelle Clark in 1843 and she had two sons. Isabelle was very ill through much of their marriage and died in 1858. John A. had to spend a lot of time away from home as a member of the Assembly for Kingston, Canada West. In the years after Isabelle's death, John A. turned more to drinking to cover his personal loneliness and sorrow. In 1867, he married his second wife, Agnes. They had a daughter, Mary, who was physically handicapped and had to use a wheelchair most of her life.

John A. led the colony of Canada East and West into Confederation and was Canada's first Prime Minister from 1867 to 1873. In 1873, Macdonald was forced to resign after receiving campaign funds from Hugh Allan who had been given a contract to build a Pacific railway. This was known as the Pacific Scandal. However, John A. was elected Prime Minister a second time in 1878 when he promised a "National Policy". Macdonald won three more elections and served as Prime Minister until his death, June 6, 1891 at the age of 76.



**Charles Tupper**



Charles Tupper was born in Nova Scotia in 1821. He studied medicine at Edinburgh University and graduated as a doctor and surgeon in 1843. In 1846, he married Frances Amelia Morse. Dr. Tupper was the first President of the Canadian Medical Association, formed in 1867.

Tupper was elected to the Nova Scotia Assembly in 1855 when he defeated Joseph Howe, leader of the Reform Party. Tupper was a great debater, a forceful speaker, and a hard worker. He became leader of the Nova Scotia Conservative Party and Premier in 1864. Tupper was a strong supporter of Confederation and the main force leading Nova Scotia into Canada. Tupper worked in a number of John A. Macdonald's Cabinets. He was the Minister of Railways and Canals during the building of the C.P.R. He served as the Canadian High Commissioner (ambassador) to Great Britain between 1884 and 1896. He became leader of the Conservative Party and Prime Minister in 1896, but lost the election of 1896 to Wilfrid Laurier.

Tupper was a loud-talking, aggressive man. He could shout down his political opponents and hammer home his points. He approached everything in life with energy. He died in England in 1915 at the ripe old age of 94.



Cartier was born in Lower Canada (later Canada East and then Quebec) in 1814. He studied law in Montreal and became a lawyer in 1835. As a young man, he fought with Papineau in the Rebellion of 1837. He fled briefly to the United States when the rebels were defeated. He married Hortense Fabre in 1846 and they had three daughters.

After his brief efforts as a rebel, Cartier quickly became involved in politics and business in Montreal. He was first elected to the Legislative Assembly in 1848 and became leader of the Parti Bleu in 1857. At the same time, Cartier served as the chief lawyer for the Grand Trunk Railway, probably the largest company in the colony. Cartier formed a series of governments with Macdonald and was the chief French Canadian supporter of Confederation. After Confederation, Cartier was the second most powerful man in the Conservative government, behind John A. Macdonald. Cartier played a leading role in the settling of the first Riel Rebellion, in the creation of the province of Manitoba (1870), and in the joining of British Columbia with Canada (1871). He died in 1873, ending one of the greatest political partnerships in Canadian history.

Cartier was a loud, jovial man. He was a party-goer, dancer, and singer. At the same time, he was a deeply religious man who had studied under the Sulpician Order of priests in his youth. As a political leader, he co-operated with the Roman Catholic Bishops in Quebec in public affairs. He worked very hard to protect French Canadian and Catholic interests in a North America dominated by English-speaking people.



George-Etienne Cartier

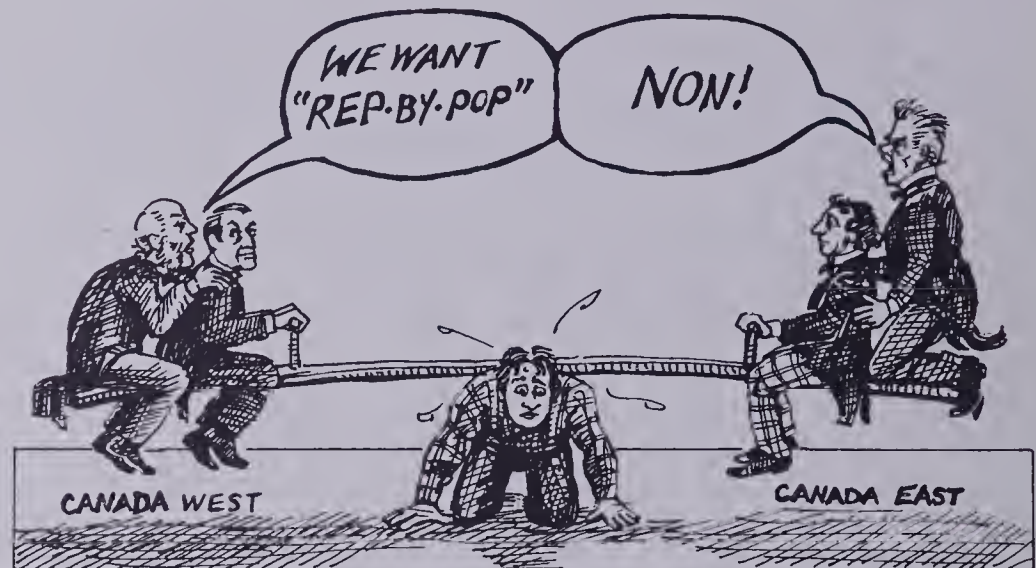


19. The Parti Rouge was a small group of elected representatives from Canada East. Led by A.A. Dorion, the Parti Rouge generally supported the Reformers of Canada West in the Assembly.

20. John A. Macdonald was the leader of the **Conservatives** in Canada West. Conservatives are people who do not want very much change. George-Etienne Cartier led the Parti Bleu in Canada East. Both leaders wanted more railroads built. They were also united in their opposition to representation by population. They believed that Brown wanted rep by pop to pass laws against the French-speaking people of Canada East. French-speaking people feared that they would lose their language, Roman Catholic religion, and culture, and would be **assimilated**. To be assimilated means to lose one's culture and beliefs and to adopt the culture and beliefs of another group.



21. In a number of elections, the Reformers and the Rouge elected about the same number of representatives to the Assembly as did the Bleus and the Conservatives. This was bad for the colony of Canada because it became very difficult to pass a law. Since both sides voted against each other, a **deadlock** existed, and little could be done. Neither side could get laws passed.



DEADLOCK!

22. It soon became clear to many leaders that a new type of government was needed to break the deadlock. Brown agreed to join with Cartier and Macdonald in an attempt to unite the British North America colonies. They wanted to create a new country with a better government.

23. Some people in the colony of Nova Scotia began to support Confederation when the Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. ended in January, 1866. The U.S.A. had ended the treaty because it was angry with British interference in the Civil War. When the treaty ended, Nova Scotia could not sell its fish and lumber in the U.S.A.; shippers and shipbuilders lost a lot of business and money.

24. The leader of Nova Scotia, Charles Tupper, supported the idea that Nova Scotia join with the other colonies and trade with them. He also supported the idea that a railroad be built to connect the colonies. It would allow the colonies to trade more easily with each other. This railroad was to be called the Intercolonial Railway.

25. Some people in New Brunswick also wanted Confederation. They thought that trading with Canada would help to make up for the lost trade with the U.S.A. Samuel Tilley led the people in New Brunswick who supported Confederation. The number of people who supported Confederation increased when the Fenians started to attack New Brunswick. They hoped that the union of the colonies would make the defence of New Brunswick much easier.



## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—10

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Confederation is
  - (a) celebrated on July 1 by Canadians
  - (b) a joining together
  - (c) the birth of the country of Canada
  - (d) all of the above
2. Colonies are
  - (a) areas of land that are owned and controlled by another country
  - (b) disobedient children
  - (c) owned by Canada but have some control over their own affairs
  - (d) all of the above
3. An Empire is
  - (a) two or more independent countries
  - (b) a mother-country and its colonies
  - (c) several mother-countries
  - (d) all of the above
4. An Assembly is
  - (a) a road building company that builds roads with people's taxes
  - (b) another name for a gathering of very important people
  - (c) elected by the people to make certain decisions
  - (d) an unimportant part of the government
5. The Governor was
  - (a) the person who represented the British government in Britain
  - (b) the person who represented the Assembly
  - (c) elected by the people
  - (d) the person who represented the British government in a colony
6. Technology refers to
  - (a) training schools for boys
  - (b) machines and methods
  - (c) rich countries
  - (d) expensive goods
7. A tariff is a
  - (a) tax on a person's income
  - (b) tax on goods coming into a country
  - (c) tax on goods leaving a country
  - (d) grant of money given to factory workers

8. Free trade means that
  - (a) no country has to pay tariffs on goods going into another country
  - (b) colonies do not pay tariffs on goods going into the mother-country
  - (c) two countries have an agreement not to pay tariffs on each other's goods
  - (d) there are high tariffs on goods to protect the country's industries

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

9. Britain sent a Governor to the British North America colonies because
  - (a) the colonies only looked after local concerns
  - (b) Britain wanted to control the colonies
  - (c) many British government workers wanted to work in the colonies
  - (d) the colonies asked for a British representative
10. In the 1840's, Britain was the richest and strongest country in the world because
  - (a) factory owners were paying large taxes
  - (b) the colonies supplied Britain with raw materials
  - (c) its large industries used the best technology
  - (d) the navy was so well organized

#### Question

11. Why did the colonies suffer when Britain adopted a policy of free trade?

### Paragraphs 11—15

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Reciprocity means
  - (a) Canada is not able to send its raw materials into the U.S.A. without having to pay tariffs
  - (b) there is trade between two countries
  - (c) free trade between countries
  - (d) all of the above



## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

- The Americans threatened to attack the British North America colonies because
  - they wanted more land
  - they were angry with British interference in the American Civil War
  - the American army wanted to continue fighting
  - they wanted to bring back the slaves who had escaped to the B.N.A. colonies during the Civil War

## Questions

- Why did Britain support the South in the Civil War?
- What was the reason for the Fenian attacks on the British North America colonies?

## Paragraphs 16—25

## Knowing the People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- George Brown —leader of Conservatives in Canada West
- A.A. Dorion —leader of Parti Bleu
- John A. Macdonald —British representative in Canada East
- George-Etienne Cartier —leader of Reformers in Canada West
- Charles Tupper —political leader from New Brunswick
- Samuel Tilley —Parti Rouge leader  
—the American who signed the Reciprocity Treaty  
—Nova Scotian politician

## Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

- Representatives are
  - voters in Canada East and Canada West
  - people who act for others
  - people who know they are acting wisely
  - all of the above
- Reformers were
  - people who wanted change
  - the only ones to be elected to the Assembly
  - against rep by pop
  - all of the above

- Representation by Population means that
  - French Canadians are assimilated
  - elected representatives must follow the wishes of the voters
  - each member of the Assembly represents the same number of voters
  - every person in the population has the right to vote
- A Conservative is someone who
  - believes in lots of change
  - does not want very much change
  - is opposed to any change
  - wants to destroy society
- A group of people is assimilated when
  - they make a trade agreement with another group
  - there is a deadlock in the government because the members are evenly divided in their opinions on an issue
  - they lose their own culture and beliefs and adopt the culture and beliefs of another group
  - they move to another colony
- A deadlock exists when
  - a key cannot be found to open a lock
  - one side gets its own way
  - neither side gets its own way and nothing is accomplished
  - all of the above

## Knowing Why

Answer these questions in your notebook.

- Why did the people of Canada West want representation by population?
- Why were the leaders in Canada East opposed to representation by population?
- What events occurred in New Brunswick and Nova Scotia that convinced many people that Confederation was a good idea? Explain.

## Question

- Why did the deadlock occur in the government of the colony of Canada?

## USING SOURCES

Read the following excerpt from a speech made by George Brown in 1865 and then answer the questions.

“Something must be done. We cannot stand still. ... I am in favour of a union of the British North America colonies because it will raise us from ... a number of [small] colonies into a great and powerful people. ... The British government



approves of it. ... I go heartily for the union ... it gives representation according to numbers ... It will throw down the barriers of trade and give us ... a market of four million people ... It will enable us to meet the [end] of the American Reciprocity Treaty without alarm. ... In the event of war, it will enable all the colonies to defend themselves better. ... The Americans are now a warlike people. They have large armies, a powerful navy, an unlimited supply of warlike [materials]."

1. Why was it necessary for Britain to approve of the union?
2. Why did George Brown and the Reformers of Canada West want "representation according to numbers"?
3. What threatened to cut the trade of the colonies?
4. Why did the colonies have to plan for their own defence?
5. What future did Brown see for a united country?

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Understanding A Cartoon

After examining this cartoon, list the reasons for Confederation in your notebook.

### Making A Chart

In your notebook, make a chart that lists the following political leaders, gives their political party, and states their attitude to a political problem.

George Brown	John A. Macdonald
G.E. Cartier	A.A. Dorion

### EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

You are a militia officer in a British North America colony. You have just been assigned to defending the border against a Fenian attack. Write an explanation to your family for your sudden departure.

THE CAUSES OF CONFEDERATION





## CHAPTER TWO

# The Events That Led To Confederation

AIM: How Did Canada Become a Country?

### Brown, Macdonald, and Cartier Work Together

1. George Brown had never liked John A. Macdonald and never spoke to him outside the Assembly. He was also suspicious of George-Etienne Cartier and his French Roman Catholic supporters. However, the deadlock in the government of the colony of Canada finally persuaded Brown; a new type of government was needed to break the deadlock. He decided that a union of the British North America colonies into a single country was one way in which to break the deadlock. In 1864, he overcame his personal dislikes and suspicions and joined together with his old enemies in a **coalition** government. He hoped that by working together, Confederation could be achieved. In the end, George Brown managed to convince most of the Reformers to go along with the new government's plan for Confederation.

2. Brown, Macdonald, and Cartier argued that Confederation would bring a great many benefits to the people. A united country would be much richer and stronger than the separated colonies. There would be one army to defend Canada from an attack. One country called Canada would be more important than several separate colonies. The different parts of the new country would be able to trade freely with each other and would not have to depend on foreign countries. A united country would be able to build more railroads and canals. It could send settlers to the West to claim this land for Canada. George Brown's decision to join with his opponents to support Confederation meant that a first step had been taken to achieve a new type of government for Canada. What would happen next?

### The Charlottetown Conference

3. At the same time, in 1864, the political leaders of Prince Edward Island, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick (the Maritime colonies) were planning a meeting at Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island. The British government had suggested that they discuss the joining of their colonies into a Maritime union. This was the chance the Canadian politicians had been waiting for!



BROWN JOINS THE COALITION

They asked to be invited to attend the Charlottetown Conference. Their request was accepted.

4. On August 29, 1864, the representatives of Canada left Quebec City on a steamer called the “Queen Victoria”. John A. Macdonald, George-Etienne Cartier, and George Brown were among those who went. They went with the hope that they could convince the Maritime delegates to join with them to form a great new country.

5. The Maritime delegates listened to the Canadians for four days. They were so impressed by what they heard that they agreed to give up the idea of Maritime union. They also agreed to attend a meeting at Quebec City in October, 1864. At this meeting, they would discuss the idea of a federation of British North America colonies.

### The Quebec Conference

6. Thirty-three delegates attended the Quebec Conference—twelve came from Canada, seven from New Brunswick, five from Nova Scotia, seven from Prince Edward Island, and two from Newfoundland. No representatives came from the far-away colony of British Columbia.

7. The delegates worked for eighteen days presenting ideas for their plan to create a new country. There were many disagreements. These had to be settled before a final plan could be agreed upon.

8. John A. Macdonald wanted the new country to have a type of government called a **legislative union**. This type of government would have one strong government that would make laws for the entire country. Macdonald argued that a **federal union**, where there were two or more levels of government, could produce problems. Macdonald feared that the creation of several separate local governments and a national government, could lead to a civil war. Macdonald pointed to the American Civil War where many thousands of Americans had died. Perhaps one day a province might fight a civil war against the national government. If there was only one government, this would never occur. Macdonald also thought that one strong government would be able to do more for the people in the new country of Canada.

9. Macdonald was opposed by his friend and ally, Cartier. Cartier refused to accept the idea of a legislative union for Canada. He wanted a federal union. He wanted the central government or federal government to make laws for the entire country on subjects like trade and defence. These concerned all Canadians. However, he also wanted the provincial governments to make their own laws on subjects like education and local concerns—the issues that only concerned people living in those provinces. If there was no provincial government for Quebec, he feared that

Province would be the new name for a colony.



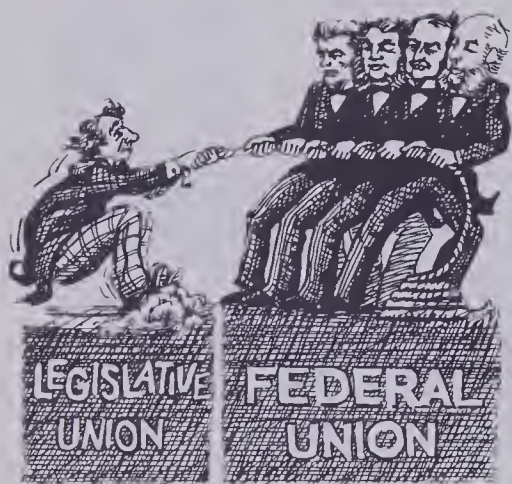
French Canadians would be assimilated by the English Canadians. The French Canadians would be a **minority** (less than half) in Canada and would have fewer elected representatives than the English Canadians. These representatives might pass laws that would be against the French Canadians.

10. Macdonald's idea of a legislative union was also opposed by Brown. Brown realized that French Canada would never accept representation by population unless it had control over its own education. Brown was still insisting on rep by pop which helps to explain why he supported the idea of a federal union for Canada.

11. Charles Tupper from Nova Scotia supported the idea of a federal union. He thought that Canada was too big a country to be properly run by only one government. However, he thought that the federal government should have most of the power and be very strong. The governments for the provinces should be weak.

12. Samuel Tilley was also in favour of a federal union. He wanted a New Brunswick provincial government to control local affairs. He and many people in New Brunswick were afraid that they would lose their identity if there was only one government.

13. In the end, Macdonald agreed with the others. The Quebec Resolutions recommended that the new country be a federal union. There would be a federal or national government that would make certain laws for all Canadians. There would also be provincial governments to make certain laws for people living in those provinces. The Quebec Resolutions were to become the blueprint for the new country of Canada.



MACDONALD GIVES IN

### What Did the People Think of Confederation?

14. After the Quebec Conference, the politicians returned to the colonies to explain the proposals to the people. The Quebec Resolutions called for the creation of one country and for a federal system of government. The Resolutions created a lot of debate.

### Canada West

15. The people in Canada West gave the Resolutions the greatest support. Since there would be representation by population in the new national government, the people in Canada West would elect the greatest number of representatives to the federal government. The political deadlock would be ended. Canada West would no longer feel that the people of Canada East were telling them what to do. A united country would now be able to defend itself from the Fenian raids and any possible American attacks. The new country would expand and develop the West and keep it for Canada.

## Canada East

16. The people in Canada East were much more divided on the issue of Confederation. Cartier argued that it was better for Canada East to be in a federal union than by itself or as a part of the U.S.A. He stated that there would be benefits from an increase in trade and from a stronger defence against the Americans. A new province of Quebec would make laws on education and be able to keep the French Canadian way of life. Even though the French Canadians would be a minority in the new country, they would still have control over the matters that concerned them the most.

17. Arguing against Cartier was A.A. Dorion, the leader of the Rouges. He opposed the Quebec Resolutions. He thought that the federal government would be too strong. The first step toward the assimilation of the French Canadians would be taken. Dorion argued that union with the Maritimes would make it harder for the colony of Canada to defend itself. The long borders would leave Canada more open to an American attack. He believed that big businesses, like the Grand Trunk Railway, were the only groups that would benefit from Confederation. He wanted an election in Canada East to decide the question.

18. The Roman Catholic Church in Canada East supported the position of Cartier. It believed that the French Canadians would benefit from a federal union.

19. The split in French Canadian opinion was seen in the close vote by the Canada East representatives in the Assembly; twenty-two of the forty-eight French Canadian representatives voted against Confederation. Some people argue that French Canada would never have entered Confederation if Cartier had not worked so hard to convince French Canada to join.



*Antoine Aimé Dorion*

**Isidore:** I don't like it! Joining the other British North America colonies is a bad thing for French Canada. Have you not heard what Dorion says about it?

**M. Lagace:** But son! Cartier says it will be good for us. We will have our own provincial government and it will make laws for the French Canadians.

**Pierre:** But we are a minority in the federal government, papa. The English Canadians have more representatives. They will vote for laws that are against French Canada. They will try to assimilate us!

**Joseph:** Cartier says this will not happen. We will have control over our education, our property, and our culture. How could they take us over?



## Confederation: The Lagace Family's Reactions in Canada East, 1866



**M. Lagace:** And besides, we need the English Canadians to survive.

**Isidore:** How, papa?

**M. Lagace:** We need people to trade with. Who will buy our goods if we do not join the other colonies? Who will protect us from an American attack? Do you want to be part of the U.S.A? The Americans would surely assimilate us.

**Isidore:** Dorion says that if the British North America colonies unite, it will not make us safer. We will have to protect a wider area of land. Our armies cannot do it.

**Pierre:** I agree. I think that Cartier is trying to frighten us.

**Madame Lagace:** But the Church says that Cartier is right. It supports Confederation.

**Isidore:** Do not concern yourself with politics, maman. You cannot vote, so why worry about such things?

**Madame Lagace:** I am worried for my family. I think Confederation is a good idea. What harm can come from it?

**M. Lagace:** That's right. We will have more jobs and the young people will benefit from the trade between the colonies.

**Joseph:** And we will have Cartier and our French Canadian representatives in the federal parliament. We can also trust Macdonald and the English Canadian Conservatives. We have nothing to fear.

### Questions

1. Find two arguments against Confederation.
2. List the arguments offered in favour of Confederation.
3. What does Isidore's comment to his mother suggest about the position of women at this time?

### The Maritimes and Newfoundland

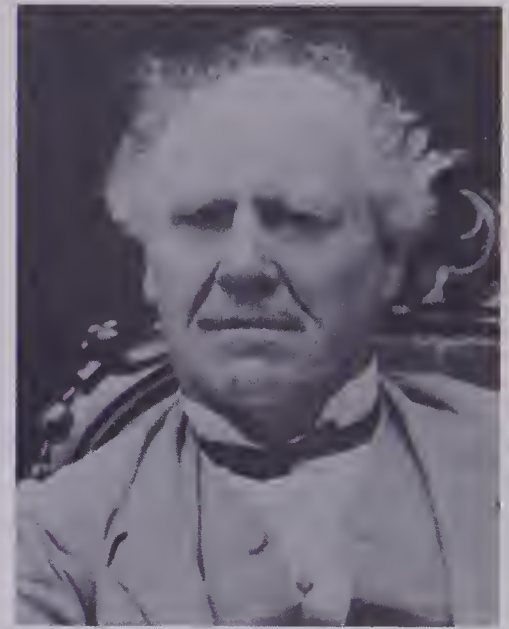
20. Opinion was also divided in the Maritime colonies and in Newfoundland. Prince Edward Island refused to join Confederation because it had such a small population. It believed it would have very little influence in a federal government, to which it would be able to elect only five representatives. Prince Edward Island wished to preserve its independence. Newfoundland refused to join because it was very loyal to Britain. Newfoundland also took great pride in its way of life and did not want any change.

21. The subject of Confederation caused a great uproar in Nova Scotia. Charles Tupper worked hard to convince his people to support Confederation. He pointed out that the Reciprocity

Treaty had ended and Confederation would allow for free trade with the other colonies. However, there were many opponents to Confederation in Nova Scotia.

22. Joseph Howe led these opponents to Confederation. He argued that Confederation would increase taxes and prices without improving defence. Nova Scotia would still have to rely on the British navy to defend it from the Americans. Howe argued that this foolish plan of Confederation would only remove Nova Scotia's independence. The feelings against Confederation were so strong in Nova Scotia that Tupper was afraid to call an election.

23. Opposition to Confederation also split the people of New Brunswick. In 1864, people in New Brunswick saw few benefits in Confederation. In 1865, Samuel Tilley called an election on the issue of Confederation. He was badly beaten and lost the election. It appeared that New Brunswick was not going to join Confederation. However, several events happened that changed public opinion. The loss of trade with the U.S.A., the Fenian attacks, and British pressure did result in the re-election of Samuel Tilley in 1866. New Brunswick was ready to join Confederation.



*Joseph Howe, who brought responsible government to Nova Scotia*

### **What Plan Was Finally Adopted for the New Country?**

24. The men who made up the Quebec Resolutions at Quebec City in 1864 are called the Fathers of Confederation. They worked hard to convince people that Confederation would succeed.

25. In 1866, sixteen of the Fathers of Confederation went to London, England to present their proposals for the new country to Britain. After all, Britain owned the British North America colonies. In order for Canada to become a country, a law had to be passed by the British government. The mother-country had to agree to turn its colonies into a country.

26. A British law, called the British North America Act, included most of the Quebec Resolutions. This British law came into effect on July 1, 1867 and created a new country called the Dominion of Canada.

27. The British North America Act is sometimes referred to as Canada's **constitution**. It created the country of Canada and gave Canada its system of government. The British parent was allowing the Canadian teenager to stand on its own for the first time. The colonies of Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick were now called the provinces of Quebec, Ontario, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick. A federal system of government was adopted for the new country. This meant that a central government would exist that was to be located in the capital city of Canada, Ottawa. A provincial government would also exist in each of the four provinces. There would be two levels of government.





## Confederation: A Lumberjack's View, New Brunswick, 1866



Tom Dillon was a farmer and a lumberjack. He had a small farm on the St. John River and farmed it in the spring, summer, and fall months. In the winter, he earned extra money as a lumberjack in the forests of New Brunswick.

The job of a lumberjack was a hard and lonely one. Chopping down trees and moving them to the frozen rivers was hard work. Tom had done this for eight years though and was used to it. Besides, it gave him work during the long, cold winter months.

Unfortunately for Tom, the end of the Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. meant that he lost his winter job. New Brunswick could not sell as much lumber to the U.S.A. Some lumberjacks had to be laid off work.

Tom was very upset when he heard the news. He did not understand politics very well, but it made him angry when politics hurt him personally. He did not understand why he had to suffer. He knew that the U.S.A. was angry with Britain because of the Civil War, but why should that affect him?

When he had asked the boss when he would be needed again, his boss had given him little hope. The boss had shrugged his shoulders and talked about the bad times in the lumber industry. He had said that iron ships, run by steam, were replacing the wooden sailing ships. This was also hurting the lumber industry.

The only hope his boss had given him was that there was a chance all the colonies would unite and trade with each other. The boss had said that Confederation would bring in new customers from central Canada.

Tom had wondered what Confederation was. He sure hoped that whatever it was, it would come soon! He needed the extra money.

### Questions

1. Find two reasons why Tom Dillon was laid off work.
2. Was there any chance of his being rehired? If so, why?
3. As Tom, write a letter to Samuel Tilley that outlines why you are upset with politicians.

28. The Parliament, located in Ottawa, would make federal laws for the entire country. Before a bill became law, it would have to be approved by the three parts of Parliament. These three parts were the House of Commons, the Senate, and the Governor-General.

"Well, George Brown has done it! He has brought about Confederation and got us rep by pop. I never thought he could do it!

I've been reading Brown's Toronto *Globe* for the past five years. I agree with everything the *Globe* has been saying about the advantages of Confederation.

Although I must admit that, at first, I had doubts. Especially when Brown joined up with Macdonald and that Frenchman named Cartier. But Brown was right to do that; Confederation would never have happened if he hadn't. We'd still be having elections every couple of years and getting nowhere with those French Catholics. Now we have rep by pop and the largest number of members in the House of Commons. Now we'll get laws passed that suit English Canadians. Ontario will be able to spend its money on its own roads and canals. We won't have to ask the permission of those people in Quebec. We'll be able to handle our own local problems and get things moving again.

If those Americans try to attack us, they'll find more than they bargained for. Together, we can stand up against them!

You know, the *Globe* was right today. We have a great opportunity to develop and expand this country. We can afford to build a railroad across the country. We can trade freely with each other. We can settle the West and have more farmland for the farmers and their sons in Ontario.

You know, there can be a great future for us."



## Confederation: The Reactions of Farmer Clay Graves in Ontario, July 1, 1867

### Questions

1. Why did Clay Graves think that rep by pop would be good for Ontario in the new country?
2. What other advantages did he think could come from Confederation?
3. What was Clay Graves' attitude toward people living in Quebec? Why do you think he felt this way?

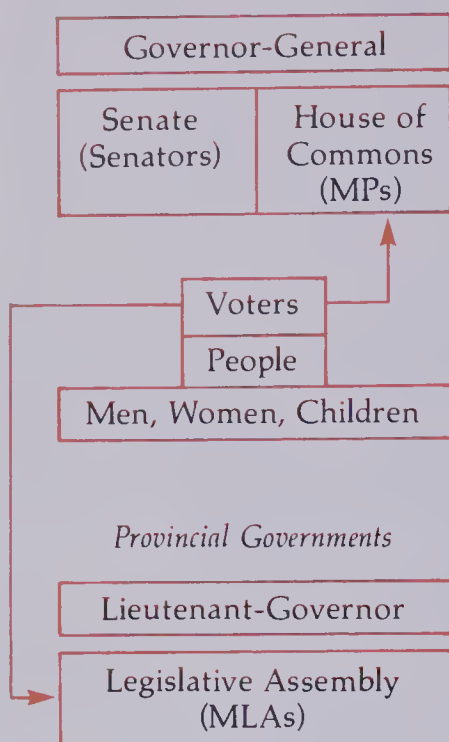
29. The House of Commons was to be the most powerful part of the Parliament because its representatives were elected by the citizens of Canada. The number of representatives that each province would elect to the House of Commons was to be determined by the population, that is, representation by population. The representatives would be called Members of Parliament (MPs).

30. The second part of Parliament was to be called the Senate. Its members were to be called Senators and were appointed, not elected. They had to be chosen from different parts of the new country. There were to be twenty-four Senators appointed from



## Canada's Federal System of Government — 1867

### Federal Government



the Maritimes (Nova Scotia and New Brunswick), twenty-four from Ontario, and the same number from Quebec. This would make sure that the interests of each part of the country would be taken care of properly. The Senate would examine each bill passed by the House of Commons and vote to accept or reject it. The approval of the Senate would be needed to make a bill a law.

31. The third part of Parliament was to be the Governor-General. He represented the British government and the Queen in Canada. He would sign the bills, passed by the House of Commons and the Senate, into law.

32. The Fathers of Confederation wanted a strong federal government. The powers of the federal government were listed in Section 91 of the British North America Act. Under Section 91, the federal government was given the right to make laws on such subjects as trade, defence, criminal laws, banks, the fisheries, taxation, and Indians. The federal government was also given the right to **disallow** or reject any provincial law that it thought to be against the interests or welfare of the entire country. This particular right showed clearly that the Fathers of Confederation wanted the federal government to be stronger than the provincial governments.

33. The second level of government was called the provincial government. Each province had its own government to make laws on local matters. The people elected representatives to a Legislative Assembly. The representatives were Members of the Legislative Assembly (MLAs). They suggested and voted on provincial bills. Bills passed by the MLAs were sent to the Lieutenant-Governor to sign into law. The Lieutenant-Governor represented both the federal government and the Queen in the province.

34. Section 92 of the British North America Act gave the provinces the right to make laws on such matters as property, civil rights, the sale of licences and alcohol, cities, mines, and forests. Section 93 gave the provinces the right to make laws on education.

35. The Fathers of Confederation believed that the federal system of government was necessary for a large country like Canada. They believed that the federal government must be strong enough to look after the interests of all Canadians. The provincial governments were set up to handle local matters. They believed that this system of government would allow people with different languages, religions, and concerns to live and work together in peace.

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—13

#### Knowing The People

Make a list of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes the views of that person.

1. George Brown, John A. Macdonald, George-Etienne Cartier, Charles Tupper, and Samuel Tilley.
  - (a) A New Brunswick provincial government is necessary to control local matters.
  - (b) I believe enough in the benefits of Confederation to overcome my personal dislike of Macdonald.
  - (c) Canada is too big a country to be properly run by only one government.
  - (d) It is only necessary to have one strong government in the new country.
  - (e) I insist that provincial governments have control over such local matters as education.

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A coalition describes
  - (a) a person joining a political party
  - (b) several groups or parties working together
  - (c) an agreement or contract
  - (d) a new car that burns coal
3. A legislative union is a country with
  - (a) no central government
  - (b) two or more levels of government
  - (c) one strong government
  - (d) strong provincial governments
4. A federal union is a country with
  - (a) no central government
  - (b) two or more levels of government
  - (c) one strong government
  - (d) strong provincial governments
5. A minority is
  - (a) less than half
  - (b) more than half
  - (c) divided in half
  - (d) none of the above

#### Knowing Why

Answer these questions in your notebook.

6. Why were Brown, Cartier, and Tupper in favour of a federal union for the new country?
7. Why was Macdonald opposed to a federal union for the new country?

## Questions

8. Explain the difference between a federal government and a provincial government.
9. Which colony does not belong under the heading of Maritime union—Prince Edward Island, Nova Scotia, Canada, New Brunswick?
10. Why do you think that Macdonald finally agreed to a federal union?

### Paragraphs 14—23

#### Knowing The People

Make a list of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes the views of that person.

1. George-Etienne Cartier, A.A. Dorion, Charles Tupper, and Joseph Howe.
  - (a) Confederation would make it harder for Canada to defend itself.
  - (b) Taxes and prices will increase with Confederation—and defence will not be improved.
  - (c) An increase in trade and a better defence against the Americans will be benefits of Confederation to Canada East.
  - (d) Confederation will allow for free trade with other colonies.

## Questions

2. What facts show that people in Canada East were divided on the issue of Confederation?
3. What events convinced many people in New Brunswick to accept Confederation?

### Paragraphs 24—35

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Canada's constitution is
  - (a) the law that created the country of Canada
  - (b) the law that set up the government of Canada
  - (c) the British North America Act
  - (d) all of the above
2. To disallow means to
  - (a) allow someone to make a law
  - (b) reject or stop a law
  - (c) agree with a new law
  - (d) defeat a law in a vote



## Knowing Why

3. Why did the Fathers of Confederation have to travel to Britain?
4. Why is the House of Commons considered the most powerful part of Parliament?
5. Why were the Senators chosen from different parts of the new country?

## Questions

6. What document was the basis for the British North America Act?
7. Name the four new provinces that made up the new country of Canada.
8. What did the British North America Act do for Canada? Find two items.
9. What are the three parts of Parliament called?
10. What are the representatives to a provincial government called?
11. Did the Fathers of Confederation want a strong or a weak federal government? Support your answer with facts given in this section.

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Catching Capitals

1. (a) Where is Parliament located?  
(b) Why was this location chosen?
2. Find out where the Legislative Assembly is located in your province.

### Reading the Time Line

Study the time line below. Answer the following questions.

1. Between what years was free trade put into effect by Britain?
2. When did the Reciprocity Treaty begin?
3. When did Brown join Macdonald and Cartier?
4. When did the Civil War end?
5. When were the Quebec Resolutions made?
6. When was Samuel Tilley's government elected?
7. When did the British North America Act come into effect?

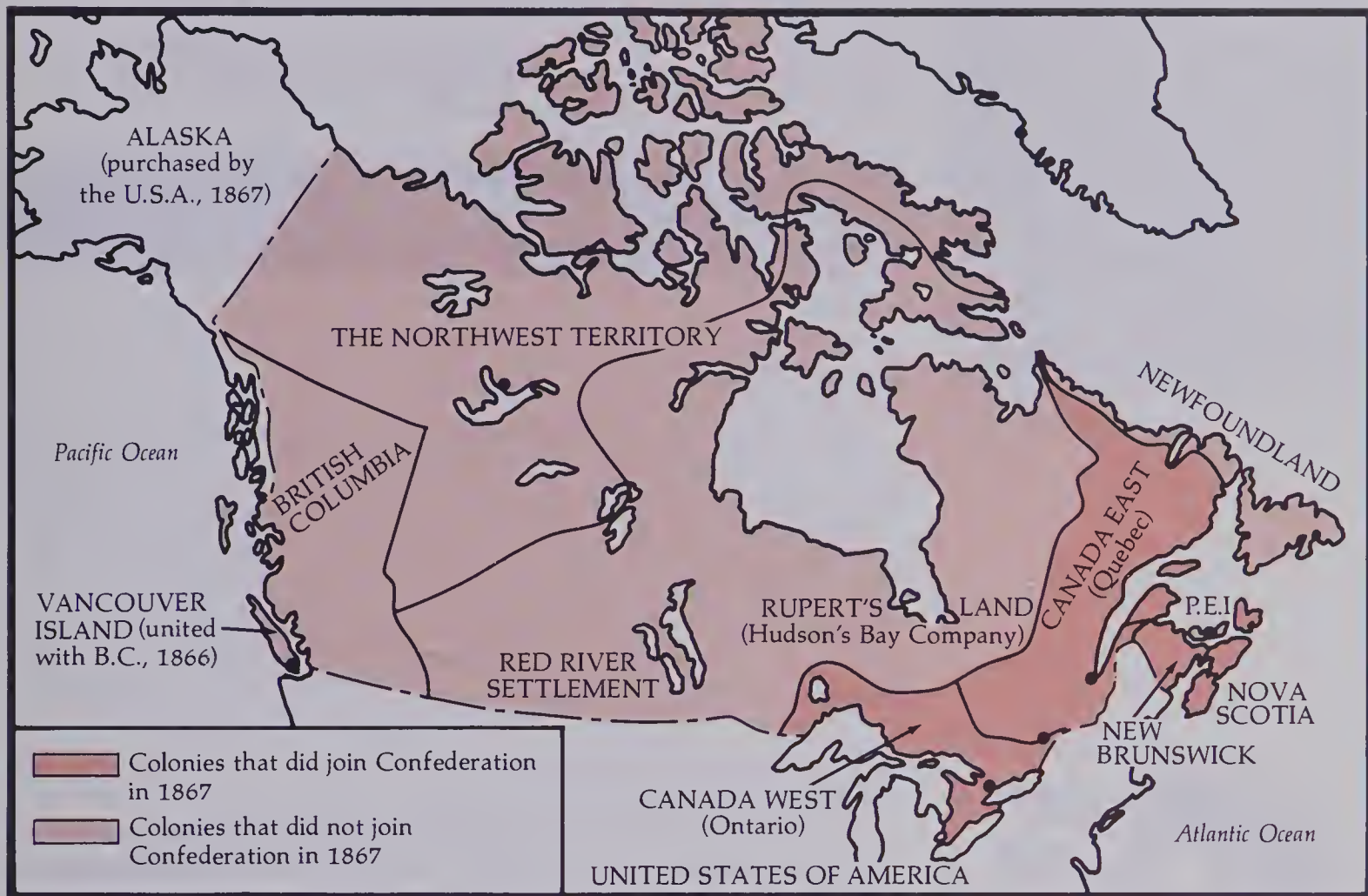
## TIME LINE

1846-1867

FREE TRADE	1846-1849	Britain removes tariffs protecting the goods of British colonies
RECIPROCITY	1854	Free trade agreement between U.S.A. and British North America colonies
CIVIL WAR	1861	Civil War between North and South begins in U.S.A.
POLITICAL DEADLOCK	1863	Election in colony of Canada results in deadlock
FIRST STEPS TOWARD CONFEDERATION	1864	—Brown joins Macdonald and Cartier —Charlottetown Conference —Quebec Conference —Quebec Resolutions
	1865	—American Civil War ends —Samuel Tilley and Pro-Confederation Party defeated in New Brunswick
	1866	—Fenian attacks —Reciprocity Treaty ends —Samuel Tilley's Pro-Confederation government elected
CONFEDERATION	1867	—British North America Act —Confederation achieved

## Reading a Map

By using the information on the map, make a chart in your notebook listing those colonies that joined Confederation in 1867 and those that did not.



## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

Discuss the following statement.

Resolved That:

"The Confederation of the British North America colonies kept the U.S.A. from taking them over."



## CHAPTER THREE

# The Expansion of Canada, 1867-1878

AIM: What Problems Faced Canada Between 1867 and 1878?

### Canada's First Prime Minister

1. John A. Macdonald became Canada's first Prime Minister in 1867. He was appointed to the job by the Governor-General. A Prime Minister ("first" minister) leads the government which attempts to solve the country's problems. He is usually the leader of the political party that manages to elect the greatest number of MPs to the House of Commons. In the fall of 1867, the first elections were held. The Conservatives elected the greatest number of MPs and Macdonald kept his job as Prime Minister.



JOSEPH HOWE WANTS TO  
BREAK AWAY

### Discontent in Nova Scotia

2. The most important problem facing the young country was the separatist movement in Nova Scotia. The **majority** (more than half) of people living in Nova Scotia wanted to leave Confederation. Nova Scotia did not want to be a part of Canada. Eighteen of the nineteen MPs elected from Nova Scotia in 1867 had promised to take the province out of Confederation. Joseph Howe was the leader of those who wanted to separate.

3. Macdonald offered to give Nova Scotia a better deal if the province remained part of Canada. This meant that Nova Scotia would receive more money from the Canadian federal government. Britain also refused to allow Nova Scotia to separate. Finally, the separatists agreed to **compromise**. Each side gave in a little to reach an agreement. The federal government gave Nova Scotia more money and the separatists agreed to keep Nova Scotia in Canada. Joseph Howe even became a member of Macdonald's government! Macdonald had managed to save Confederation.

### Rebellion in the West

4. The young country grew very quickly. In 1869, Canada bought the Northwest from the Hudson's Bay Company. The Hudson's Bay Company was a British company and made most of

its money from the fur trade. Canada paid £300 000 (\$1 500 000) and gave back one-twentieth of the land in the Northwest to the company. The land purchased by Canada increased the size of the country by 6 500 000 km<sup>2</sup>! Canada had made an excellent deal.

5. Unfortunately, this purchase brought many problems. The Northwest had about 37 000 people — 25 000 Indians, 10 000 Métis, and 1500 settlers. These people had not been asked whether they wanted to become a part of Canada.

6. The Métis were of mixed blood. White fur traders and explorers had married Indian women; their children became known as the Métis. They did some farming, but they also hunted the buffalo. The Métis were afraid that the purchase of the Northwest by Canada would mean that settlers would soon come in large numbers. Settlers would kill the huge herds of buffalo on which the Indians and Métis depended for food. The majority of the Métis spoke French and were Roman Catholic. They were afraid that they would be assimilated by the English-speaking Protestant settlers. They would lose their language, religion, and way of life. In 1869, Louis Riel, the leader of the Métis, led a successful **rebellion** against the Canadian federal government. The Métis used force to take over Fort Garry (near Winnipeg). There was nothing Macdonald could do to put down the rebellion. He gave in to the demands of the Métis.

7. In 1870, the Canadian Parliament passed a law called the Manitoba Act. This Act of Parliament created the province of Manitoba. It also guaranteed the Roman Catholic religion and the French language of the Métis. This meant that Manitoba would be **bicultural**, with the two cultures of French and English. The Act also gave the Métis 560 000 ha of land. The voters in Manitoba would send four MPs to Ottawa to represent them in the House of Commons.

8. Riel was a hero to the Métis and to the French Roman Catholics of Quebec. Unfortunately, he was regarded as a **traitor** by most English-speaking Protestant people in Canada. He had



*Ojibway Métis in wigwam, Lake Superior*

*Old Fort Garry (Winnipeg)*







Thomas Scott



Thomas Scott was born in 1842 in Northern Ireland. He came to Canada West in 1863. In 1869, he arrived at Red River (Winnipeg) and found a job as a labourer. He joined a group of settlers called the Canada Party that wanted Red River to join Canada. When Louis Riel and his followers took over Fort Garry, members of the Canada Party, including Thomas Scott, resisted. Riel's men jailed them. Scott managed to escape and tried to organize the settlers to capture Riel. However, he was captured again in 1870 by Riel's men. He was a difficult prisoner and insulted his Métis guards. He was tried by the Métis and sentenced to death. On March 4, 1870, Scott was taken before the Métis firing squad at Fort Garry and was shot.

His execution caused deep divisions between English and French Canadians. Many English Canadians regarded Scott's execution as murder. They demanded that Riel be hanged for the crime. The French Canadians saw Scott as a trouble-maker who deserved to be shot for his actions and saw Riel as a hero.

threatened and used force against the government. To make matters worse, he had executed an English-speaking Irishman from Ontario named Thomas Scott. Scott and about sixty other English-speaking settlers had tried to overthrow the Riel government. Scott had also threatened to kill Riel. When Riel executed Scott, the English-speaking Protestants of Ontario demanded that Riel be hanged.

### British Columbia Joins Confederation

9. The colony of British Columbia did not join Confederation in 1867. Canada seemed so far away; there were no roads or railroads to connect British Columbia with Canada. However, when Canada purchased the Northwest in 1869 and Manitoba became a province in 1870, Canada moved closer to British Columbia.

10. British Columbia had spent over \$1 000 000 on the Cariboo Road during the gold rush and had gone heavily into debt. It did not seem that British Columbia could afford to survive on its own. A few people wanted British Columbia to join the United States. Some wanted to remain as a colony of Britain. When the British government expressed its approval of a union with Canada, the majority of British Columbians agreed. However, they wanted the Canadian government to take over the debts of the colony and to build a wagon road that would connect British Columbia with the rest of Canada.

11. John A. Macdonald agreed to take over their debts. He surprised many Canadians when he also promised to build, not a wagon road, but a railroad, to connect British Columbia with the rest of Canada. He promised that the railroad would be built within ten years. British Columbia joined Canada in 1871 and became the sixth province of Canada.

### Prince Edward Island Joins Confederation

12. In 1867, Prince Edward Island had refused to join Confederation. It had thought it would be better off on its own. Then it tried to build a railway from one end of the island to the other and it went heavily into debt. Islanders were afraid that taxes would be raised to pay for the railway. Another concern of the Islanders was the number of landlords who owned most of the land in Prince Edward Island, but lived in Britain. The Islanders wanted to buy back this land but could not afford to do so. The Canadian government promised to take over the debts of Prince Edward Island and to pay \$800 000 to help buy back the lands from the British owners. Prince Edward Island accepted the offer and became the seventh province of Canada in 1873.

"Today British Columbia and Canada joined hands and hearts across the Rocky Mountains. At midnight last night, there were signs of great rejoicing in the city. Bells were rung, guns fired, blue lights and Roman candles burned and firecrackers snapped. And people met on the streets and shook hands and congratulated each other and cheered, and cheered ..."

*Daily British Colonist  
Victoria, July 20, 1871*

CANADA, 1873





1873

1877



1901



1905

*It was the N.W.M.P. who secured Manitoba for Canada. They ensured that the railway construction and the settlement of the West could proceed. Find out why they wore scarlet uniforms.*

## Opening the West

13. Under Prime Minister John A. Macdonald, Canada had won the race with the United States for the vast lands in the West. But Macdonald knew that Canada had to work hard to hold the West.

14. To open these lands to settlers, the federal government did four things. First, they sent Alexander Morris to make **treaties** or agreements with the Indians. The Indians gave up their claims to the land and agreed to settle on **reservations**. Reservations are special parcels of land set aside for native people. The Indians were also promised money, yearly gifts, and training in farming. The first treaty with the Indians was signed in 1871.

15. Second, the government passed laws to encourage people to settle in the West. They promised 65 ha of free land to anyone who would live on the land for three years. Farmers could buy additional land for two dollars per hectare.

16. Third, the government set up the North West Mounted Police in 1873. The Mounties kept out American whiskey traders and other trouble-makers. They also kept law and order among the Indians, Métis, and settlers.

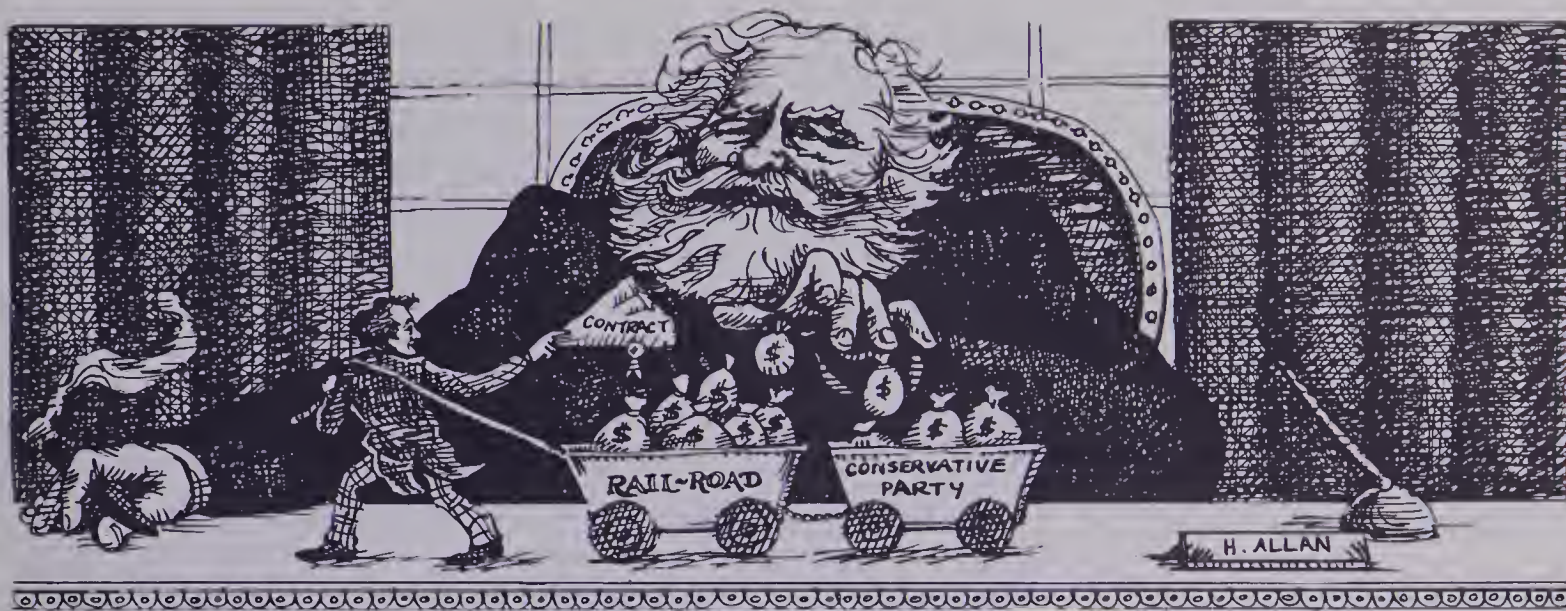
17. Fourth, a railway had to be built from eastern Canada to British Columbia. The railway was necessary to carry settlers to the West and to tie the country together. Who would build the railway to the Pacific?

## The Pacific Scandal

18. Prime Minister Macdonald wanted a group of Canadian businessmen to build the railway. A Montreal company and a Toronto company both wanted the job. The two companies refused to join together. Hugh Allan, president of the Montreal company, thought that he knew a sure way for his company to win the railway contract.

19. In the 1872 federal election, Allan gave large amounts of money to some Conservative Party **candidates** who were running for election to the House of Commons. Both John A. Macdonald and George-Etienne Cartier asked for and received money toward their election expenses. In all, Allan gave the Conservatives \$350 000. After the Conservatives had won the election, Macdonald decided to give the contract to Hugh Allan's company. In truth, Allan's company was larger than the Toronto company and could likely do the work faster.

20. However, the Liberal Party and the newspapers learned about Allan's huge contributions to the Conservative Party. They called this the Pacific Scandal. Macdonald, Cartier, and other Conservatives were accused of accepting bribes. A bribe is money



JOHN A. AND THE PACIFIC SCANDAL

that a person takes in return for helping someone. The newspapers published Macdonald's 1872 telegram asking for more money.

21. Macdonald had used this money in the election. He had not taken the money for himself. It was also legal for businessmen to give money to political parties. But the people felt that Prime Minister Macdonald and the Conservatives owed so much to Allan that they had to give him the railway job. The people felt this was wrong. They began to lose their faith and trust in the Prime Minister. Some MPs stopped supporting the Prime Minister. Macdonald saw that he had lost his majority in the House of Commons. This meant the Conservatives would lose a **vote of non-confidence** because a majority of MPs would vote against the government. On November 5, 1873, Macdonald resigned as Prime Minister of Canada.

**Telegram: John A. Macdonald to Hugh Allan**

"I must have another ten thousand; will be the last time of calling; do not fail me; answer today."

### Alexander Mackenzie Forms a Cabinet

22. The Governor-General asked Alexander Mackenzie to become Prime Minister after John A. Macdonald. Mackenzie was the leader of the Liberal Party. Prime Minister Mackenzie asked Liberal MPs from different provinces to sit in his Cabinet. The Cabinet is a small group of MPs who lead the government. Together, the Prime Minister and Cabinet must decide on policies and new laws to bring to Parliament. The members of the Cabinet are called Cabinet Ministers. Each Cabinet Minister is usually in charge of a government department such as the Department of Defence or the Department of Public Works. Each Minister makes sure that the **civil servants** (government workers) in the department carry out the laws made by Parliament.

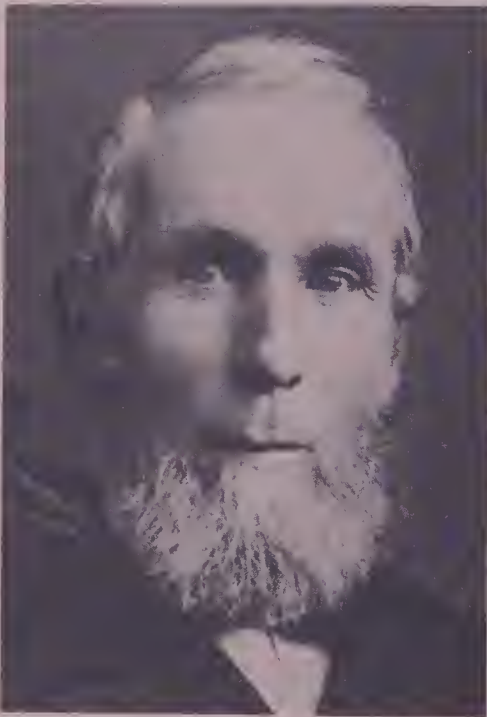
23. As soon as Prime Minister Mackenzie had selected his Cabinet Ministers, he asked the Governor-General to call an



election. In the 1874 election, Prime Minister Mackenzie asked the Canadian voters to support his new Liberal Cabinet by voting for Liberal candidates in their **riding**. A riding is an area of the country from which one MP is elected to the House of Commons. The country was divided into 206 ridings in 1874. About the same number of voters lived in each riding.



## Alexander Mackenzie



Alexander Mackenzie moved from Scotland to Canada in 1842 when he was twenty years old. He settled near Sarnia, Ontario where he became a stonemason and a contractor. His first wife was Helen Neil and they had one daughter. Helen died in 1852. In 1853, Alexander married Jane Sym. Mackenzie was a Baptist and was known as a very honest man.

Mackenzie greatly admired George Brown, the owner of the *Globe*. Mackenzie joined Brown's Reform Party in the 1850's and was first elected to the Assembly in 1861. After George Brown decided to leave politics in 1867, Alexander Mackenzie became leader of the Liberal Party. He also became Leader of the Opposition in the House of Commons. The Leader of the Opposition is the leader of the second largest party in the House of Commons.

When John A. Macdonald resigned over the Pacific Scandal, Alexander Mackenzie became Prime Minister. Mackenzie and the Liberals used the Pacific Scandal to win a big victory in 1874. Unfortunately, Prime Minister Mackenzie faced great problems because of the depression. Many people blamed him and the Liberal Party for the depression. The Liberals had not caused the depression; other countries had a depression at the same time.

One change Prime Minister Mackenzie introduced was the Canada Temperance Act. Many deeply religious people believed that alcohol was evil and the cause of many social problems. The new law allowed 25 per cent of the voters in a county or town to ask for a **referendum** on the sale of alcohol. A referendum is a vote by the public on a question or issue. If 51 per cent of the voters voted for **Prohibition**, to stop the sale of alcohol, then no hotel, restaurant, or business could sell alcohol in that area.

Prime Minister Mackenzie and the Liberals lost their majority in the 1878 election to Macdonald and the Conservatives. In 1880, Mackenzie resigned as leader of the Liberal Party. He continued to serve as an MP in the House of Commons until his death in 1892. In these years he lost his voice and was unable to speak loudly in public. Mackenzie spent the last twelve years of his life running a fire and life insurance company in Toronto.

## Political Changes

24. In the 1874 election, Prime Minister Mackenzie and the Liberal Party attacked John A. Macdonald and the Conservative Party for the Pacific Scandal. The voters accepted Mackenzie's promise of good, honest government. The Liberals also promised several reforms to improve politics and government.

25. The secret ballot was used for the first time in the 1874 election. Before, voters had to say out loud the name of the candidate they wanted, in front of the other voters. This could sometimes be risky. Candidates often had a number of tough men standing around who would threaten a voter unless he supported their candidate. Sometimes, the election day turned into a fight between supporters of two candidates. Another risk faced the voter whose boss supported one candidate. The boss might tell his workers to vote for that candidate. If a worker voted for a different candidate, the boss would hear it. Then the boss would fire the worker. Now, each voter could mark his ballot in secret and no one knew how he voted.

26. Prime Minister Mackenzie also brought in stronger laws against bribery in elections. An MP, who bought someone's vote, lost his seat in the House of Commons.

27. Prime Minister Mackenzie was very loyal to Britain but he was also proud of Canada. He worked to reduce the power of the Governor-General in Canada. The Liberals also set up the Supreme Court of Canada to handle legal cases for the entire country. These were two small steps that made Canada less dependent on Britain.

## Economic Plans

28. The Liberals agreed with the Conservatives that people were needed to settle the West. Treaties were signed with the rest of the Indians in the West. The Indians moved to their reservations. This opened up enormous areas of land for settlement.

29. Mackenzie and the Liberals encouraged settlers to go to the West to take up the free farms. A small community of Russian Mennonites did move to Manitoba in 1874 when the government promised to respect their religious beliefs. The first Icelanders settled in Manitoba in 1875. But there were very few immigrants from overseas. The settlers who came to Manitoba were mainly from Ontario. This upset the balance between the French- and English-speaking people. The French-speaking people became a minority. This would lead to more problems in the future.

30. One of the reasons for the very slow settlement of the Canadian West was the economic **depression** after 1874. A depression is a time when the sales of businessmen and farmers fall, workers' wages are cut, some workers lose their jobs, and



some people lose their money. Prime Minister Mackenzie and the Liberals certainly wanted to increase trade. Unlike the Conservatives, the Liberals believed in free trade. They planned to sign a new Reciprocity Treaty with the United States to remove the tariffs on many goods. The Liberals hoped this would increase trade between Canada and the U.S.A. and create more jobs. However, the United States did not want a Reciprocity Treaty at this time. The depression continued. Conditions became worse in 1876, 1877, and 1878.

31. The depression made it very difficult for the federal government to build the Pacific Railway to British Columbia. When B.C. joined Canada in 1871, the Canadian government had promised to start a railway to B.C. in two years and to complete it in ten years. Mackenzie and the Liberals had opposed this deal with B.C. in 1871. They had said that it would cost Canada too much money.

32. As Prime Minister, Alexander Mackenzie tried to change the bargain with B.C. He said the railway should be built slowly, in stages. Mackenzie wanted to build the section of the railway from Ontario to Manitoba first. When the settlers had taken all the farm land in Manitoba, the government would extend the railway further west. In other words, they would build the railway as it was needed. This would cost the federal government and the taxpayers less money. Perhaps in twenty or thirty years, the railway would be completed to B.C.

33. George Walkem was the Premier (the elected head of the provincial government) of British Columbia. He opposed any changes in the 1871 bargain. In 1876, and again in 1878, a majority of members of the Legislative Assembly in B.C. threatened to separate from Canada if the railway was not built as promised. This separation talk only died down when the Canadian Pacific Railway was built in the 1880's.

34. Prime Minister Mackenzie and the Liberals did not please many Canadians. They had reduced bribery in elections. But they failed to build on the new lands Canada had gained between 1867 and 1873. People had hoped that these new lands would make Canada a prosperous country. Instead, the 1870's were years of slow settlement, economic depression, and anger in British Columbia.

### Statement by Alexander Mackenzie in 1871

"The 'bargain' with British Columbia is 'an insane act' and a bargain made to be broken!"



WILL B.C. SEPARATE FROM CANADA?

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—12

#### Knowing the People

Answer these questions in your notebook.

1. Who was Louis Riel? What did he do in 1869? What were the results of his action?
2. Who was Thomas Scott? How did he die?

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Majority means
  - (a) less than half
  - (b) more than half
  - (c) an equal number
4. A compromise is
  - (a) an agreement where each side gives in a little
  - (b) a decision where one side gets everything it wants
  - (c) a situation in which no decision is made
5. A rebellion occurs when
  - (a) people protest against a situation they do not like
  - (b) two countries go to war against each other
  - (c) force is used by people in an attempt to overthrow the government
6. Bicultural means that
  - (a) one group of people has been assimilated by another
  - (b) there are two cultures
  - (c) there are three or more cultures
7. A traitor is someone who
  - (a) has a certain type of trade
  - (b) is an English-speaking Protestant
  - (c) threatens and uses force against the government

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

8. A Prime Minister is usually the leader
  - (a) of the political party with the fewest MPs
  - (b) of the political party with the largest number of MPs
  - (c) who signs bills into laws
  - (d) who is also elected to the Senate

9. Thomas Scott was executed because
  - (a) he killed Riel
  - (b) he attacked the Riel government
  - (c) he disliked Roman Catholics
  - (d) Riel thought Scott wanted to become the new leader of the Métis
10. Prince Edward Island joined Canada because
  - (a) the British government promised to give back some land to the Islanders
  - (b) the Canadian government promised to build a railway on the Island
  - (c) the Canadian government promised to take over the debts of the Island
  - (d) the British landlords had raised the rents of the Islanders

#### Questions

11. Do you think that the people in the Northwest should have been asked if they wanted to be part of Canada? Explain.
12. Why do you think that Macdonald could do nothing to stop the Riel rebellion of 1869?

### Paragraphs 13—21

#### Knowing The People

Answer these questions in your notebook.

1. Why was Alexander Morris sent to the West?
2. Who was Hugh Allan? How was he involved in the Pacific Scandal?

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Treaties are
  - (a) agreements to build a railway
  - (b) public meetings to discuss land
  - (c) agreements between two or more countries or peoples
4. Reservations are
  - (a) food set aside for Indians
  - (b) land set aside for Indians
  - (c) land set aside for sports
5. Candidates are
  - (a) members of the Canada Party
  - (b) people seeking election
  - (c) representatives who have just been elected to the House of Commons
6. A vote of non-confidence is a vote
  - (a) against the government by a majority of MPs in the House of Commons
  - (b) against a bill by a minority of MPs
  - (c) against a bill by a majority of MPs



## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

7. The federal government signed treaties with the Indians because
  - (a) it needed their land for settlers
  - (b) it wanted to make money
  - (c) it feared the Indians would join the United States
  - (d) the buffalo herds needed protection
8. The North West Mounted Police was created by the federal government because
  - (a) there was always the threat of invasion from the U.S.A.
  - (b) the Indians threatened to revolt
  - (c) the government wanted to stop whiskey traders coming to Canada
  - (d) none of the above
9. Hugh Allan gave money to the Conservative Party because he
  - (a) liked John A. Macdonald
  - (b) wanted an Atlantic shipping contract
  - (c) wanted the contract to build the railway to the Pacific
  - (d) had always supported the Conservative Party
10. John A. Macdonald resigned as Prime Minister in 1873 because
  - (a) he was accused of taking bribes from Hugh Allan
  - (b) he had lost his majority in the House of Commons
  - (c) the people thought he had acted wrongly
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

11. Why did the government promise free land to new settlers in the West?
12. Why were Allan's contributions to the Conservative Party considered to be bribes?

## Paragraphs 22—34

## Knowing The People

Answer these questions in your notebook.

1. (a) When was Alexander Mackenzie elected Prime Minister?  
(b) For how long was he Prime Minister?  
(c) What had been his position before he became Prime Minister?
2. Who was Premier of British Columbia during Mackenzie's term of office?

## Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Civil servants are
  - (a) government workers
  - (b) polite waiters
  - (c) members of the Cabinet
4. A riding
  - (a) is an area of the country from which one MP is elected
  - (b) elects one MP
  - (c) has approximately the same number of voters as another riding
  - (d) all of the above
5. A depression is
  - (a) a hole in the ground
  - (b) a time when everyone is very busy
  - (c) a time when people lose their money and their jobs
6. A referendum means
  - (a) a secret ballot by the public on an issue
  - (b) a secret ballot for one candidate
  - (c) a public announcement of your vote
7. Prohibition means that
  - (a) people are limited to one drink a day
  - (b) the manufacture and sale of all alcoholic beverages has been stopped
  - (c) the manufacture and sale of all alcoholic beverages has been limited

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

8. Alexander Mackenzie won the election of 1874 because
  - (a) the Pacific Scandal had been pointed out by his party
  - (b) he promised an honest government
  - (c) he introduced the secret ballot
  - (d) all of the above
9. The Russian Mennonites settled in western Canada because
  - (a) they were used to cold water
  - (b) the government promised to respect their religious beliefs
  - (c) they could not afford to go anywhere else
10. British Columbia wanted to separate from Canada because
  - (a) it wanted to join the United States instead
  - (b) the railway was not being built
  - (c) it did not need the railway after the invention of the aeroplane

## Questions

11. What changes did Alexander Mackenzie make as Prime Minister?
12. Why did Mackenzie and the Liberals lose the election of 1878?

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Making A Chart

Make a chart in your notebook to indicate the year in which the various colonies joined Confederation. The years with which you are concerned are 1867, 1869, 1870, 1871, and 1873.

### Understanding An Illustration

Examine the picture showing a family in Canada in 1870. Compare what is shown in the picture with the situation of a Canadian family today. What differences exist? What similarities?

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

1. For a class debate on the execution of Thomas Scott, the class should be divided in half. One-half will represent the views of the English Canadians and the other half will represent the views of the Métis and the French Canadians. Each side should list its arguments to support its opinions. Once these arguments are listed, each side can present its point of view.
2. Sometimes, Canada did not keep its treaty promises with the Indians. What do you think that Canadian Indians should do to make the government keep its promises?
3. Should the federal government negotiate treaties with the native people in the Northwest Territories before companies are allowed to drill for oil and natural gas?





## CHAPTER FOUR

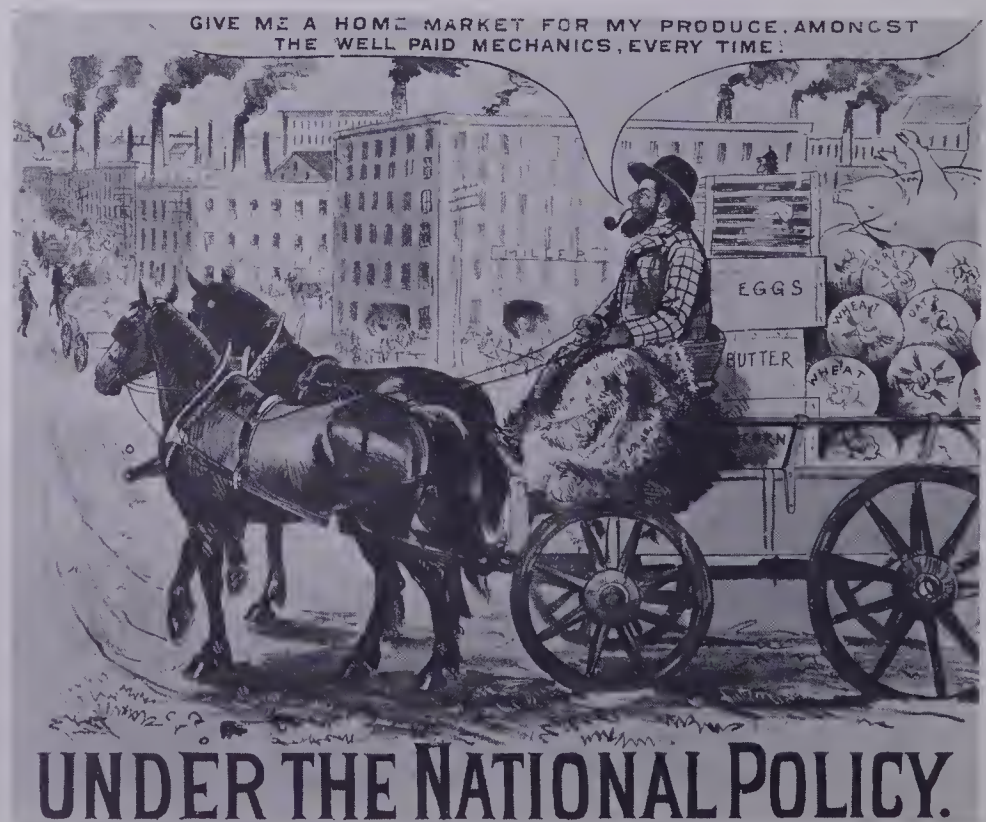
# The National Policy

AIM: How Did Prime Minister Macdonald Try To Make Canada A Prosperous and United Country?

### What Was Macdonald's Plan?

1. Canadians were experiencing hard times in the 1870's. Between 1874 and 1878, the depression weakened the country. The sales of farmers and businessmen fell and they made less money. Many workers lost their jobs and were unemployed. People from every province moved to the United States to make a new start in life. Few people from other countries were willing to settle in Canada. What had happened to the Canadian dream of a great new country?

2. John A. Macdonald knew that something had to be done to restore the prosperity and pride of Canadians. In the federal election of 1878, Macdonald promised a "National Policy" for all Canadians. In meeting halls and at public picnics across the country, he explained the three parts of his plan. The three parts





## An Election Meeting in 1878

**John A. Macdonald:** My fellow Canadians, if you vote for the Conservatives, we will introduce a new "National Policy" to end the economic depression.

**Businessman:** What caused the depression?

**Macdonald:** Well, simply put, the Liberals and the Americans, of course! We must get rid of those bungling Liberals and you can do that on election day! With the Americans, it is not so easy. We must protect our farmers and our manufacturers from those sly Americans. Why, they sell us their surplus, their extra products, below cost! Our farmers cannot find buyers for their fine animals and grains after all their hard work. When the Americans dump their cheap goods on Canadian markets, they drive our manufacturers out of business. This must stop. A protective tariff will prevent it. The Conservative Party will bring in a protective tariff if we win the election!

**Worker:** What about the working man, John A.? Are you just friends with farmers and businessmen?

**Macdonald:** No, my good fellow. A tariff policy will help you too. With the tariff, American goods will be more expensive. Canadians will buy the cheaper goods produced here in Canada. The businessmen will hire Canadian workers, fine strong chaps like you, to work in their factories to produce Canadian goods.

**Woman:** I want to buy the cheaper American goods. Why should I pay more for Canadian products?

**Macdonald:** Madam, where is your loyalty? Besides, would you and your husband rather have jobs or cheap Yankee goods? The Americans are acting unfairly. Canadians must protect themselves!

### Questions

1. Where did John A. Macdonald place the blame for the depression?
2. Why did he blame another political party?
3. In what way did John A. tell the people that the tariff would solve the depression?
4. Do you think Macdonald answered the people's questions well?
5. Under the National Policy, how were the farmers and the city workers supposed to help each other?



### Canadian Federal Election, 1878

Party	Number of MPs in the House of Commons
Conservative	142
Liberal	64
Total	206

were the settlement of the West, a railway from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and a tariff on foreign, especially American, goods coming into Canada.

3. Settlers were needed to set up farms in the West. There they would grow large crops of grain for sale to central and eastern Canada and to Europe. The transcontinental railway (across the continent) was to carry the settlers and the manufactured goods to the West and the grain to the East. The tariff was designed to encourage new industries in central and eastern Canada to make more manufactured goods and to hire more workers. Here was a policy to help people in all areas of the country! The voters welcomed these new ideas. Macdonald and the Conservative Party won a smashing victory over Mackenzie and the Liberals in the 1878 federal election.

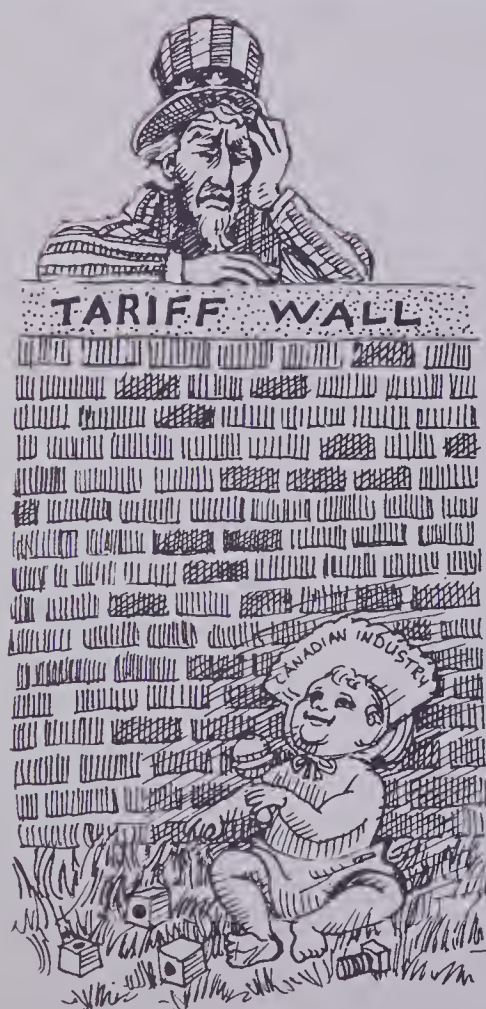
### The Tariff

4. Prime Minister Macdonald moved quickly to raise the tariff in 1879. The government asked businessmen how high a tariff they needed on different products. For example, an American wood stove might cost \$10. A 30 per cent tariff on this stove raised its price by \$3 to \$13. If Canadian manufacturers in Truro, St. John, or Hamilton could produce a similar stove for \$12, then Canadians would buy the Canadian wood stove. It meant that Canadians paid \$2 more for wood stoves than their American neighbours. But the wood stoves were produced by Canadian businessmen and factory workers.

5. As businessmen sold more products, such as the wood stoves, they built bigger factories and hired more workers. The hours were long with low wages in these factories; sometimes conditions were unsafe. But cash-paying jobs still attracted workers. The tariff did help central and eastern businessmen and workers. It cost all shoppers, including farmers, fishermen, and lumbermen, more money for their manufactured goods. The federal government used any money collected through the tariff, such as \$3 from an American manufacturer for a wood stove, to pay for government services and to help build the railway.

### The Railway

6. Prosperity did return for two years after 1879 and Macdonald started on the second part of his plan, the transcontinental railway. This railway had been promised to British Columbia when it joined Canada in 1871. Prime Minister Mackenzie had followed a slow building policy during the depression of the 1870's. Only about 1150 km of railway had been built by the Liberal government. Macdonald knew that the railway was needed to bring settlers to the West and to provide



CANADIAN INDUSTRY  
PROTECTED FROM THE U.S.A.



## **A Family Working in a Cotton Factory in the 1880's**

Maurice Beaudoin was fourteen years old and worked in the Hochelega Cotton Factory in Montreal. Maurice had started working in the factory six years ago when his family moved to Montreal from Saguenay. His father, Giles, worked in the shipping department. M. Beaudoin loaded large rolls of cloth into railway cars for .80 a day. Maurice's mother, Madeleine, worked in the weaving department for .75 a day. His sister, Julie, had joined their mother in the weaving department on her tenth birthday.

At first, Maurice had worked as a messenger boy for .25 a day. Then he moved up to the machine shop where he learned to repair some of the machines in the factory. This was a great opportunity. He earned .75 a day and one day he might become a machinist and make \$1 a day. Only machinists could hold top-paying jobs like this.

Together, the Beaudoin family earned \$2.55 per day. However, they had to be very careful not to make any mistakes. The foremen fined careless workers up to \$1 a day for wasting material or leaving a mess on the floor.

Maurice had to get up every morning at five to bring in the water from the pump for his mother while she made their lunches. Aunt Teresa looked after his two young sisters after the family left for work. They always arrived at the factory before seven so they did not have to pay fines for lateness. Everyone worked until noon, ate their lunch for an hour, and then worked for another five hours. Saturday was Maurice's favourite day because they finished at one. As soon as he finished his chores around the flat, he played street hockey with his friends. The factory usually closed down for two months in the winter. Maurice knew the family had to save their money to buy food and wood for the stove during those months. Perhaps this winter his father would even have extra money to buy him some skates!

### **Questions**

1. How old was Maurice when he started working in the cotton factory?
2. How much did young children earn per hour in the factory?
3. What was the top wage for a male worker in the factory?
4. (a) How much were women paid?  
(b) Why do you think they were paid less than men?
5. How many hours did Maurice work per week?
6. If Maurice had worked for six years in the factory, why do you think he had not bought his own pair of skates?
7. Why did the factory close for two months in the winter?
8. Do you think that the working hours and the wages of the Beaudoin family were fair?





Donald Smith



W.C. Van Horne

### Van Horne's Comment on the Last Spike

"All I have to say is that the work was well done in every way."

buyers for new Canadian industries. The steel rails would tie the young country together and bring Canadians closer together.

7. Prime Minister Macdonald wanted a Canadian company to build the railway. In 1880, a group of men led by George Stephen of the Bank of Montreal and Donald Smith of the Hudson's Bay Company formed the Canadian Pacific Railway Company (C.P.R.). The C.P.R. made an agreement with Macdonald's government to build the railway. The Canadian government generously helped the C.P.R. with \$25 000 000 and a little more than 1 000 000 ha of western land.

8. Building the railway was a real challenge. The tracks had to be laid across the rock and swamps of northern Ontario, over the southern prairies, and through the steep mountain passes and deep river gorges of the Rocky Mountains. The rock had to be blasted. The C.P.R. spent more than \$7 000 000 on dynamite, nitro-glycerine, and black powder. Tunnels were dug, swamps were filled, and bridges were built.

9. William Cornelius Van Horne directed and managed the construction of the railway line. He hired 30 000 men to survey the route, lay the rails, and hammer the spikes home. The C.P.R. brought 10 000 men from China to help build the railway because there were not enough workers in Canada. Chinese labourers were paid \$1 a day while white labourers were paid \$1.50 to \$1.75 a day. This was racial **discrimination** because workers were paid different wages for the same work. Skilled workers, like bridge carpenters, received up to \$2.50 per day. The men lived in camps along the route of the railway for nine months of the year. Construction only stopped in the dead of winter.

10. On November 7, 1885, the last spike was driven in the main line at Craigellachie, British Columbia. Van Horne and his men had built the line in four years. The C.P.R. had kept its part of the bargain in half the time required. Canada was now tied together with a ribbon of rails from East to West. The second part of John A. Macdonald's National Policy was triumphantly completed.



Red Sucker trestle



Ying Chou came to Vancouver from China in 1882. Farm labourers were paid about .07 a day in China but his family helped raise the \$40 for his passage. The Shipping Company agreed to find work for him in North America. The Shipping Company deducted passage money home and 2½ per cent from his wages. Ying Chou hoped to save \$300 in about five years. Then he would be able to return to China and buy land for his family to farm.

People in Vancouver were not very friendly. Ying Chou did not speak English. However, the Chinese Shipping Company had a job for him and the other new Chinese arrivals. They boarded open flat cars to ride to the end of the C.P.R. tracks. Working with thirty others in a group, Ying Chou loaded the rock and earth blasted by the dynamite men.

The group of Chinese workers set up their tents in the shrubs above the tracks. A Chinese cook and assistant cook prepared their rice every night. The Chinese bookman or manager of the group collected their wages and bought the supplies at the very expensive company store.

The work was very hard. Some of Ying Chou's friends died from rock slides and others died from scurvy which is caused by a lack of Vitamin C. The winters were very cold in the Rocky Mountains. No work could be done during December, January, and February. Of course, the workers did not get paid for these months. Ying Chou was paid \$1 for every day he did work. From this money, he had to pay for his clothes, food, tools, medicine, and tobacco, as well as the 2½ per cent to the Chinese Shipping Company. At the end of the first year, Ying Chou had saved \$42.50. He would have to work seven more years to save the \$300 he wanted before his return to China.

### Questions

1. What were two reasons why Ying Chou decided to come to Canada?
2. Describe the living conditions in Canada for a Chinese labourer.
3. Why did the C.P.R. hire Chinese labourers?
4. Why would Ying Chou have to wait a long time before returning to China?

### Settlement of the West

11. Now only the settlers were needed. But few came. The government tried to encourage **immigrants** to leave their own countries and come to the Canadian West. The government had been offering free farms, called homesteads, since 1872. However, only a few people settled in Manitoba in the 1870's.



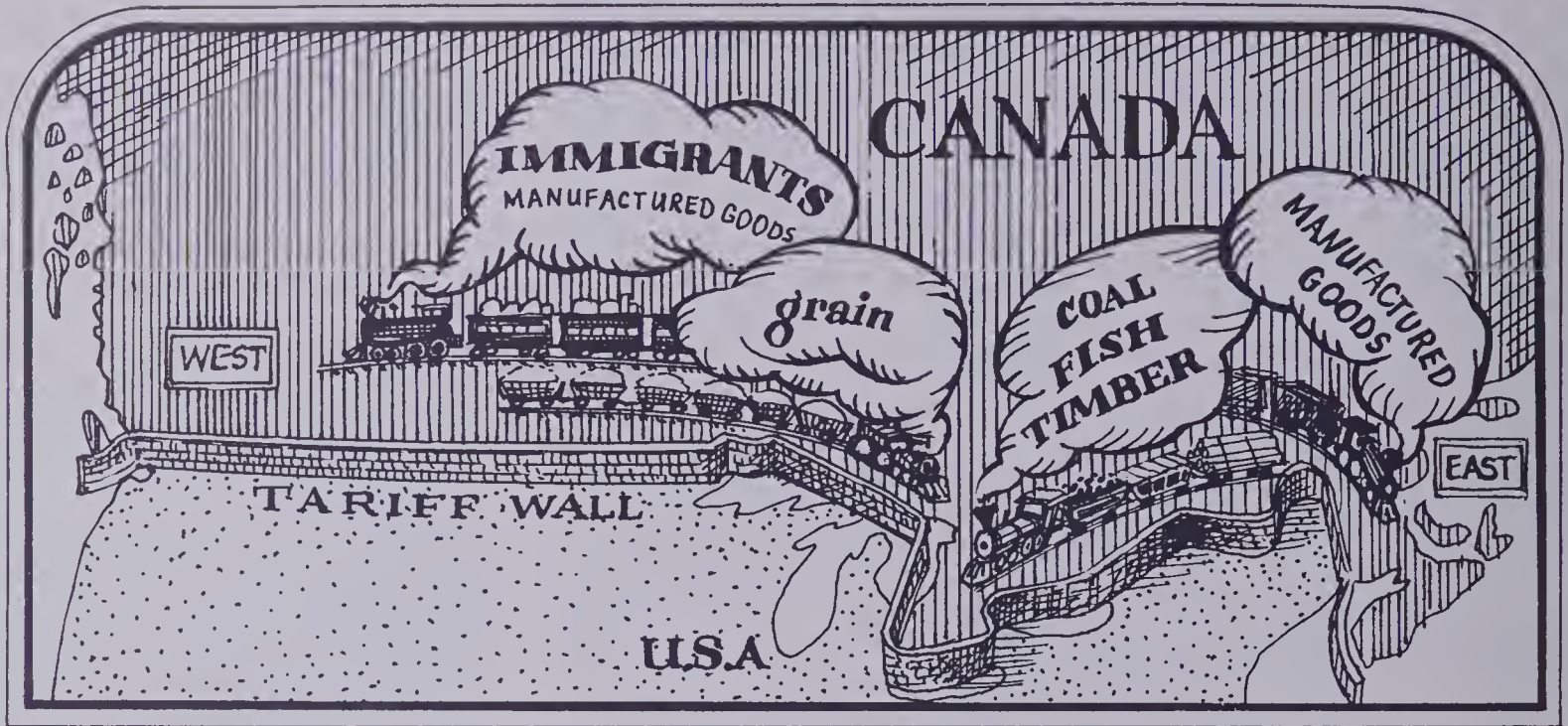
### A Chinese Labourer in 1882

*Camp of the Chinese railway workers*





12. With the coming of the railway, Winnipeg had prospered between 1880 and 1883. Then the boom ended and hard times returned. The completion of the C.P.R. did not bring as many settlers as the government and the railway had expected. Most European immigrants settled in the United States in the 1880's. Canada seemed too far, too cold, and too expensive. Canada had to wait another ten years for the great flood of immigrants to settle the West.



CANADA'S FUTURE UNDER THE NATIONAL POLICY?

### Conclusion

13. Macdonald's National Policy was only partly successful in the 1880's. The tariffs were high enough to protect Canadian businessmen and farmers from American competition. Some factories were built in central and eastern Canada. However, without the immigrant settlers to buy more products, these factories could not expand. Although some workers found jobs, many people still left for the United States. The C.P.R. was built all the way to Vancouver. But, with few passengers to buy tickets and few farmers to send grain to market, the C.P.R. had to charge high prices to cover its costs. Businessmen in St. John and Halifax questioned the cost of a railway which carried so little western grain to their harbours for shipment to Europe. Across the country, consumers disliked the high prices they had to pay for Canadian goods. When Macdonald's National Policy did not bring immediate prosperity, some people began to question the power of the federal government. Some groups threatened to break away from Canada.

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—13

#### Knowing the People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. George Stephen           | —was the second Prime Minister of Canada whose government built a small section of railway |
| Alexander Mackenzie         | —was born in the U.S.A. but became a Canadian after working for the C.P.R.                 |
| William Cornelius Van Horne | —suggested a tariff to protect Canadian businessmen and farmers                            |
| Donald Smith                | —was first President of the C.P.R. and former head of the Bank of Montreal                 |
| John A. Macdonald           | —Hudson's Bay Company employee who helped form the C.P.R.                                  |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Discrimination is
  - (a) treating people differently because of their race, colour, religion, sex, or age
  - (b) treating people the same regardless of race, colour, religion, sex, or age
  - (c) treating all people badly by paying them low wages and making them work long hours
3. Immigrants are people who
  - (a) moved from one Canadian province to another
  - (b) moved from one Canadian city to another
  - (c) moved from their own country to live in another

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. The tariff increased the price of foreign goods because
  - (a) foreign goods were less expensive than Canadian goods
  - (b) Prime Minister Macdonald disliked the Americans
  - (c) Canadian goods were cheaper than foreign goods
  - (d) all of the above
5. The transcontinental railway was a railway that
  - (a) ran from the east coast to the west coast
  - (b) was built through swamps, over rivers, and through mountains
  - (c) linked British Columbia with the rest of the country
  - (d) all of the above
6. John A. Macdonald's National Policy was not totally successful in the 1880's because
  - (a) free trade was introduced
  - (b) Van Horne was so slow in building the railway
  - (c) not many immigrants came to the West
  - (d) the tariff was too high

## Questions

7. A good title for paragraphs 2 and 3 would be
  - (a) The Election of 1878
  - (b) Public Speaking
  - (c) The National Policy
  - (d) Promises, Promises
8. In which paragraphs do you find facts about
  - (a) the wages of railway workers?
  - (b) the growth of Winnipeg?
  - (c) the C.P.R.'s use of explosives?



## USING SOURCES

The following is a summary of the contract between the federal government and the Canadian Pacific Railway Company. After you have read the information, answer the questions in your notebook.

- The Canadian government granted the company \$25 000 000.
- The Canadian government granted the company about 1 000 000 ha of land.
- The Canadian government gave the company the section of completed railway.
- The Canadian government agreed to finish building some sections of the railway and then give them to the company.
- The Canadian government allowed the company to bring any building materials into the country without having to pay the tariff.
- The Canadian government promised the company a monopoly on railway travel for twenty years. No other railway would be allowed south of the C.P.R. line during this period.
- The land given to the company was free from taxes for twenty years.
- The company would never have to pay property taxes on the railway buildings or grounds.
- The company promised to finish building the railway by 1891 and to run it efficiently.

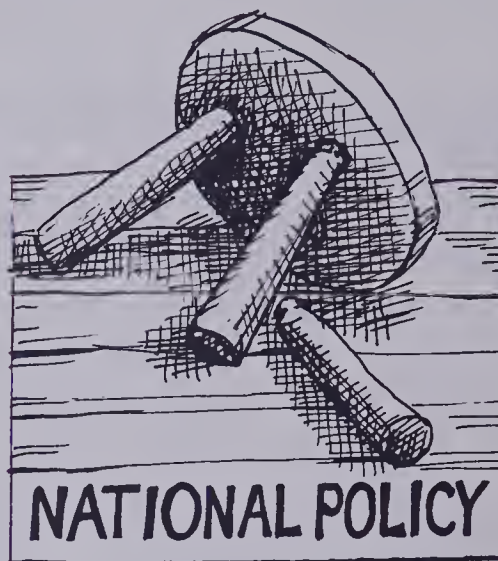
## Questions

1. Why did the Canadian government agree to give the company so much? What did the Canadian government and taxpayers receive in return?
2. Why was the granting of the monopoly a great benefit to the C.P.R.? How could this monopoly hurt the average Canadian?
3. When did the C.P.R. finish building the transcontinental railway?
4. Do you think that it is a good idea for the government to be involved in business projects like the railway?
5. Find out if the Canadian government has supported other projects besides the C.P.R.

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Understanding A Cartoon

1. What were the three "legs" of the National Policy?
2. What part of the National Policy do you think is represented by the broken leg?



### A Problem in Math

Reread the section on the tariff in paragraphs 4 and 5. Remember that the illustration of an American wood stove costing \$10 was used. In 1879, the Canadian government might have put a tariff of 30 per cent on that \$10 stove.

1. Suppose that you bought the American stove in the U.S.A. and brought it home across the border. How much tax did you have to pay to bring it into Canada?
2. What was the cost of the stove after you paid the tax?
3. Suppose that Canadian stoves sold for \$12 in 1879. With the tariff on American stoves, which stove was cheaper? How much cheaper?
4. Which stove was cheaper before the Canadian government imposed the tariff? How much cheaper?
5. Why do you think that Macdonald's government imposed the tariff in 1879?

## TIME LINE

1867-1885

EXPANSION OF CANADA	1867	—J.A. Macdonald becomes Canada's first Prime Minister
		—Joseph Howe leads separatist movement in Nova Scotia
	1869	—Purchase of Northwest Territories
		—First Riel Rebellion begins
	1870	—Execution of Thomas Scott
		—Manitoba Act
		—Province of Manitoba created
MACKENZIE FORMS LIBERAL GOVERNMENT	1871	—British Columbia joins Canada
		—Indian Treaty Conference in Manitoba
	1872	—Macdonald re-elected as Prime Minister
	1873	—Prince Edward Island joins Canada
		—North West Mounted Police created
	1873	—Pacific Scandal
		—Macdonald resigns as Prime Minister
NATIONAL POLICY		—Alexander Mackenzie becomes new Prime Minister
	1874	—First election with secret ballot
		—Alexander Mackenzie and Liberals win election
		—World depression begins
	1875	—B.C. threatens to separate if Pacific Railway not built
	1878	—Macdonald wins election with National Policy
	1879	—Tariff raised
	1880	—Canadian Pacific Railway Company created
	1881	—Van Horne takes over building of CPR
	1885	—Transcontinental railway completed

### Reading the Time Line

Study the Time Line. Answer the following questions.

1. How old was Canada when the transcontinental railway was completed?
2. How many provinces joined Canada between 1870 and 1873?
3. In what year did Alexander Mackenzie become Prime Minister of Canada?
4. Name the parts of the National Policy that are listed on the Time Line.
5. When did the world depression begin?
6. How many years had Macdonald been Prime Minister between 1867 and 1885?

### EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

You are a recent immigrant to Canada from a country of your choice. It is 1883. You have found a job. You can either be working for the C.P.R. or in a factory.

Write a letter to your relatives. Tell them what it is like to live and work in Canada. Based on what you think of life in 1883, advise them to immigrate to Canada or to stay in their own country.



## CHAPTER FIVE

# Opposition To The National Policy

**AIM:** Why Did Some Canadians Dislike The National Policy?



*Louis Riel*

### Why Did Some Métis and Indians Rebel in 1885?

1. When the Manitoba Act of 1870 gave the Métis their rights, it was seen as a great victory. Their lands, religion, language, and way of life seemed to be protected. However, after 1870, white English-speaking settlers continued to arrive in Manitoba and many of the Métis felt threatened. Some sold their lands for very cheap prices and moved farther west. Many moved to the Saskatchewan River to escape the English settlers. For a few years, they led a contented life. Then surveyors arrived and began to divide the land into sections. The Métis knew from past experience that settlers were sure to follow. Once again they felt threatened. They were afraid that they would lose their land and way of life. Then they remembered their old leader, Louis Riel, and what he had won for them in 1870.

2. After the rebellion of 1870, Louis Riel had fled to Quebec and then to the U.S.A. The execution of Thomas Scott hung over his head like a knife. Riel was a wanted man. A reward of \$5000 was offered in Ontario for his arrest. During this time, Riel became mentally ill. He was admitted twice to mental hospitals to help him with his problems. He became a teacher in Montana and married. In 1884, the Métis asked him to come back to the Northwest to lead them. He felt well enough to accept.

3. The Métis were not the only ones who wanted Riel to come back. The Indians were also dissatisfied. The great buffalo herds had been killed off by white hunters and the Indians faced starvation. Those Indians who lived on reservations were angry with the Canadian government because it had not lived up to its promises. The food, supplies, and farm training that had been promised to them in their treaties were often not provided. They did not know what to do. The North West Mounted Police asked Macdonald to improve the conditions of the Indians. Even the white settlers of the Northwest wanted Riel to come back to improve conditions in the West. They received low prices for their grain and had also experienced poor harvests. Yet, they paid high

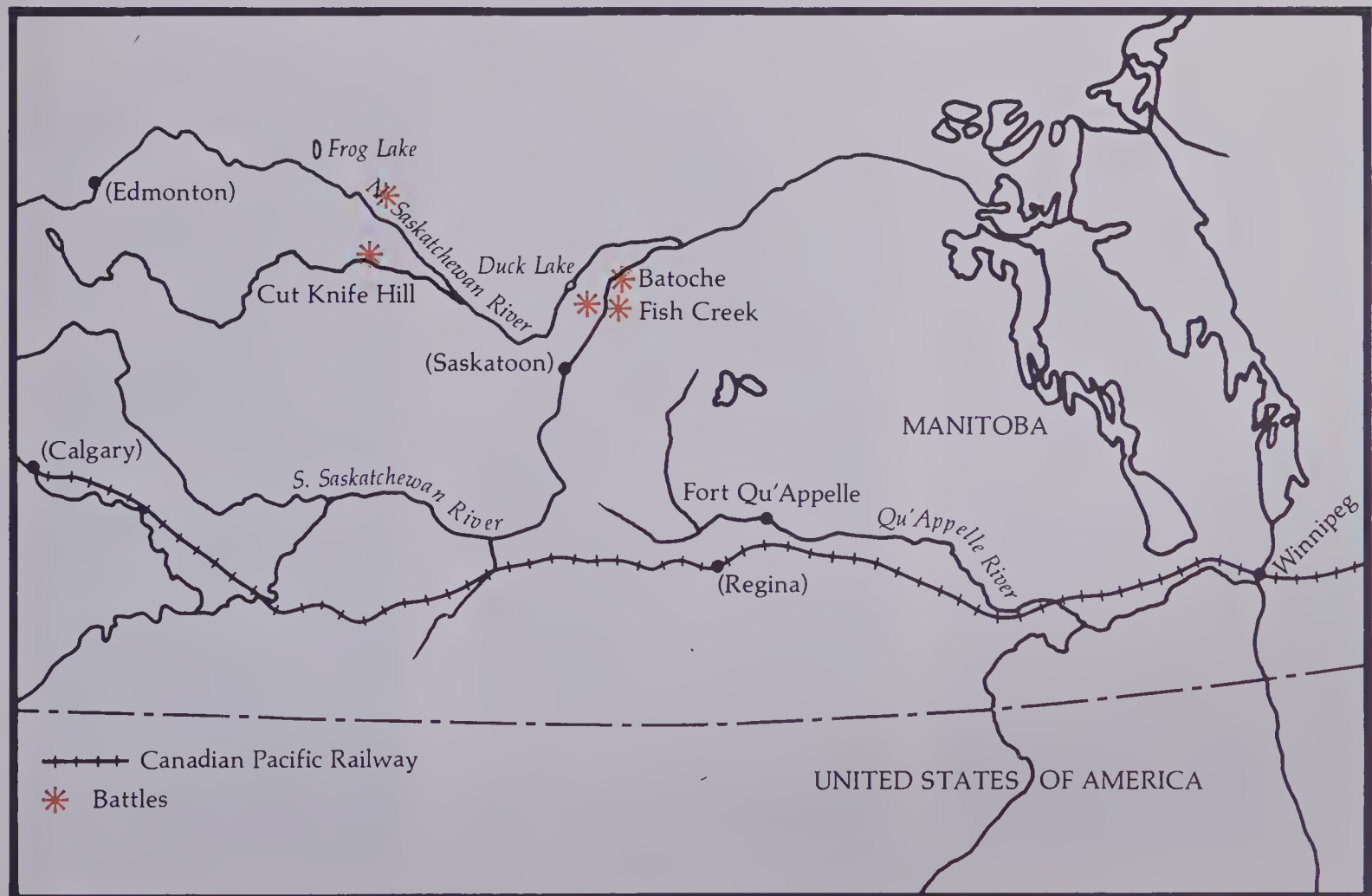
prices for factory goods because of the high tariffs. They wanted these tariffs reduced.

4. In 1884, Riel returned to his people. He received a hero's welcome. People thought that something would now be done to solve their many problems. A **petition** (a written request signed by many people) was sent to Macdonald. It listed the problems that the Indians, Métis, and settlers were having and asked the government to solve them. Macdonald's nickname was "Old Tomorrow" because he often delayed making important decisions. He delayed making a decision on the Northwest. Riel became impatient. He believed that he could force Macdonald to pass a law that would give his people everything he had won for them in 1870. He thought that if he set up his own government, Macdonald would be forced to give in.

### What Happened?

5. On March 19, 1885, Riel set up his government at Batoche. The second Riel rebellion had begun! Riel invited the Indian tribes to join the war against the Canadian government. Only Chiefs Big Bear and Poundmaker of the Cree Indians decided to join Riel in the fight against the white men in Ottawa. This time, Macdonald said that Canada was going to fight back.

THE REBELLION OF 1885







*Gabriel Dumont*

#### Battle of Batoche Casualties

	<i>Killed</i>	<i>Wounded</i>
Métis Losses	51	173
Canadian Losses	8	46

Riel could have escaped to the U.S.A. Instead, he decided to surrender, which he did on May 15, 1885. Gabriel Dumont managed to escape to the U.S.A.

During the rebellion, Riel's only weapon was the cross he carried and his faith in God. He regarded himself as the religious leader of the Métis. Gabriel Dumont was the military leader of the Métis. He planned the battles and led the Métis into battle. The commander of the Canadian troops was a British officer, General Middleton. Middleton's 8000 troops greatly outnumbered the 1000 rebels. Despite being outnumbered, the Métis and Indians fought bravely in several battles. They fought best in hit-and-run battles. Taking cover in the bushes, they took their enemies by surprise. For example, on April 24, 1885, Gabriel Dumont successfully used this **guerrilla warfare** against General Middleton at the Battle of Fish Creek. Ten Canadian soldiers were killed and forty wounded. The Métis lost only four men. This battle slowed down Middleton's march on Batoche by two weeks. On May 2, 1885, Chief Poundmaker and his Indians defeated Colonel Otter and his 385 men at the Battle of Cut Knife Hill. They also used guerrilla warfare. The Indians won despite the fact that Colonel Otter had a new weapon called the Gatling Gun, a type of machine gun.

6. Despite the Indian and Métis successes, the Canadian troops surrounded Riel's headquarters in Batoche. On May 12, 1885, the last battle of the rebellion took place; the Canadian troops captured Batoche. Chiefs Poundmaker and Big Bear surrendered and were sentenced to three years in jail. Eight other Indians were hanged. The second Riel rebellion had failed.



*Chief Big Bear*



*Chief Poundmaker*



*General Middleton*

Jim Rogers was a militiaman from London, Ontario. To become a militiaman, Jim had trained once a month with his militia unit. He had learned to handle a rifle and to become a soldier. He had been a member of General Middleton's army which captured Batoche on May 12, 1885.

He was proud of himself and his ability as a soldier. He had been surprised by the bravery of the Métis. He also had a great deal of respect for Gabriel Dumont, the Métis commander. Dumont and his men had slowed down the Canadian Army. He well remembered the ambush at Fish Creek. He had been lucky not to be wounded or killed. Jim also admired Dumont's defence of Batoche, the Métis headquarters. Rifle pits had been dug all around Batoche. They were about four feet deep and had given cover to the Métis sharpshooters. From these pits, the Métis had been able to hold off the Canadian army for three days with few casualties to themselves. The Métis had been outnumbered and had run out of bullets. They had then used nails and stones as ammunition.

Surprisingly, Jim did not admire his own commander, General Middleton. Jim thought that the British general was a snob. He had never asked for advice and had not known how to fight a battle in this kind of countryside. It would have been better if a Canadian general had led the troops. Jim thought that the general had been a poor leader. Middleton had been uncertain and had hesitated at the wrong moments. This poor leadership had cost men their lives. If someone like Dumont had led them, the rebellion would have been over long ago. General Middleton had even refused to attack the rifle pits protecting Batoche. On the fourth day of the siege, the Canadian troops had acted on their own without orders. They had attacked and captured the rifle pits and within an hour they had taken Batoche.

Jim remembered all the hardships he had gone through in the last few months. He left London in March and had travelled in an open box car to the West. It had still been winter! In the cold, some of the men had frost-bitten toes. The railroad had still not been completed. When the train had come to an unfinished section of track, the men had been forced to march across the frozen land to the next section of track. Sometimes they were lucky and travelled by horse-drawn sleds. But, Jim had to admit that the railroad had gotten them to the West in a hurry. Without it, the rebellion would have lasted much longer.

### Questions

1. Compare Jim's opinion of Dumont and Middleton. Which one did he think was the better leader and why?
2. Describe Jim's trip to the West.



### Jim, the Militiaman — Batoche, 1885





### Why Did the Rebellion Fail?

7. Unfortunately for Riel and his followers, the conditions that existed in the Northwest in 1885 were very different from those of 1870.

- The North West Mounted Police now kept order in the West and were respected by the Indians. They persuaded many Indians not to join Riel. They also tried to put down the rebellion.

- The transcontinental railway was nearly completed when the rebellion began. It transported 8000 fighting men to the Northwest.

- The people in the Northwest were divided on the use of force. When the rebellion began, the white settlers withdrew their support from Riel. They were not prepared to use violence against the government to get what they wanted. The English-speaking Métis also withdrew their support for similar reasons. The Indians were also split on whether to support Riel. Only Chiefs Poundmaker and Big Bear and their Cree tribesmen joined Riel. The rest of the Indians did not take part in the rebellion.

### Plea by Louis Riel

“Gentlemen, please do not remain neutral. For the love of God help us save Saskatchewan.”

### What Happened at Riel’s Trial?

8. Louis Riel was charged with high treason as a traitor to his country. His trial took place in Regina and created further divisions between English and French Canadians. He was tried by a jury of six men. These men were English-speaking Protestants. During the trial, Riel’s lawyers argued that he was insane and did not understand what he was doing during the rebellion. They pointed out that he had been a patient in mental hospitals. If the jury accepted this argument, Riel could not be found guilty of high treason.

9. Riel disagreed with his own lawyers. He said he was not insane. He believed that he was the leader of the Métis and had been sent by God to save them. The lawyers for the government argued that he was sane and knew what he had done. He was responsible for the rebellion. They wanted the jury to find him guilty of high treason. A person found guilty of this crime would be executed. The jury decided that Riel was guilty, but recommended mercy. They did not want him to be hanged; they wanted him to go to prison. The judge sentenced Riel to death. Prime Minister Macdonald had to decide whether Riel should be hanged or the jury's request for mercy should be accepted.

### Why Was Riel Executed?

10. A great deal of pressure was put on Macdonald by both the English and French Canadians. English Canadians in the East remembered that Riel had ordered the execution of Thomas Scott in 1870. They had not forgiven him. They thought he was a murderer and wanted him executed. The French Canadians wanted Macdonald to save Riel. They thought he was a hero. He had stood up for the French-speaking Métis and the Roman Catholic religion. Riel had tried to stop the assimilation of the Métis by English settlers.

11. John A. Macdonald had to make a choice. He knew that if he executed Riel, he would lose the support of the French Canadians. The French Canadians had voted Conservative and had helped to keep Macdonald in power. On the other hand, Macdonald knew that if he did not execute Riel, Ontario voters would not vote for him and his Conservative Party. In the end, Macdonald decided to go ahead with the execution. On November 16, 1885, Riel went bravely to his death. The execution of Riel divided Canada in two.

### What Effects Did the Rebellion and Riel's Death Have on Canada?

12. Louis Riel's execution had a very bad effect on relations between English and French Canadians. Some French Canadians felt that English Canadians had killed a French Canadian and were not to be trusted. They felt that both Macdonald and his Conservatives had betrayed them. The support that French Canadians had always given to the Conservatives was coming to an end. They began to support the Liberal Party. They still support the Liberal Party today.

13. When the second rebellion failed, the Métis and Indians gave up trying to stop the white settlers from coming to the West. Many of the Métis moved further west into what later became known as Alberta. The Indians who had supported Riel moved onto reservations and gave up forever their old ways of life.



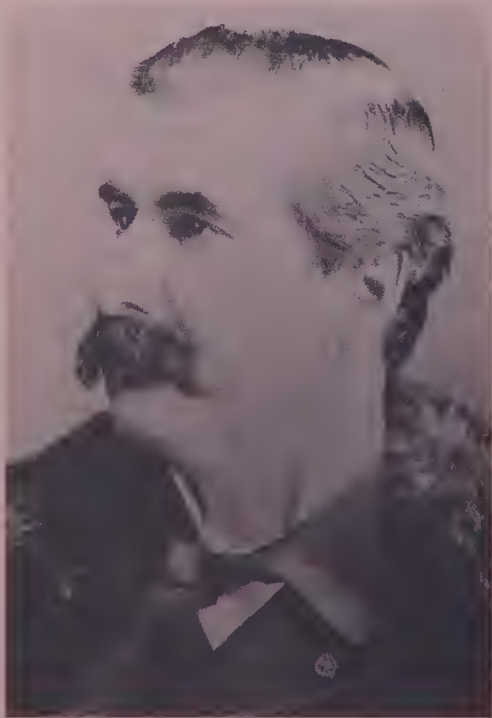
14. The end of the rebellion meant that huge areas of western lands were now open to the white settlers. The rebellion had also saved the Canadian Pacific Railway. It had been nearly bankrupt before the rebellion took place. The C.P.R. needed another loan from the Canadian government to pay its workers and to finish building the railway. Before the rebellion, many Canadians had opposed another loan to the railway. They believed that the government had provided enough money. Their opinions changed when Van Horne managed to transport the Canadian troops to the West in just a few days. He had managed to do this, despite the fact that some sections of the railroad were not completed. Van Horne proved to Canadians the importance of the railway for the safety of the country. The government gave the loan and the C.P.R. was saved from bankruptcy.

### **Why Did Some Provinces Dislike Macdonald's National Policy?**

15. The French people of Quebec were shocked and angered by Prime Minister Macdonald's decision to let Louis Riel be hanged. Honoré Mercier, the leader of the Liberal Party in



**Honoré Mercier**



Honoré Mercier was a big man with a handle-bar moustache. He was considered very handsome and was an excellent speaker. He was a Quebec nationalist and wanted to make Quebec stronger and richer. He was not a separatist but he did want more power and money for Quebec. He wanted to limit the power of the federal government.

He was a lawyer, a politician, and leader of the provincial Liberal Party. After the execution of Riel, he created a new party in Quebec, called the Parti National. He appealed to French Canadians to unite and defend their culture. In 1886, he was elected Premier of Quebec for four years. As Premier, he encouraged French Canadians who had left Quebec to return and strengthen the French Canadian culture. He supported the Roman Catholic church and even passed a law called the Jesuit Estates Act. This provincial law paid \$400 000 to the Jesuit priests and the Roman Catholic church. It also gave Quebec Protestant schools \$60 000. This money was given to pay for the Jesuit lands which had been taken over by the British at the time of the Conquest. Mercier angered English Canadians by passing this law. They were afraid he was giving the Roman Catholic Church too much power.

As Premier of Quebec, Mercier tried to develop the lands in the north of Quebec. He also introduced laws to protect children who worked in factories. He was defeated in the election of 1891 over a railway scandal and charges of corruption.

Quebec, asked French Canadians to join a new 'Parti National'. This was a party that would defend the French Canadian 'nation' or people. Mercier said that the hanging of Riel proved that French Canadians could no longer trust John A. Macdonald or the Conservative Party.

16. The Parti National won the Quebec provincial election of 1886 and Mercier became the Premier of Quebec. For many French Canadians, Macdonald's National Policy spelled the end of French Canadian culture in the West. They feared that someday all French Canadians would be assimilated by the English. Mercier wanted French Canadians to unite to defend their language and culture.

17. Oliver Mowat, the Premier of Ontario, was also very suspicious of John A. Macdonald. Mowat was a Father of Confederation and had been the Liberal Premier of Ontario since 1872. Mowat accused Prime Minister Macdonald of trying to make the federal government in Ottawa too powerful by disallowing provincial laws. Mowat was determined to protect **provincial rights** to make laws on certain matters. The two leaders and the two levels of government fought for the control of rivers. They fought over the western boundary of Ontario. They fought over the power to give liquor licences to hotels and taverns. Premier Mowat took these issues to court in Britain. In each case, Mowat won. His victories increased the powers of all the provincial governments.

18. The people of Manitoba had welcomed the Canadian Pacific Railway with open arms in 1881. However, they greatly disliked the monopoly that Prime Minister Macdonald had given to the C.P.R. for twenty years. The monopoly meant that the C.P.R. was the only railway. The C.P.R. could charge whatever prices it wanted for passengers and freight. Because of the C.P.R.'s high freight rates, the Manitoba provincial government tried to build a railway south to the railways in the United States. Prime Minister Macdonald disallowed this because he wanted to continue to protect the C.P.R. This angered the Manitoba provincial government. After many arguments, Macdonald finally agreed in 1888 to end the C.P.R.'s monopoly.

19. The most serious opposition to the National Policy was in Nova Scotia. In the 1886 provincial election, W.S. Fielding asked the voters to support his policy of separatism. Fielding promised to lead Nova Scotia out of Canada unless the federal government lowered the tariff and paid more money to Nova Scotia. Fielding said that a separate and independent Nova Scotia within the British Empire could negotiate a Reciprocity Treaty with the United States. A Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. would bring cheaper goods into Nova Scotia and increase sales and trade with the U.S.A.



*Oliver Mowat*

### **Oliver Mowat's Speech After His Victory on the Ontario Boundary Question, 1884**

"We have been engaged lately in a great battle (with the federal government). We won it for you and we won it for every part of our country.

Now why is it that we are so anxious that the limits of our province shall not be curtailed (held back)? First, ... we love Ontario, we believe in Ontario, and we know ... that it is in the interest of the Dominion, as well as the (other) provinces ... that ... Ontario should not be restricted. Ontario is the 'back bone' of the Dominion."

### **Letter from William S. Fielding, Premier of Nova Scotia, 1886**

"I am an Anti-Confederate. I cannot forget the manner in which Nova Scotia was forced into the union ... I do not conceal from anybody the fact that I regard Confederation as a wrong and ... an injury to Nova Scotia."





DEMANDS OF THE PROVINCES

20. Fielding and his Nova Scotia Liberal Party won the provincial election of 1886. Twenty-one separatist MLAs were elected. Fielding immediately demanded higher money grants from Ottawa, but Macdonald's government ignored his demands. In the 1887 federal election, Nova Scotia voters elected fourteen Conservatives and seven Liberals. Only two MPs supported separatism. The people of Nova Scotia may have been unhappy with parts of the National Policy, but they were not ready to separate from Canada.

### The Provincial Conference of 1887

21. The Premiers of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Ontario, and Manitoba accepted Premier Mercier's invitation to attend the first Interprovincial Conference at Quebec City. They met for eight days and passed twenty-four resolutions. The Premiers attacked Prime Minister Macdonald and the federal government. They demanded more tax money for the provinces, the appointment of half the Senators, and the end of federal disallowance of provincial laws. Although Macdonald ignored the demands of the provinces, their power continued to grow nevertheless. This was the first provincial conference to attack the federal government's powers. Interprovincial conferences are still held today.

### What Did Laurier and the Liberals Want Instead of the National Policy?

22. The Liberals had always supported the settlement of the West. After the building of the C.P.R. in 1885, they disagreed with two Conservative policies. First, the Liberals supported provincial rights and opposed the disallowance of provincial laws. Second, they opposed the tariff.

23. In the election of 1891, Laurier, the leader of the Liberal Party, suggested **unrestricted reciprocity** with the United States. This really meant free trade in all goods between Canada and the U.S.A. Free trade would reduce the price of manufactured goods for consumers, especially farmers, lumbermen, and fishermen. At the same time, they would be able to sell more of their products in the U.S.A. This would answer the complaints of both the Maritimes and the West.

24. Macdonald and the Conservatives disagreed. They said that unrestricted reciprocity with the United States would lead to American **annexation** of Canada. They feared that free trade with the U.S.A. was the first step towards an American takeover of Canada. The Conservative Party asked Canadians to support "The Old Flag, the Old Policy, and the Old Leader".



## What Did the Majority of Canadians Think About the National Policy?

25. Canadians in every region were unhappy with parts of the National Policy. Some Westerners and Maritimers disliked the tariff; Manitoba hated the railway monopoly; French Canadians feared the western settlement policy. However, a majority of Canadians voted for Prime Minister Macdonald and, thus, for his National Policy in the 1891 election. Businessmen supported the National Policy because the tariff protected them from American competition. Workers accepted the National Policy because the tariff protected their jobs despite the low wages and unhealthy conditions. Many Canadians feared the power of the United States. They wanted to remain close to Britain. They were also proud of Canada.

26. At the age of 76, John A. Macdonald won his fourth election in a row. The election weakened him and he died on June 6, 1891, after being Canada's Prime Minister for nineteen years. John A. Macdonald had dreamed of a prosperous and united Canada. He gave his dream and his life to Canada.

---

### UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

#### Paragraphs 1—14

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Write the statement that best describes each person beside the name.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. Big Bear       | —saved the C.P.R. financially by transporting the troops to the West quickly |
| Colonel Otter     | —leader of the Métis who was captured, tried, and executed                   |
| Gabriel Dumont    | —led the Indians at the battle of Cut Knife Hill                             |
| Poundmaker        | —British officer who led the Canadian army against the rebels                |
| Louis Riel        | —leader of the Métis who used guerrilla warfare                              |
| General Middleton | —leader of the Canadian forces that were defeated at Cut Knife Hill          |
| W.C. Van Horne    | —rejected the jury's suggestion of mercy and allowed Riel to be executed     |
| John A. Macdonald | —Cree Indian chief who joined the rebel forces                               |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A petition is
  - (a) a letter to your MP listing your complaints
  - (b) a public meeting held to stop a government decision
  - (c) a written request signed by many people
3. Guerrilla warfare means
  - (a) using a Gatling gun
  - (b) hit and run battles
  - (c) losing a great number of men

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. The white settlers of the Northwest encouraged Riel to return in 1884 because
  - (a) they regarded him as a hero and wanted him to save the buffalo
  - (b) they thought he would force Macdonald to correct the problems they were facing
  - (c) they were receiving high prices for their grain but could not sell it
  - (d) all of the above



5. The Riel Rebellion of 1885 failed because
  - (a) the transcontinental railway was almost completed
  - (b) Riel did not receive much support from the Indians
  - (c) the North West Mounted Police now kept order in the West
  - (d) many people in the Northwest did not want to use force against the government
  - (e) all of the above

### Questions

6. How many men did the C.P.R. transport to the West to stop the Rebellion?
7. What was the charge against Riel?

### Paragraphs 15—26

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Wilfrid Laurier —won a Nova Scotia provincial election with a promise to separate from Canada
- Oliver Mowat —asked French Canadians to unite in order to defend their culture
- William S. Fielding —Liberal Premier of Ontario for 24 years who opposed a strong federal government
- Honoré Mercier —leader of the federal Liberal Party who suggested unrestricted reciprocity with the U.S.A.

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Provincial rights means
  - (a) the right of provincial governments to make laws on certain matters according to the B.N.A. Act
  - (b) the right of the federal government to attack the provinces
  - (c) the right of the provinces to separate from the rest of Canada, if they wish
3. Unrestricted reciprocity means
  - (a) no trade between two countries
  - (b) two countries agree to lower their tariffs on some products
  - (c) free trade on all goods between two countries

4. Annexation means that
  - (a) one country declares war on another country
  - (b) one country takes over the territory of another country
  - (c) one group of people loses its language and starts speaking the language of a neighbouring group

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

5. Honoré Mercier started the “Parti National” because
  - (a) he wanted to become Premier of Quebec
  - (b) he was shocked and angered by the hanging of Louis Riel
  - (c) he wanted French Canadians to unite and protect their culture
  - (d) all of the above
6. Oliver Mowat disagreed with John A. Macdonald because
  - (a) Mowat wanted to extend the boundaries of Ontario westward
  - (b) Mowat thought that John A. was in favour of provincial rights
  - (c) Mowat disliked all Liberals like Macdonald
  - (d) all of the above
7. The provincial government of Manitoba wanted to build a railway because
  - (a) the C.P.R. had gone broke
  - (b) the C.P.R. was not finished
  - (c) the C.P.R. had a monopoly and charged high freight rates
  - (d) the C.P.R. did not run through Manitoba
8. Premier Fielding wanted Nova Scotia to separate from Canada because
  - (a) the high prices under the tariff cost Nova Scotians a lot of money
  - (b) the federal government did not pay enough money to Nova Scotia
  - (c) he wanted a Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A.
  - (d) all of the above

#### Questions

9. How did Oliver Mowat increase the powers of provincial governments?
10. Why did five provincial Premiers meet at an Interprovincial Conference in 1887?
11. Why did John A. Macdonald win the election of 1891?

## USING SOURCES

The following is a summary of court procedure and of the events at the trial of Louis Riel. Also included are excerpts from Riel's speech to the jury. Read the following selections carefully and then answer the questions at the end.

### I. Introduction to Criminal Procedure

When a person is charged with a very serious crime such as "high treason", the accused has the right to a trial by a judge and a jury of twelve people from the community. When the accused pleads "not guilty" to the charge, the government must present evidence to prove the accused person is guilty.

The lawyers who present the evidence collected by the police and government are called Crown Attorneys. A Crown Attorney explains the case to the jury. Then the Crown Attorney calls witnesses to present evidence (facts) to try and prove that the person is guilty. An accused person is presumed (believed) innocent until proven guilty. The Crown Attorney must present enough evidence to convince the jury that the accused person is guilty "beyond a reasonable doubt". The jurors must make their decisions based on only the evidence presented in the courtroom during the trial.

When the Crown Attorney calls a witness, the witness takes an oath to tell the truth in the witness stand. Then the Crown Attorney asks the witness questions (examines). When the Crown is finished, the Defence lawyer may ask questions (cross-examine). Finally, the Crown Attorney may ask more questions (re-examine).

After the Crown Attorneys have called all their witnesses and presented all the evidence, the Defence lawyers may call their witnesses and present evidence. The Crown Attorney may cross-examine defence witnesses.

When all the witnesses have been called, a Defence lawyer makes a speech explaining why the Defence thinks the accused should be found not guilty. Then, in a treason trial, the accused is allowed to speak to the jury.

Then the Crown Attorney speaks to the jury and explains why the Crown thinks the accused should be found guilty.

Finally, the Judge speaks to the jury. The Judge explains the law and reviews the evidence for the jurors. Then the jury goes into a separate room and discusses the evidence. When they all agree, the jurors return to the courtroom and tell the court their decision (verdict). If they all agree that the accused is not guilty, then the person is released. If they cannot agree on a verdict, then a new trial may be held with a new jury to try and

come to a verdict. This is called a hung jury. If they all agree that the accused is guilty, then the judge must sentence the accused according to the criminal law.

### II. A Summary of the Trial of Louis Riel

Louis Riel was tried in Regina during July and August, 1885. Riel was charged with high treason (making war against the government) and he pleaded "not guilty". Riel was tried before two judges and a jury of six English-speaking Protestants. They used six jurors instead of twelve because of the small population in the North West Territories in 1885. In the province of Manitoba, Riel would have had the right to a mixed jury of white and Métis. This was not the law in the North West Territories, however.

Three Crown Attorneys, two English and one French Canadian, presented the evidence for the government. They argued that Louis Riel was guilty of high treason because he had organized the Métis and Indians to make war at Duck Lake, Fish Creek, and Batoche where many people were killed. They said that Riel knew exactly what he was doing. They argued that Riel planned and directed the rebellion to gain money, power, and glory for himself. The Crown Attorneys called many witnesses. They also presented direct evidence such as letters in Riel's handwriting to the Indians and the North West Mounted Police.

Three English and one French Canadian lawyer defended Louis Riel. They agreed that there had been a war in the Northwest. But they argued that Riel had never shot anyone. He had carried a crucifix, not a gun. They said that the reason for the rebellion was the failure of the Canadian government to listen to the cries of frightened,





hungry, and starving people in the Northwest. They said that Riel's decision to fight was the decision of an insane man who believed he was sent by God to save the Métis and punish Canada. The Defence lawyers asked the jury to find Louis Riel not guilty on the grounds of insanity.

### III. Louis Riel's Speech to the Jury, July 31, 1885

Louis Riel did not agree with his defence lawyers. He thought that he was sane. Here are excerpts from the speech he made in his own defence.

"Your Honours, gentlemen of the jury. It would be easy for me today to play insanity because (of) the circumstances ... the natural excitement ... (and) I cannot speak English very well. ... I hope with the help of God I will maintain calmness ...

The Northwest is ... my mother. It is my mother country. Although my mother country is sick ... I am sure that my mother country will not kill me more than my mother did forty years ago when I came into the world.

It is true, gentlemen, I believed for years I had a mission (in the Northwest). When I speak of a mission you will understand. ... I say that I have been blessed by God. ... He has maintained my health to go through the world ... He has kept me from bullets, when bullets marked my hat. ...

The agitation (trouble) in the North West Territories would have been (peaceful) ... if, in my opinion, we had not been attacked. ... When we sent petitions to the government, they used to answer us by sending police. ...

It is not to be supposed that the half-breeds acknowledged me as a prophet if they had not seen that I could see into the future. ... We all see into the future more or less. ... The half-breed by the movement of the hand, sometimes of his shoulder, sometimes his legs, can (know) ... what will happen (in the future). ... If it is any satisfaction to the doctors to know what kind of insanity I have, ... I say humbly, through the grace of God, I believe I am the prophet of the new world. ...

Gentlemen of the jury, my reputation, my liberty, my life, are (in your hands). ... By the testimony laid before you during my trial ... petition after petition had been sent to the federal government. So irresponsible is that government to the Northwest that ... besides doing nothing to satisfy the people of this great land, it has ... hardly answer(ed) once. ... That

fact would indicate an absolute lack of responsibility, and therefore insanity ... (in the government).

The Ministers of an insane and irresponsible government ... made up their minds to answer my petitions by surrounding me ... and by attempting to jump upon me suddenly and upon my people in Saskatchewan. Happily when they appeared and showed their teeth to devour, I was ready. That is what is called my crime of high treason, and to which they hold me today. Oh, my good jurors, in the name of Jesus Christ, the only one who can help me, they have tried to tear me to pieces.

... You are perfectly justified in declaring that having my reason and sound mind, I have acted reasonably and in self-defence. The government, my accuser, being irresponsible, and consequently insane, ... acted wrongly. If high treason there is, it must be on its side and not on my part.

For fifteen years I have been neglecting myself. ... I never had much (money) to buy any clothing. The Rev. Father André has often had the kindness to feed my family with a sack of flour. ... My wife and children are without means while I am working ... in the Northwest. Although ... I worked to better the conditions of the people of the Saskatchewan at the risk of my life, ... I have never had any pay. ...

I thank you for the attention you have given me, gentlemen of the jury. ... I put my speech under the protection of my God, my Saviour. He is the only one who can make it effective."

### Questions

1. What did Riel see as his mission? Who had called him to this mission?
2. Riel did not call himself a rebel or a traitor. What did he call himself? Explain what you think he meant by this term.
3. According to Riel, why did the Métis fight?
4. Where did Riel put the blame for causing the rebellion?
5. Do you see any signs of insanity in Riel's speech?
6. Imagine that you are a juror for Riel's trial. With the information you have, would you find Riel sane or insane? Still thinking as a juror, what is your final verdict? Is Riel guilty of high treason? Support your verdict.

## Conclusion

On August 1, 1885, the jury found Louis Riel guilty of high treason. However, the jurors recommended mercy. Louis Riel spoke again to the court before sentencing. Then the Judge sentenced Louis Riel "to be hanged by the neck until you are dead and may God have mercy on your soul". The Judge sent the decision and the jury's recommendation of mercy to Prime Minister Macdonald. Prime Minister Macdonald decided to reject mercy. Louis Riel was hanged on November 16, 1885 in Regina.

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Completing A Chart

Copy this chart into your notebook. Review chapters four and five before you complete the chart.

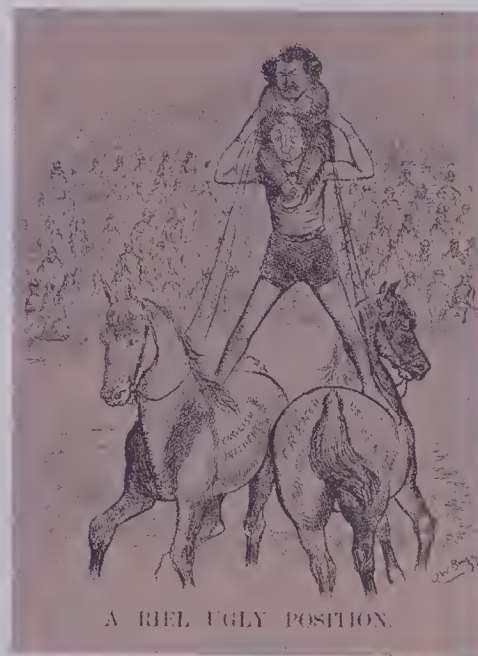
For each issue listed in the first column, write the Conservative plan in the second column and the Liberal plan in the third column. The chart has been started for you.

ISSUE	CONSERVATIVE PLAN	LIBERAL PLAN
Increase trade	raise the tariff	
Transcontinental railway		build slowly in stages over twenty years or as needed
Settlement of the West		
Power of the federal government	should be strong	
Power of the provincial governments		

## Understanding A Cartoon

Study the following cartoon and then answer the questions.

1. Who is on Macdonald's neck in the cartoon?
2. Why is Macdonald shown with one foot on each horse?
3. Why are the horses facing different directions?



## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

### Maps Can Tell Stories

Make a list of the reasons why the white settlers, the Métis, and the Indians in the West were unhappy in 1884.

On a map of Canada, illustrate those reasons. The illustrations can be drawn, traced, and/or photocopied. For example, you could have an illustration of a buffalo being killed to show one of the reasons for the Indians' unhappiness.

### Class Discussion

"Did Louis Riel deserve to be hanged?" Using the different points of view presented in the chapter, debate this question. All members of the class may participate, or several members may be selected to do the actual debating.



## CHAPTER SIX

# Unrest And Prosperity Under Laurier

AIM: How Did Laurier Lead Canadians into the Twentieth Century?

### Conservative Troubles

1. With the death of Prime Minister Macdonald in 1891, the country faced a problem. Who would become leader of the Conservative Party and the next Prime Minister of Canada? The Conservatives tried four different leaders. First, John Abbott became Prime Minister, but he was 70 years old and soon became ill. John Thompson became the next party leader and Prime Minister in 1892. Thompson was a hard-working Nova Scotian lawyer. Unfortunately, he died of a heart attack at the age of 50 while visiting Queen Victoria at Windsor Castle, December 12, 1894. Mackenzie Bowell followed Thompson as leader of the Conservatives and Prime Minister. Bowell was 71 years old and he was unable to win the loyalty and support of his fellow Conservatives. He was forced to resign April 27, 1896. Charles Tupper became Prime Minister at the age of 75 and tried to save the Conservatives from defeat in the 1896 election. He failed. Tupper and the Conservatives lost to Laurier and the Liberals.

2. Certainly, the Conservatives had very bad luck with their party leaders after Macdonald. Thompson died, Abbott and Bowell were too weak, and Tupper arrived too late. But there was a second reason for the defeat of the Conservatives in 1896—the Manitoba Schools Question.

### The Manitoba Schools Question

3. In 1890, the Manitoba provincial government passed a new education law. This law set up one public education system under a Minister of Education. Up to this time, Manitoba had religious schools (Protestant and Catholic) in each community. The schools received money from the provincial government based on their number of students. Under the new law, the provincial government only gave money to public schools. Parents

who wanted their children to attend religious schools would have to pay the cost of such schooling as well as their education taxes to the provincial government.

4. The French Roman Catholics in Manitoba said that the new education law was wrong and illegal. They said that the Manitoba Act of 1870 had guaranteed their right to religious schools. In reply, Premier Greenway said that times had changed. The English Protestants were now the majority in Manitoba and they wanted one public school system for all children. They said that it was very important to teach English to immigrant children.

5. The French Roman Catholic minority took the Manitoba law to court. In 1892, a British court finally declared that the new Manitoba law was legal. What was the French Roman Catholic minority in Manitoba to do? Did this mean that Manitoba and the Northwest were only for English Protestant Canadians? The French Roman Catholics asked the federal government in Ottawa to give them back their religious schools.

6. All the politicians in Ottawa were afraid of this issue. If they helped the French Roman Catholic minority, they would lose votes in Protestant Ontario. If they ignored the French Roman Catholic minority, they would lose votes in Roman Catholic Quebec. Politicians never want to lose votes.

7. The Conservative government moved very slowly. It tried to get the Manitoba government to change the education law and make a deal. But Premier Greenway and his Liberal government refused. Finally, in 1896, the federal Conservatives introduced a bill in the House of Commons to return religious schools to the French Roman Catholics in Manitoba. The Opposition Liberals talked and talked. They would not let the bill come to a vote. This is called a **filibuster**. Time ran out. It had been five years since the last election in 1891 and so a new election had to be held.

8. Prime Minister Tupper and the Conservatives thought that they would win the 1896 election. Tupper thought that he would win the French Roman Catholic vote in Quebec because the Conservatives had defended the French Roman Catholics in Manitoba. The French Roman Catholic bishops in Quebec did support the Conservative Party. They asked French Canadians to vote for candidates who supported the return of religious schools in Manitoba. In Ontario, Tupper counted on the voters supporting the Conservative Party as the party of John A. Macdonald and the National Policy. He did not think that the Ontario voters would support the Liberals and make Laurier, a French Roman Catholic, Prime Minister.

9. Laurier and the Liberals hoped that they would win. Laurier refused to support the Conservative bill to force Manitoba to bring back religious schools. This pleased the English Protestants and the people who supported provincial rights in Ontario. In



*Thomas Greenway*



Quebec, Laurier said that he would use the “sunny way” to make an agreement with Premier Greenway of Manitoba because force would not work. He asked French Roman Catholic voters to ignore the bishops and trust him, a French Roman Catholic.

### The Election of 1896

10. Laurier and the Liberals did win the election of 1896. In Ontario, the Liberals and Conservatives each elected forty-three MPs. But in Quebec, the Liberals elected forty-nine MPs and the Conservatives only sixteen. Laurier became Canada’s seventh Prime Minister.

11. Immediately, Laurier sent a message to his fellow Liberal, Premier Greenway of Manitoba. A compromise was found on the issue of Manitoba schools. Laurier agreed that separate religious schools would not be returned. Greenway agreed that students could receive religious instruction at the end of the school day. Where there were enough students, a Roman Catholic teacher



**Wilfrid Laurier**



Wilfrid Laurier’s ancestors had settled in the Montreal region in 1641. He was born near Montreal in 1841. Wilfrid’s father sent him to French and then English schools to give him a broad education and teach him English. He studied law at the English-speaking McGill University and graduated in 1864. His first job was in a law office in Montreal. In Montreal, he also joined the Parti Rouge and a free-thinking club, L’Institut Canadien. This club had a library with many books that were forbidden reading by the Roman Catholic Church.

Laurier’s second job was as the editor of a Rouge newspaper in Arthabaskaville, Quebec. When the newspaper closed down in 1867, Laurier opened his own law office. In 1868, he married Zoë Lafontaine from Montreal. They settled in Arthabaskaville and had no children.

Laurier was first elected to the House of Commons as a Liberal in 1874 at the age of 32. His great speaking ability caught Prime Minister Mackenzie’s ear and Laurier entered his Cabinet in 1877.

With the defeat of the Liberal government in the 1878 election, Laurier became an Opposition member. Between 1880 and 1887, Laurier assisted the new Liberal leader, Edward Blake. Laurier’s attack on John A. Macdonald’s government over the Rebellion of 1885 made Laurier famous. He said that the government had treated the Indians and Métis very badly.

After the Liberals were defeated in the election of 1887, Blake resigned as leader and Laurier became the new Liberal leader. He was the first French Canadian to be selected as the leader of a national political party.

“Had I been born on the banks of the Saskatchewan, I would myself have shouldered a musket to fight against the neglect of government and the shameless greed of (land) speculators.”

could be hired and students could be taught in the French language. Both Laurier and Greenway "gave in" on some points to make this agreement; it was called the Laurier-Greenway Compromise. Laurier's "sunny way" and friendly approach had worked.

12. Now Prime Minister Laurier could turn to the other problems facing Canada. How could the government end the depression and bring prosperity to Canada?

### Why Did Canada Become Prosperous Under Laurier's Government?

#### Why Was Canada Not Settled by 1896?

13. When Wilfrid Laurier became Prime Minister in 1896, Canada was still in a depression. People did not immigrate to a country unless they were sure of doing well. Most people from Europe chose to go to the U.S.A. because it had more to offer than

Laurier and the Liberals adopted the policy of "Unrestricted Reciprocity" during the 1891 election. They hoped to defeat Macdonald and his "National Policy". The Liberals lost the election; they then changed and supported the tariff. In 1896, the Liberals did win the election.

Laurier was Prime Minister for fifteen years from 1896 to 1911, winning four elections in a row. In these years, many people settled in the West and the country began to enjoy great prosperity. However, crises like the Manitoba Schools Question, the Boer War, and the Naval Question divided Canadians in these years. Laurier always tried to find a compromise that would satisfy both English and French, and East and West. In 1911, Canada and the United States negotiated a new Reciprocity Treaty. Laurier took this idea to the voters in the 1911 election. The country was not ready. Once again, the Liberals lost an election on the issue of reciprocity.

When World War I started in August, 1914, Laurier, as Leader of the Opposition, supported the war effort. He made many speeches in Quebec urging French Canadians to support the war. He encouraged young French Canadians to volunteer for the army. However, when Prime Minister Borden and the Conservatives wanted to force all young men to enter the army in 1917, Laurier said "no". The 1917 election split Canada between the English and the French on the issue of forcing men to join the army. This made Laurier very sad. He had always tried to find a compromise between English and French Canadians. Wilfrid Laurier died in Ottawa on February 17, 1919.



Canada. In the U.S.A., there were more railways, people, and opportunities. Good land was also available. Canada was mostly ignored by Europeans during the Macdonald years. Western Canada remained unsettled. This part of the National Policy was not a success under Macdonald.

### Why Did the Situation Change?

14. When Laurier became Prime Minister, he continued to follow Macdonald's National Policy. He hoped to make it a success. He kept the high tariffs to protect Canadian businessmen. He also encouraged the building of two new transcontinental railways. But he knew that thousands of settlers would have to come to the West to make the National Policy really successful.

15. Fortunately for Laurier and the Liberals, conditions in the world and in Canada changed after 1896. The West became more attractive to settlers for six important reasons:

- The world depression came to an end. As a result, there was more trade between countries.
- In Europe and the U.S.A., there was a movement of people from the countryside to the cities for factory jobs. The wages in factories were higher than those paid on farms. More wheat was needed to make into bread to feed these factory workers. The price of wheat then rose and made wheat farming more attractive to settlers. The Canadian prairies suddenly became a place where people could make money from growing wheat.
- Free land was no longer available in the U.S.A. after 1900. There was still a great deal of free land in Canada. People in Europe, and even in the U.S.A., now looked to Canada as a place of opportunity and freedom. They began to come to the Canadian prairies by the thousands.
- Machines had been invented to make farming easier. The steam engine had greatly changed not only transportation (ships and trains) but farming as well. Steam-driven engines drove

*Breaking prairie land with oxen near present Lloydminster, 1900*



reapers to cut the grain. They also drove binders to tie it into bundles once it was cut. Threshing machines driven by steam separated the grain from the straw. Farmers no longer had to rely on their much slower oxen and horses to plant and harvest the grain.

- In addition to the new farm machines, new types of wheat were discovered. In 1843, David Fife developed a type of wheat in Ontario called "Red Fife". This was a stronger grain and could be harvested ten days earlier than other types of wheat. The discovery of Red Fife meant that prairie farmers were able to grow their wheat in the short prairie growing season. Frost was no longer the terrible danger it had once been to them. In 1903, Charles Saunders, a scientist with the Department of Agriculture in Ottawa, made another important discovery. He developed a type of wheat called "Marquis" wheat. This wheat was even better than Red Fife! It ripened eight days earlier than Red Fife. This discovery was very important to settlers moving into the northern prairies.

- Two transcontinental railways called the Canadian Northern and the Grand Trunk Pacific were built to open more lands for the new settlers. These railways carried the farmers' wheat to eastern Canada. They competed with the C.P.R. and lowered transportation costs.

### Who Were The Settlers and Why Did They Come to Canada?

16. The new discoveries and conditions in the world and Canada favoured the settlement of Canada's West after 1896. Clifford Sifton was the man in charge of settling Canada's West between 1896 and 1905. He was the Minister of the Interior in Laurier's Liberal government. Sifton wanted to fill up the West as quickly as possible. He began the greatest advertising campaign that Canada had ever seen.

17. Sifton wanted experienced farmers to come to the Canadian West. He thought that they would have the greatest chance of being successful farmers. He began his advertising campaign in the American West. The land in the West received very little rain and people who farmed this land were called **drylanders**. These farmers knew how to farm the dry land and how to make money from their crops. This meant that they would have money to start a new farm. Sifton put advertisements in 6000 American newspapers and hired agents (salesmen) to visit American towns and farm communities. Millions of pamphlets were distributed. Both the ads and agents advertised the free land and good farming conditions in Canada's West. They called it "The Last Best West". It was the final bargain of the century. A farmer who was eighteen years of age could own a farm for just a \$10 registration fee. Sifton even organized free trips to the West for





## Barbara Edwards — A Pioneer Lady

In 1905, Barbara left England for Canada on a steamship which carried a thousand other hopeful passengers. Most of the passengers were going to the Canadian West. Barbara was eighteen years old and had been married for three months. Her husband had convinced her to come to Canada. He had shown her the pamphlets that explained the kind of life they could expect to have on the prairies. She found it hard to believe that the government was giving away farms of about 65 ha to settlers who came to the West. A farm this size in England was very large.

She was glad that Allan was an experienced farmer. Some of the people with whom she talked on the boat had neither farming experience nor money. They were coming with only one thing — hope!

The voyage lasted ten days and it was not pleasant. Too many people were packed together and many of them were seasick. After the sea voyage, the immigrants boarded the transcontinental railway in Halifax. Barbara was happy that they were now on land but the crowded conditions on the train were not much better than those on the boat. But no one was seasick!

A week later they arrived in Regina. They bought a wagon, oxen, a plough, and other household goods. They had brought only their clothes from England. Barbara insisted that Allan buy a cow and some chickens. If they were going to be farmers, they had better do it right. Allan paid the \$10 registration fee for the farm at the government land office.

Both Allan and Barbara had been surprised at how flat the land was. It stretched endlessly in every direction. They were both a little frightened, but still determined to make a success of it. They were told that their farm was north of Regina and were given directions on how to get there.

They loaded the wagon with their new supplies and hitched up the oxen. It was a slow trip; it took five days to reach the location of the farm. There were no roads, and no towns or hotels along the way. They slept under their wagon each night. Barbara found it hard to believe that there were so few people on the prairies. The farms were so far apart. Allan found the wooden stakes with their number on them. This was their farm. Barbara was shocked; there was only grass!

In Regina, Allan had found out what had to be done when they arrived at the farm. He began by ploughing up some of the earth or sod. He let it dry and then began to build their first home. Barbara was very disappointed. How would she be able to write her parents and friends in England and tell them she was living in a mud hut? Allan corrected her by telling her that it was a sod hut, not a mud hut.

A settler needed \$250 to be a prairie farmer

\$180 for two oxen

\$ 30 for a cow

\$ 20 for a wagon

\$ 14 for a breaking plough

\$ 6 for miscellaneous expenses

After a few days, the sod hut was completed and they moved in. Barbara tried to make it as comfortable as possible with the little furniture they had. While Allan was ploughing the land, she plastered the walls with mud to cover the cracks. She put blankets over the mud walls to make it look better.

She did not have much time to think about her situation. Every minute of the day was occupied. First, she drew water from the well Allan had dug. She fed and took care of the animals, milked the cow, churned the butter, and mended and made new clothes. Since there were no trees, there was no wood for fuel. She collected animal chips to use as fuel for the stove. When the stove was hot enough she cooked their meals. Barbara also made a garden in the back and grew vegetables. Sometimes, vegetables were the only things they had to eat.

The inside of the hut was always dirty and at first the dirt bothered her. However, after the first rainstorm, she knew she would have to accept the dirt. The rain had leaked through the roof; when the storm ended, the inside of the house looked like one big mud pie.

Barbara was always tired. She tried to hold her temper, but sometimes she became very angry. She blamed Allan for bringing her to such a rough wilderness. It was a very hard life.

However, after a few years, she became happier with their life. Allan's first crop had been destroyed by hail but the next three crops had been good ones. Neighbours travelled great distances to help them harvest the wheat. The pioneers worked together—to survive.

The crops were sold and the money was used to build a wooden farm house. What an improvement! Barbara was only too pleased to move from the sod house. But, when she found she was expecting her first child, she became anxious again. There were no doctors or hospitals—what was she to do? A neighbour offered to stay with her and act as a midwife. She didn't worry at all when their second child was born. Now her older son was learning to talk and since there were no schools, she was acting as his teacher. Barbara would be the teacher for several neighbour children until a school opened in the district.

As the years passed, life improved for Barbara and Allan. The new house was clean. Allan bought more land and more machines. Barbara was no longer as homesick. The land was more settled; she now had a neighbour only half an hour away. At harvest time, she did not have to work in the fields. Allan could now afford to hire extra help.

The only thing that Barbara still minded was the cold. In the winter, the cold was unbelievable. The water in the kettle froze

### How to Build a Sod Hut or "Soddy"

1. Decide where you want to build it.
2. Plough up pieces of sod to use as bricks.
3. Go to the surrounding hills and cut down poplar trees and branches. Use them to make a skeleton for the new home. They will support the sod.
4. Measure the house to determine the number of sod bricks needed. If the sod hut measures 5000 cm × 7400 cm, about 4000 sod bricks will be needed.
5. Each brick should be about 500 mm thick, 3000 mm wide, and 6100 cm long. The bricks should be piled on each other and should slant inwards. The walls should be about 9000 cm thick. The sod bricks should be built up around the door and windows.
6. The roof should first have poplar poles which are placed very close together. They will support the sod, hay, and dirt that make up the roof.
7. Inside, mud can be used to plaster the walls to seal the cracks. The builder can buy felt cloth to pin on the walls to give them a nicer appearance.

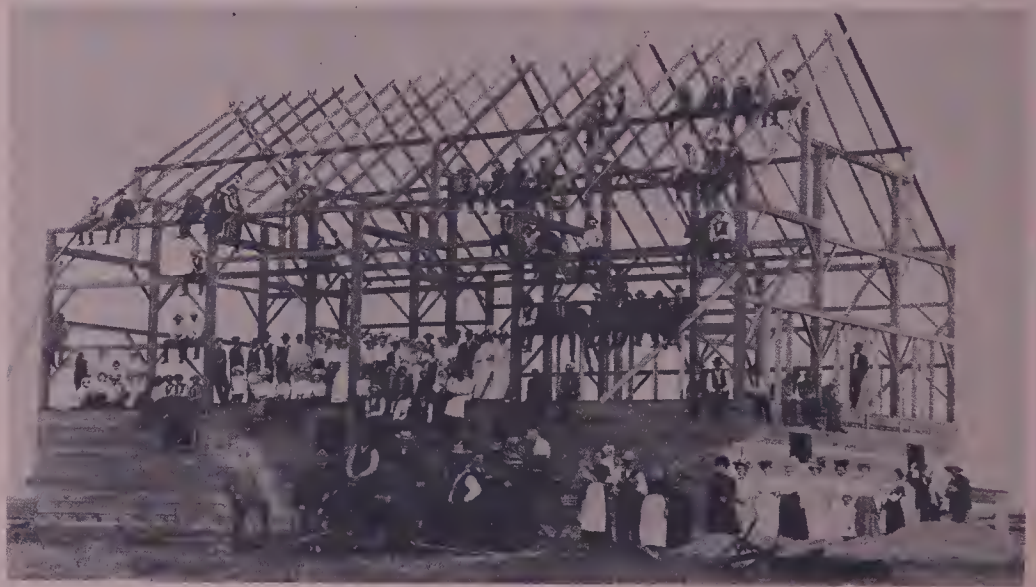


overnight. The chicken eggs also froze and looked like big marbles when they were peeled. Generally, though, she was happy. She had her husband and children, and the beginnings of a better life in Canada.

### Questions

1. List the hardships Barbara experienced on her way to the farm.
2. What hardships did she experience on the farm?
3. How did Barbara's neighbours help her?
4. Imagine that you are a pioneer on the prairies. Write a letter to your parents in Europe, describing how you built your first home. Tell them about the problems you had when you built your soddy.
5. Write several paragraphs about your impressions of the role of pioneer women.

*Barn-raising, Saskatchewan, 1908*



*Sod house*



American newspapermen and farmers. He knew that they would tell their readers and neighbours about the great opportunities in Canada. Land was expensive in the American West. Many American farmers were attracted by the price of the Canadian land. They sold their farms and moved to Canada. Sifton's advertising campaign was very successful. By 1914, nearly 500 000 settlers from the U.S.A. had moved to Canada's West.

18. Sifton used the same methods to attract British settlers. Again, his advertising campaign for new settlers was a huge success. British newspapers, pamphlets, posters, and pictures all advertised the advantages of settling on the prairies. Between 1912 and 1913, 150 000 immigrants arrived in Canada from Britain.

19. Sifton greatly admired the farmers of Europe. He called them the "men in sheep-skin coats". Sifton wanted these men and their families to come to Canada because they were hardworking and knew how to farm the land. These "men in sheep-skin coats" came from Russia, Poland, the Ukraine, Germany, Holland, and Scandinavia. They had large families and the children helped with the backbreaking work on the farms. These children were Canada's farmers of the future.

20. To attract "men in sheep-skin coats" to Canada, Sifton hired agents who spoke the language of these peoples. These agents visited the farmers and described the free lands that were

**FREE FARMS FOR THE MILLION**

**CANADA**

CLIMATE THE HEALTHIEST IN THE WORLD.

**FREE FARMS OF 160 ACRES**

\*MANITOBA, CANADIAN NORTH-WEST AND BRITISH COLUMBIA\*

GRANTS FROM 100 TO 200 ACRES ARE OFFERED IN BOTH PARTS OF CANADA

**DOMINION LINE**

Steam ships

**CANADA**

**Healthy Climate! Free Schools!**

**160-ACRE FARMS IN WESTERN CANADA—FREE!**

To enable every would-be Settler to receive direct Official and Reliable Information regarding **CANADA**,

**MR. J. BRUCE WALKER**

(CANADIAN GOVERNMENT REPRESENTATIVE).  
Will deliver his Popular and Instructive

**LECTURE**

ILLUSTRATED BY A SERIES OF NEW MAGNIFICENT  
Cinematograph and Stereopticon Views descriptive of Canadian Life,  
AND ENTITLED

**"CANADA AND ITS RESOURCES:**  
A FIELD FOR BRITISH SETTLERS" in the  
**CITY HALL,**  
CANNEDRIGGS, GLASGOW,  
**On MONDAY, 16th JAN., 1905**  
At 8-0 p.m. Doors Open at 7-15 p.m.

**Sir SAMUEL CHISHOLM, Bart., LL.D., will preside.**

ADMISSION TO AREA FREE (BY TICKET). BALCONY 3d.

**THOS. COOK & SON, 83 Buchanan Street, Glasgow**

THOS. COOK & SON are officially appointed Agents for all the Principal Lines of Passenger Steamers sailing between England and Canada, and every other part of the World.



available and the great amount of money that could be made. To a European farmer, 65 ha of land was very large. The average farm in some European countries was less than 2 ha. Sifton also paid steamship companies a bonus for each settler or family brought to Canada. This bonus encouraged these companies to advertise on their own. In 1905, 23 000 people came to Canada from Europe. The settlement of the West was such a success that by 1905 there were over 400 000 people living in the North West Territories. There were now enough people to create two new provinces. Saskatchewan and Alberta became the eighth and ninth provinces in 1905.

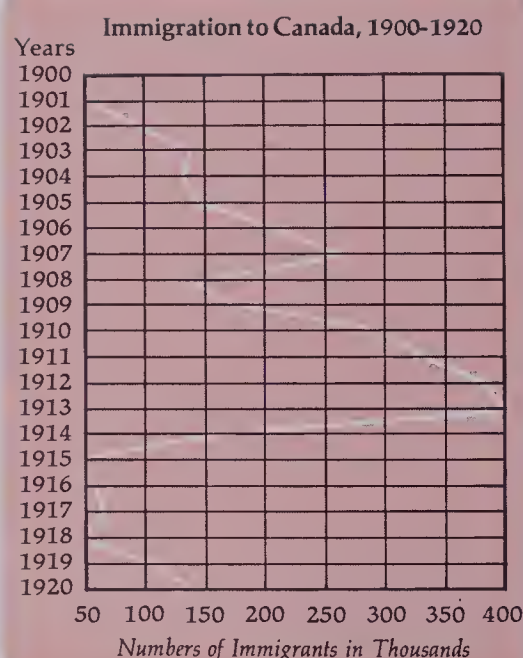
21. The reasons for people coming to Canada were as varied as the settlers themselves. Some immigrants moved to escape persecution (bad treatment). The Mennonites, Doukhobors, and Jews came to Canada because they were persecuted in their homelands. Others came because of the opportunities. People with little or no land at home came because this was their only chance to improve their way of life. These immigrants wanted their children to have a better future. They wanted them to live in a free country and to own land.

22. However, not everyone who wanted to come to Canada was accepted. Criminals, sick people, and people on welfare were refused admission. If these people managed to get to Canada and were discovered, they were sent back to their home countries. Blacks, Chinese, Japanese, and East Indians were discouraged from coming to Canada. Most Canadians thought they would not be able to fit into Canadian society. As well, people living in cities were not encouraged to come because the emphasis was on settlers who could farm.

### What Hardships Did Settlers Experience?

23. The pamphlets describing Canada's West often gave false information. Many immigrants expected the land to be ready for them to farm with houses already built. Some even expected that there would be churches, schools, hospitals, and roads to the nearest town and railway line. The advertisements of the Canadian West often had pictures of orchards, running streams, and farms with endless fields of wheat.

24. Instead, settlers found a huge land with few people. The land had never been farmed. There were no orchards and few streams. The winters were very cold—much colder than most settlers had ever experienced. There were no roads and neighbours were far apart. Loneliness was a new and terrible hardship. There were no trees to build houses; mud or sod had to be used. Most settlers had little money and had to make the things they wanted to use. Women made their own butter, bread, and clothes. If something broke, it had to be repaired by the farmer or his wife.



Farm machines were expensive and the new prairie farmers had to wait a few years before they could buy them. People had to rely on themselves and each other to survive. They did not have telephones, radios, or cars. Food was often scarce and people went hungry if the crops failed.

25. The land was dry and there was little water available. Droughts often destroyed the crops. Wind, hail, grass fires, locusts, and disease were also the enemies of farmers' crops. Deep snow covered the land in winter, making travel almost impossible. There were often no doctors to help with sickness. Life was hard for the first farmers. Some gave up farming for other jobs or went back home. However, most stayed, and experienced the bad and the good times.

### Prosperity at Last

26. Canada's **primary industries** grew rapidly between 1896 and 1911. A primary industry takes products from the sea, soil, or forest. Farming, mining, and forestry were the most important primary industries.

### Farming

27. As more farmers settled in the West, they produced more grain. Wheat was the most popular crop. It became Canada's most important **export** sold to other countries. Canadians made a lot of money from the sale of wheat. This was the beginning of the wheat boom.

### Mining

28. In these years, many eager prospectors searched for valuable minerals. George Cormack, "Shookum" Jim and "Tagish" Charlie discovered gold on the Klondike River in 1896. Thousands of people rushed to the Yukon from southern Canada, the United States, and Britain with the hope of striking it rich. Dawson City was a boom town of 30 000 people for a few years. In eight years, more than \$100 000 000 worth of gold was taken out of the Yukon.

29. Although the Klondike Gold Rush was the most exciting strike, more valuable finds were made in southern Canada. Silver, lead, and zinc were discovered in the Kootenays of British Columbia. In 1903, Fred LaRose thought he was throwing his hammer at a wild animal and hit the world's largest silver vein near Timmins, Ontario. He promptly sold his claim for \$30 000. Gold was discovered at Porcupine and Kirkland Lake, Ontario. Nickel was discovered at Sudbury which became the world's largest nickel producer. In Quebec, asbestos was found at Thedford Mines. These valuable minerals were exported to other countries and were used to produce goods in **secondary industries**

*Underground in the Yukon*







Mining in the Klondike, 1898

in Canada. Secondary industries take primary goods like minerals and turn them into finished goods such as hammers, kettles, and jewelry. Much of the energy to drive steam engines and machines in factories came from coal mines. Nova Scotia's coal mines provided coal to more than half the country.

### Pulp and Paper

30. A new source of energy in 1900 was hydro-electricity. The powerful rivers of Quebec, Ontario, and British Columbia were used to make electricity. This electricity was used to run the huge saws in the pulp and paper mills that turned the trees of Canada's forests into newsprint. Much of this newsprint was exported to the U.S.A.

### Foreign Investment in Canada

31. Much of the money to build the mines, the hydro stations, and the pulp mills came from the U.S.A. A few Canadians were worried about Americans building or buying factories in Canada. The Americans would select the products, hire and fire the Canadian workers, and send the profits back to the U.S.A. These Canadians thought that this would weaken Canada and allow the U.S.A. to control the Canadian economy. However, most Canadians welcomed **foreign investment** from the U.S.A. as well as from Britain. Foreign investment is money coming into Canada from another country to start or buy a business like pulp mills or oil wells. The profits return to the owners in the other country. Most Canadians praised the protective tariff that encouraged Americans to build factories inside Canada instead of building stoves, tractors, and other products in the U.S.A. and shipping them to Canada. They said that this provided jobs for Canadian workers at American-owned factories inside Canada.

### Prosperity, but ...

32. The number and size of factories grew rapidly after 1896 as Canada's population increased. More people demanded more manufactured goods: dresses, suits, boots, tables, needles, sewing machines, dolls. ... Businessmen built bigger factories and hired more workers to produce more and more goods. This move toward producing goods in factories is called **industrialization**.

33. Many new factories were built in existing cities and towns. More people moved to the cities and towns to work in these factories. The cities grew in size. New towns, like Cobalt and Dryden, Ontario, sprang up around mines and pulp and paper mills. By 1911, 42 per cent of Canadians lived in towns and cities. This movement of people from farming areas to towns and cities is called **urbanization**.

#### Growth of Cities

City	Population	
	1891	1911
Montreal	219 616	490 504
Toronto	181 215	381 833
Winnipeg	25 639	136 035
Vancouver	13 709	120 847
Ottawa	44 154	87 062
Halifax	38 437	46 619
Calgary	3 876	43 704
Regina	—	30 213
Saint John	39 179	42 511



*Slum housing, Montreal*

34. Living conditions for many working people in the cities were unpleasant and unhealthy. Housing was poor and families were often crowded into two rooms. The smell of sewage was often overpowering. Bad food and milk were serious problems and infant deaths from impure milk were high in cities like Montreal and Toronto. This happened because much of the milk was not **pasteurized**, that is, not heated to kill the germs and bacteria.

35. Many young people started to work at the age of twelve to help support their family. Many women also worked.

36. In order to improve their working conditions, men and women often tried to join together to form a union. However, businessmen disliked unions. They thought it was wrong for their workers to join together and demand more money or a shorter work day. Most businessmen, like Van Horne, would fire any workers who tried to organize a union. He would not negotiate or make a deal with a union that claimed to speak for the workers. As a result, only skilled workers who had a trade, such as carpentry, were able to organize their own unions. Unions where all the members work in the same trade are called **trade unions**. The businessmen had to negotiate with these workers because they had special skills and knowledge. The boss could not find someone else to do their work. Other workers had to wait many years before they were able to organize unions.

#### **Jobs For Working Women, 1911**

<i>Type of Job</i>	<i>Number of Working Women</i>
Farming	15 887
Manufacturing	96 795
Transport and Communication	5 340
Trade and Finance	28 651
Professional (Teachers, Nurses, Doctors)	45 402
Personal (Home Servants)	137 221
Clerical	33 756



## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—12

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. John Abbott      | —as Premier of Manitoba, was responsible for passing the Manitoba School Act                     |
| Wilfrid Laurier     | —a Father of Confederation who became Prime Minister in 1896 and lost the election the same year |
| Mackenzie<br>Bowell | —fellow Conservatives forced him to resign as Prime Minister                                     |
| Thomas<br>Greenway  | —died at Windsor Castle while visiting Queen Victoria  |
| Charles Tupper      | —succeeded Macdonald as Prime Minister of Canada   |
| John Thompson       | —suggested a compromise solution on Manitoba schools   |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A filibuster
  - (a) is a bill that supports opening settlement in the West
  - (b) occurs when politicians debate a bill for hour after hour so that it cannot come to a vote
  - (c) is a debate that centres around the question of religious education in schools, primarily in Manitoba

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. French Roman Catholic parents in Manitoba were angry because
  - (a) their children quit school
  - (b) they had to pay for their religious schools as well as pay provincial education taxes
  - (c) they had to send their children to Protestant schools
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

4. Why did Charles Tupper think that the Conservatives could win the 1896 election?
5. Why did Laurier think that the Liberals could win the 1896 election?
6. Why do you think a British court ruled on the Manitoba law?

### Paragraphs 13—25

#### Knowing The People

1. Who was Clifford Sifton?

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Drylanders are
  - (a) all animals that live on dry land
  - (b) farmers who work land that receives very little rain
  - (c) farmers whose wells run dry and their land has to be irrigated

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. After 1900, the Canadian West was more attractive to immigrants because
  - (a) the price of wheat went up
  - (b) free land was no longer available in the U.S.A.
  - (c) it was easier to farm because of new machinery
  - (d) all of the above
4. The Mennonites, Jews, and Doukhobors came to Canada mainly because
  - (a) they wanted to escape persecution in their homelands
  - (b) they thought it would be fun to cross the ocean to a new country
  - (c) they were afraid they might not get into Canada if they waited too long
  - (d) they wanted to work in the Canadian cities
5. Some immigrants were unhappy when they arrived in the Canadian West because
  - (a) they could not buy more than 65 ha of land
  - (b) the buffalo had been killed off and there were no more animals to eat
  - (c) the advertising of the West had been somewhat misleading
  - (d) they had to plant their own orchards and then wait ten years before the trees bore fruit

## Questions

6. In which paragraphs do you find facts about
  - (a) the hardships faced by prairie pioneers?
  - (b) the formation of the new provinces of Alberta and Saskatchewan?
7. When Laurier was elected Prime Minister in 1896, why did he continue Macdonald's National Policy?
8. Why were farmers able to grow wheat in the northern parts of the prairies?
9. Name three aspects of Sifton's advertising campaign that made it so successful in attracting settlers to the West.
10. Give four reasons why European immigrants chose to go to the U.S.A. rather than Canada before 1896.
11.
  - (a) Was everyone allowed to come to Canada as a settler, if they wanted? If not, who was not allowed to immigrate?
  - (b) Do you think that there was racial discrimination in some of these decisions? Explain.

## Paragraphs 26—36

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Primary industries are industries that
  - (a) always locate in big cities
  - (b) take products such as lumber and make tables
  - (c) take products from nature such as trees
2. Export means
  - (a) to sell goods to other countries
  - (b) to buy goods from other countries
  - (c) an old harbour
3. Secondary industries are industries that
  - (a) only hire graduates of secondary schools
  - (b) are not as important as primary industries
  - (c) take primary products and turn them into manufactured goods
4. Foreign investment means
  - (a) goods brought into Canada
  - (b) money from another country that is used to start or buy a business in Canada
  - (c) money made by a business in Canada that is sent to the owners who live in another country
5. Industrialization means
  - (a) making products in factories with the help of large machinery
  - (b) working long hours for low pay
  - (c) producing goods on farms or in people's homes

6. Urbanization refers to
  - (a) people moving from the city to the suburbs
  - (b) people moving from farms to towns and cities
  - (c) people moving from farms and cities to their cottages in the summer
7. To pasteurize milk is to
  - (a) milk cows with milking machines
  - (b) chill milk to keep it fresh
  - (c) heat milk to kill bacteria and germs
8. A trade union is
  - (a) a group of workers who get together to trade the extra things that they do not need
  - (b) any group of workers who decide to hold a march or a demonstration
  - (c) a group of workers with the same skill who join together to gain better working conditions

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

9. Canada became prosperous between 1896 and 1911 because
  - (a) many people settled on farms and produced good wheat crops
  - (b) gold, silver, asbestos, and other minerals were discovered by prospectors
  - (c) rivers were used to produce hydro-electricity for mills and factories
  - (d) all of the above
10. Some Canadians opposed foreign investment from the United States because
  - (a) they thought the U.S.A. might take over Canada someday
  - (b) they said that the profits would go to the U.S.A.
  - (c) Canadian workers would be working for American bosses
  - (d) all of the above

### Question

11. Why was the discovery of minerals such as lead and zinc more important than the exciting discovery of gold?



## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Reading A Chart

The following chart shows the origins of people living in Canada between 1871 and 1911. Examine this population chart and then answer the questions.

1. List in order the five largest groups of people living in Canada in 1911. Show their country of origin and the number of people.

2. What group had the largest increase in population between 1901 and 1911? What group showed the least increase?
3. Why do you think that certain groups have no figures listed in 1871 and 1881?
4. What was the total increase in Canada's population between 1901 and 1911?

ORIGINS OF POPULATION 1871-1911

ORIGIN	1871	1881	1901	1911
Austrian			10 947	44 036
Belgian			2 994	9 664
Chinese		4 383	17 312	27 831
English	706 369	881 301	1 260 899	1 871 268
Finnish			2 502	15 500
French	1 082 940	1 298 929	1 649 371	2 061 719
German	202 991	254 319	310 501	403 417
Greek	39		291	3 614
Hungarian			1 549	11 648
Italian	1 035	1 849	10 834	45 963
Irish	846 414	957 403	988 721	1 074 738
Japanese			4 738	9 067
Jewish	125	667	16 131	76 199
Native Peoples	23 037	108 547	127 941	105 611
Negro	21 496	21 394	17 437	16 994
Netherlander	29 662	30 412	33 845	55 961
Polish			6 285	33 652
Russian	607	1 227	19 825	44 376
Scandinavian	1 623	5 223	31 042	112 682
Scottish	549 946	699 863	800 154	1 027 015
Ukrainian			5 682	75 432
Others	19 477	59 293	52 314	80 256
TOTALS	3 485 761	4 324 810	5 371 315	7 206 643

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

1. Divide the class in half to debate the Manitoba Schools Question. One half can represent the French Catholic minority in Manitoba. The other half can represent the English Protestants in Manitoba. Each side should try to show the emotional issues that are so much a part of this debate.
2. In your own words, write a description of what each of these farm machines does.
  - (a) thresher
  - (b) binder
  - (c) reaper
  - (d) plough

3. Knowing how many unions have now been formed, do you think that employers, like Van Horne, were right to resist the organization of unions? Discuss this question by looking at the interests of both employers and employees. Complete your discussion by studying one particular employer/union relationship in your community.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

# Canada and the World, 1867—1911

AIM: What Was Canada's Position in the World Between 1867 and 1911?

### Who Controlled Canada's Relations with Other Countries After Confederation?

1. In 1867, Canada became a country but Britain still controlled Canada's relations with other countries; these relations are called **external affairs**. This was the way Canadians wanted it. The federal government was responsible for defence. But Canadians were very worried about the U.S.A. They knew that they could not stop an American invasion by themselves. Canadians counted on Britain to send soldiers and ships to help them in case of an invasion. In return, Canada was happy to let Britain control its external affairs.

2. This meant that Britain negotiated and signed treaties on fisheries, trade, borders, or any other matter which involved Canada and another country. Britain made sure that Canada did not anger another country or start a war. Canada was still part of the British Empire and not a completely independent country.

3. An example of Britain's control came in 1871. Britain negotiated the Treaty of Washington with the U.S.A. Prime Minister John A. Macdonald was appointed as one of the three British representatives. However, Macdonald was out-voted on issues such as fisheries and trade by the two British representatives. Canada had to accept a treaty that met the needs of the British Empire.

### Why Did Britain's Attitude Toward the Empire Change?

4. After Britain had adopted free trade in the 1840's, it had lost interest in gaining new colonies. Many of her old colonies were given the power to make laws on local matters within their own boundaries and were called **Dominions**. However, in the 1880's, the situation in the world began to change. Germany and France began taking over lands in different parts of the world and making them colonies. This is called **imperialism**. The powerful countries in Europe raced to see who could gain the most colonies



and build the biggest empire. Although some countries wanted colonies for their natural resources, they also wanted colonies to show how important and powerful they were as countries. Britain joined in this race, especially in Africa. Britain also hoped that the older colonies and Dominions, like Canada, would give Britain support in case of a war with another country.

5. Many English Canadians were very proud of their membership in the British Empire. They watched with pride as Britain gained control in Egypt, Sudan, and Rhodesia. In 1884 and 1885, a British army was surrounded in Egypt. Prime Minister Macdonald refused to give government support but a few Canadians chose to join the fighting. Some English Canadians showed their great loyalty to Britain by joining the Imperial Federation League. This organization wanted to have closer ties with the British Empire in government, defence, and trade. They hoped that someday Canadians would elect representatives to sit in the British Parliament in London!

### How Did Britain Plan to Strengthen the Empire?

6. Queen Victoria celebrated her Diamond Jubilee in 1897. The fine old lady had reigned as Queen of Great Britain and the British Empire for sixty years. Every part of her Empire joined in

THE BRITISH EMPIRE, 1890



Queen Victoria was born in 1819 and became Queen of Britain and the colonies (including British North America) in 1837. This was the same year that the rebellions took place in Upper and Lower Canada. Raised in the company of adults, she was very mature for her age. She took her job very seriously and worked very hard. She was in constant touch with her British Prime Minister and Cabinet. She was well-informed and had strong opinions on most subjects with a strong sense of right and wrong. She was very stubborn when she thought she was right and rarely changed her mind.

In 1840, Victoria fell in love with Prince Albert of Germany and married him. Throughout their marriage she was deeply in love with her husband and respected his opinions and advice. She even allowed him to take part in the government. Albert and Victoria had nine children—four sons and five daughters. These children and their descendants were to become kings and queens in Europe. Albert died in 1861 and Victoria mourned for her dead husband for many years. She never married again.

Victoria became Queen of the new country of Canada on July 1, 1867. She also became Empress of India in 1876. Several attempts were made on her life but none succeeded. She celebrated her Golden Jubilee in 1887 and her Diamond Jubilee in 1897. Victoria was very proud of the great size of the British Empire and did not want it to be made smaller. She never did visit Canada. Her daughter, Marie Louise, lived here while her husband, the Marquis of Lorne, was Governor-General of Canada.

Much loved by her subjects, Victoria was greatly mourned when she died in 1901. Her great great granddaughter, Queen Elizabeth II, is the present Queen of Canada.



**Queen Victoria**



celebrating this glorious occasion. A great parade was held in London, England on June 22, 1897. Leaders from the colonies marched proudly at the head of bands and soldiers in full dress uniform. Prime Minister Laurier and the Royal North West Mounted Police led the Canadian representatives in the parade. The size, power, and majesty of the British Empire were displayed before the eyes of the world.

7. During the Diamond Jubilee celebrations, the British government suggested a number of changes to make the Empire stronger. They wanted to bring the mother-country, Dominions, and colonies closer together as the Imperial Federation League had suggested. The British Colonial Secretary, Joseph Chamberlain, suggested an Imperial Council with representatives from the leading Dominions to make decisions for the Empire. He asked the colonies and Dominions to help pay the costs of the British army





AFRICA, 1899

and navy which defended them. And finally, he suggested greater trade within the Empire.

8. Although Laurier had been praised by the British leaders and knighted by Queen Victoria, he remained very cautious. He said 'no' to the Imperial Council and the request for money for British defence. He supported the idea of greater trade, but said that Canada could not do away with its tariffs. Laurier believed that Canada would become a great country equal to Britain.

### How Did Canada React to British Requests for Help?

#### The Boer War, 1899—1902

9. In 1899, Britain went to war with a group of Dutch-speaking people in South Africa who were called Boers. The Boers were farmers who lived in the Transvaal and the Orange Free State in South Africa. The discoveries of large amounts of gold and diamonds made Britain want to control these rich lands. The Boers were against more British control and were afraid of being assimilated by the British. They opposed British imperialism in South Africa. The Boer War began.

10. Most people thought that the war would end quickly. Britain was still the most powerful country in the world and the Boers were greatly outnumbered. However, the Boers fought very bravely for their homes and lands. The Boers won a few battles using guerrilla warfare against the British armies, but in the end they lost the war.

11. Britain asked Canada for help in fighting the Boers. Prime Minister Laurier was in a difficult position. English Canadians were loyal to Britain. They wanted Laurier to send Canadian troops to prove their loyalty to the mother-country. French Canadians saw no need to help Britain. They were afraid that if Canada helped in this British war, Britain would expect Canadians to help in future wars. If this happened, Canada would become closer to Britain and less independent. Canadians would die fighting wars which did not concern them. Perhaps French

*A bivouac during Boer War*



Canadians would become assimilated by the English Canadians if there were closer ties to Britain. The French Canadians were led by Henri Bourassa. Before the Boer War, Bourassa was a Liberal MP and Laurier's friend. However, he was also a French Canadian **nationalist**. He had a strong belief in the language and traditions of his people. He was strongly opposed to giving any help to Britain.

12. Wilfrid Laurier tried to find a compromise between the views of English and French Canadians. Only those Canadians who volunteered would be sent to fight. **Volunteers** were men who wanted to join the army. The Canadian government paid for the transportation of these volunteers and for their equipment. Altogether, 8000 Canadian volunteers fought in the Boer War. Laurier's compromise did not satisfy everyone. Some English Canadians believed that Laurier had not done enough. Henri Bourassa and his followers opposed any government contribution to this British war. Once more, English and French Canadians were split on an important issue.

### The Naval Question, 1910

13. By 1900, Britain still had the largest navy in the world, but other countries were building up their navies. Countries like Germany were looking for new colonies. These countries were jealous of British control of one-fifth of the world. Britain began to fear them. At this time, Canada did not have its own navy and counted on the British navy for protection. Britain asked Canada for contributions to the British navy. Canadian contributions would help Britain's navy stay ahead of Germany and keep control of the seas for the British Empire.

14. Once again, English Canadians wanted to prove their loyalty to Britain. They asked the Laurier government to build war ships and give them to the British navy. French Canadians opposed any such gift. They did not want closer ties to Britain. Laurier again looked for a compromise. In 1910, the Naval Act was passed by the Canadian Parliament. This Act called for the creation of a Canadian navy that would defend Canadian shores.

15. The Canadian navy could be used to help the British navy but only if the Canadian Parliament approved. This compromise pleased neither English Canadians nor French Canadians. Robert Borden, the leader of the Conservatives, called the navy, a "tin pot navy", because it was so small. He wanted Canada to contribute directly to a strong British navy. The greatest objections to the Naval Act came from Quebec—from Bourassa and his Quebec nationalists. They called Laurier a traitor to French Canada. They called him a British imperialist. They believed that the Canadian navy would be used to fight in British wars; this would only bring Canada and Britain closer together.





## Henri Bourassa



Henri Bourassa was born September 1, 1868. He was the grandson of Louis Joseph Papineau, the leader of the Rebellion of 1837 in Lower Canada. He inherited his grandfather's farm at Montebello where he introduced new farming methods and started a successful lumber business. Bourassa won his first election as Mayor of Montebello at the age of twenty-one in 1890. In the 1896 federal election, Bourassa ran as a Liberal candidate and was elected to the House of Commons.

Bourassa greatly admired Wilfrid Laurier in these early years and Laurier had great hopes for this bright young MP from Labelle, Quebec. Bourassa's warm feelings for Laurier gradually turned to disappointment, suspicion, and hatred over the next fifteen years. Bourassa eventually left the Liberal Party and helped the Conservatives defeat Laurier in 1911.

Bourassa first disagreed with Laurier over the South African War. Bourassa opposed any Canadian government involvement and he opposed British imperialism. Bourassa wanted Canada to become a completely independent country where English and French could live in peace.

Bourassa attacked Laurier's next compromise over the creation of Alberta and Saskatchewan in 1905. He demanded that Laurier protect the rights of French Roman Catholic separate schools in these new provinces. When Laurier gave in to the English majority, Bourassa accused Laurier of deserting his fellow French Canadians.

## What Were Canada's Relations With the U.S.A. Up To 1911?

### The Alaska Boundary Dispute

16. In 1867, the U.S.A. bought Alaska from Russia for \$7 200 000. It was a cheap price to pay for such a large area of land. Joined to Alaska was a narrow piece of land which ran southward along the Pacific Ocean. This strip of land was called the Alaska Panhandle. This was to cause trouble between Canada and the U.S.A. When gold was discovered in the Yukon in 1896, Canada wanted a seaport on the Pacific Ocean. The port was needed to send supplies to miners in the Yukon and to take out the gold.

17. Canada argued that the border of the Panhandle should be closer to the Pacific Ocean. This would give Canada the port it wanted on the Pacific. The U.S.A. was against Canada's claim. The American President, Teddy Roosevelt, was an imperialist and wanted more land for the U.S.A. The Americans argued that the border of the Panhandle should be further inland. They were against a Canadian port on the Panhandle.

In 1910, Bourassa founded the great newspaper, *Le Devoir*. He attacked Laurier's naval policy through his newspaper. In the 1911 election, Bourassa worked with the Conservatives to defeat Laurier and the Liberals. He called Laurier a traitor who "betrayed his own people with one blow". He said that Laurier's navy would drag Canada into all future British wars.

World War I presented the greatest crisis in Bourassa's career. He gave very limited support to the war at first. He was more concerned about the survival of French Canadians in the English provinces like Ontario. Then when Prime Minister Borden suggested that all young men should be required to join the army in 1917, Bourassa said 'no'. He spoke with power and feeling at public meetings and he used *Le Devoir* to build French Canadian opposition to this policy. Laurier and the Liberals also opposed this policy and Bourassa urged French Canadians to vote Liberal. However, he and Laurier did not become friends again. The Liberals won in Quebec, but the Conservatives won in English Canada. Canada was divided.

After World War I, Bourassa's influence began to slip among French Canadians. Some suggested that Quebec should separate from Canada. Bourassa opposed this. He returned to the House of Commons as an Independent in 1925. He retired as editor of *Le Devoir* in 1932 and retired from politics after his defeat in the 1935 election. He died in 1952. Bourassa was a brilliant, emotional speaker and writer, but he was not a good politician.

18. The disagreement between the U.S.A. and Canada was given to a commission of six men. The Commission would study the problem and make a decision. Roosevelt appointed three Americans to the Commission. These men had already made up their minds and supported the American boundary claim. Two Canadians were appointed to the Commission by the Canadian government. These Canadians supported the Canadian boundary claims. Lord Alverstone was appointed by the British government to represent Britain. This reminded Canadians that they still could not negotiate with other countries on their own.

19. Canadians expected Lord Alverstone to be on their side. But Lord Alverstone voted with the Americans. Britain did not want to anger the U.S.A. Although the Americans did not get all the land they wanted, the boundary decision prevented Canada from getting the port it needed. Canadians were angry with Britain. They felt betrayed. Many Canadians wanted Canada to be independent and to have complete control over its external affairs. They did not want Britain to betray them in the future. In 1909, a

Theodore Roosevelt







ALASKA BOUNDARY DISPUTE

**Quote from the Conservatives in 1911:**

"No truck or trade with the Yankees!"

**Wilfrid Laurier:**

"In Quebec I am attacked as an Imperialist and in Ontario as an anti-Imperialist. I am neither. I am a Canadian."

commission was set up, called the International Joint Commission. This Commission was made up of Americans and Canadians. In future, it would solve any border disagreements between Canada and the U.S.A. Britain would not be involved at all. In the same year, the Laurier government set up a Department of External Affairs. This was the first step toward Canadians controlling their own external affairs.

**The Reciprocity Treaty, 1911**

20. Ever since the Reciprocity Treaty of 1854 to 1866, Canadians had tried to make another similar treaty with the U.S.A. The Americans had not been interested. This situation began to change after 1900. American businessmen wanted cheap raw materials for their factories. They also wanted to sell their manufactured goods in Canada. They put pressure on the American government to make a new trade agreement with Canada to lower the tariffs. Canadians in western Canada and the Maritimes also put pressure on Laurier to make a trade agreement with the U.S.A. The high tariffs were costing them money.

21. In 1911, Canada negotiated a Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. Laurier thought that this treaty would be supported by all Canadians. It would bring more trade and prosperity to Canada. He was wrong. The arguments that had been used in the election of 1891 on the issue of reciprocity were raised again. Robert Borden saw the treaty as a first step toward the annexation of Canada by the U.S.A. Once again, businessmen, workers, and people loyal to Britain opposed the treaty. Laurier decided to call an election. He would allow the Canadian voters to decide.

**Why Did Laurier Lose the Election of 1911?**

22. Laurier and his Liberals lost the election of 1911 for several reasons. The Liberals had been in power since 1896 and many of the Liberal Cabinet Ministers were now old men. These men did not have the new ideas and energy of younger men. Many Canadians thought it was time to change the government.

23. Laurier faced two opponents, not one. Robert Borden led the Conservatives, who opposed the Naval Act and the Reciprocity Treaty. His other opponent was Henri Bourassa and the Quebec nationalists. Laurier had always counted on the support of French Canadians in Quebec. Henri Bourassa split this support. The Conservatives joined with the Quebec nationalists to defeat Laurier. Laurier called this union the "Unholy Alliance". The Conservatives and the Quebec nationalists agreed on one thing only—they wanted to defeat Laurier. Robert Borden won the election and became the new Prime Minister of Canada. Reciprocity with the U.S.A. was a dead issue.

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—8

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. John A. Macdonald | —said 'no' to an Imperial Council to run the British Empire                   |
| Queen Victoria       | —suggested that colonies should help pay for the British army and navy        |
| Joseph Chamberlain   | —advised Queen Victoria on some government decisions                          |
| Wilfrid Laurier      | —was out-voted on the Treaty of Washington by the two British representatives |
| Prince Albert        | —knighted Wilfrid Laurier at the Diamond Jubilee in 1897                      |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. External affairs means
  - (a) business that is done outside the office
  - (b) relations between the federal government and the provinces
  - (c) relations between Canada and other countries
  - (d) all of the above
3. Dominions are
  - (a) colonies owned and ruled by Britain
  - (b) some of Britain's former colonies that make their own rules
  - (c) independent countries that never had any connection with Britain
  - (d) none of the above
4. Imperialism means
  - (a) stealing anything from another country
  - (b) joining the British Empire
  - (c) wanting to break away from the Empire and become independent
  - (d) one country takes over land in another part of the world, by force if necessary

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

5. Canada wanted Britain to look after its external affairs in 1867 because
  - (a) Canada did not think it was important
  - (b) Canada was planning to invade the U.S.A. and needed Britain's help
  - (c) Canada was afraid of an American invasion and needed Britain's help
  - (d) Canada was afraid of a Russian invasion from Alaska
6. Britain kept control of Canada's external affairs in 1867 because
  - (a) Canadians could not defend themselves
  - (b) Canada was still a British colony
  - (c) Britain wanted Canada's help in any British wars
  - (d) all of the above

#### Question

7. Who joined the Imperial Federation League and what did they want?

### Paragraphs 9—15

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| 1. Henri Bourassa | —agreed to help volunteers who wished to fight in South Africa                        |
| Wilfrid Laurier   | —leader of the Conservative Party who wanted Canada to contribute to the British navy |
| Robert Borden     | —opposed Laurier's compromises on the Boer War and the Naval Act                      |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A nationalist is someone who
  - (a) believes in Britain first and Canada second
  - (b) has a strong belief in the language and traditions of her own people
  - (c) believes in the Empire
  - (d) believes one country is the strongest in the world



3. Volunteers are people who
  - (a) refuse to fight for their country
  - (b) are forced to fight for their country
  - (c) offer to fight for their country in time of war
  - (d) offer to stay home during a war

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. French Canadians were opposed to Canada's helping Britain in the Boer War because
  - (a) Britain had not asked for help
  - (b) Canadians were too busy with their own affairs to worry about the Boers
  - (c) they were afraid they would be forced to help Britain in future wars
  - (d) they thought the British were Boers

### Question

5. What was discovered in the Transvaal and Orange Free State that increased Britain's interest in these territories?

### Paragraphs 16—23

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Teddy Roosevelt —led the attack against Laurier in Quebec during the 1911 election
- Lord Alverstone —set up the International Joint Commission to settle border disputes between Canada and the U.S.A.
- Wilfrid Laurier —an American imperialist who did not want Canada to have a port in the Alaska Panhandle
- Robert Borden —the British representative who voted against Canada during the Alaska Boundary dispute
- Henri Bourassa —opposed a Reciprocity Treaty with the U.S.A. in the 1911 election

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Laurier thought that Canadians would support the Reciprocity Treaty in 1911 because
  - (a) it would increase trade with Britain and bring prosperity to Canada
  - (b) it would increase trade between the U.S.A. and Canada
  - (c) it would increase the tariffs and give Canadian businessmen more protection
3. Canada wanted a port on the Alaska Panhandle because
  - (a) it wanted to start a war between Canada and the U.S.A.
  - (b) it felt that the U.S.A. had no right to any part of the Panhandle
  - (c) it wanted to transport supplies into the Yukon where gold had just been discovered

### Question

4. Why did Lord Alverstone not side with Canada in the Alaska Boundary discussions?

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Completing A Chart

In your notebook, make a chart that indicates the attitude of certain political leaders to issues of their day. Use the issues of the Boer War, the Naval Act, and the Reciprocity Treaty. Give the attitudes of Wilfrid Laurier, Robert Borden, and Henri Bourassa to these issues.

### Using the Library

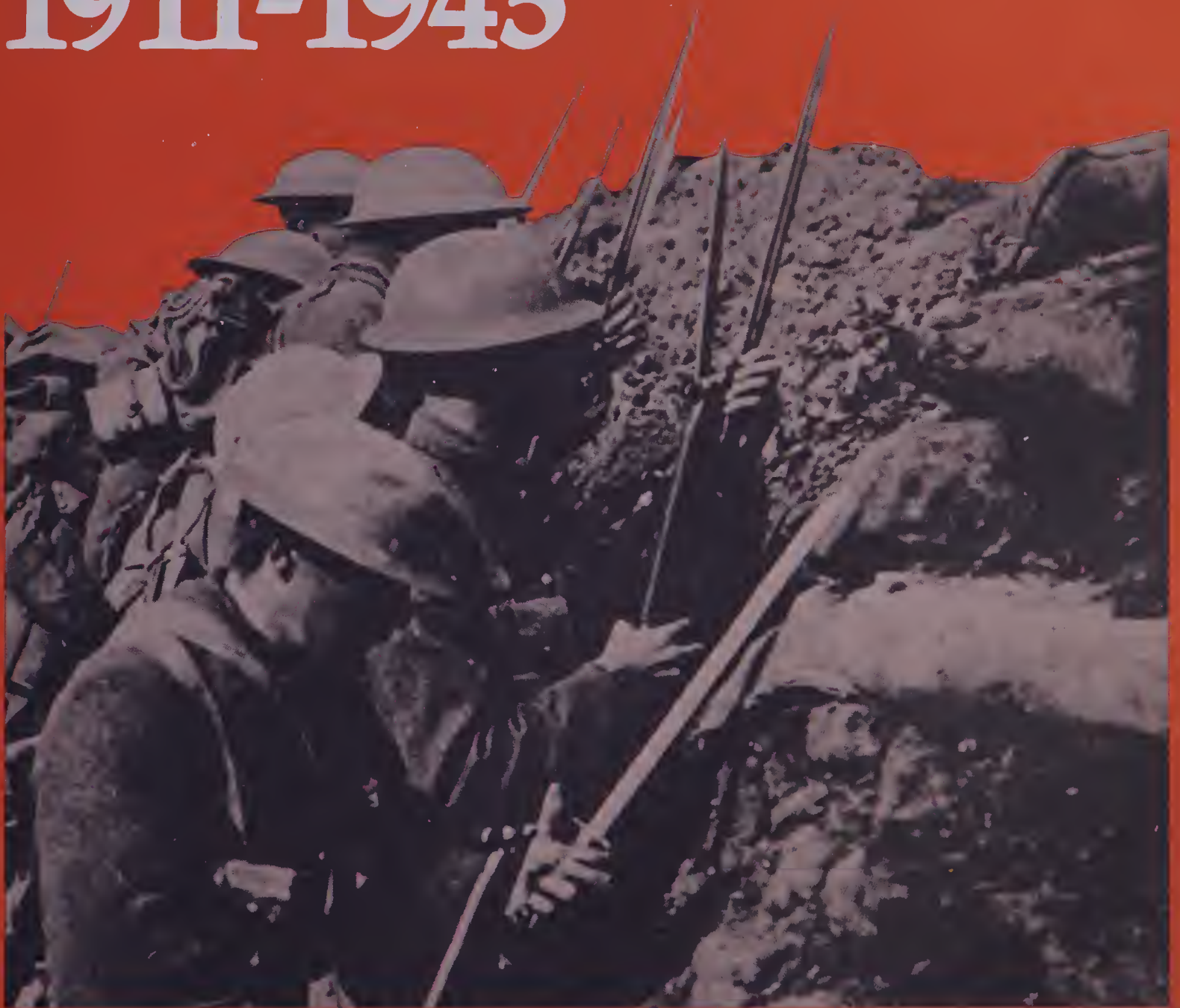
1. Find out the names of those countries where Queen Victoria's descendants became monarchs.
2. Find out more about the attempts on Queen Victoria's life.

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

1. (a) Find out how your community celebrated Queen Victoria's Diamond Jubilee. Use the resources of your local library and newspaper.
- (b) If Queen Elizabeth II reaches a Diamond Jubilee, should Canadians celebrate it? Discuss.

# UNIT TWO

## Canada Confronts the World 1911-1945





## CHAPTER EIGHT

# Canada In World War I

AIM: How Did Canadians Participate in World War I?

### What Were the Causes of World War I?

1. In the three years after the 1911 election, Canadians continued to develop the West, build railways, and go about their business. In Europe, the dark clouds of war grew blacker, but most Canadians really did not notice.

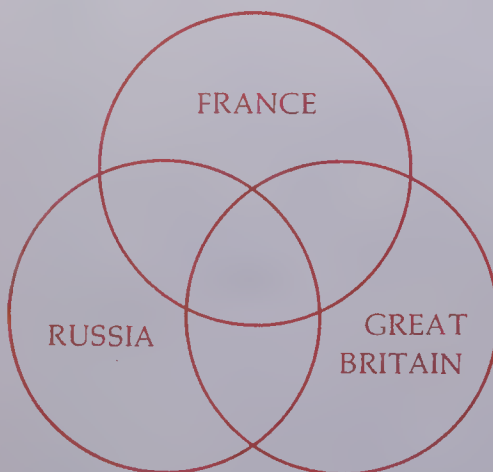
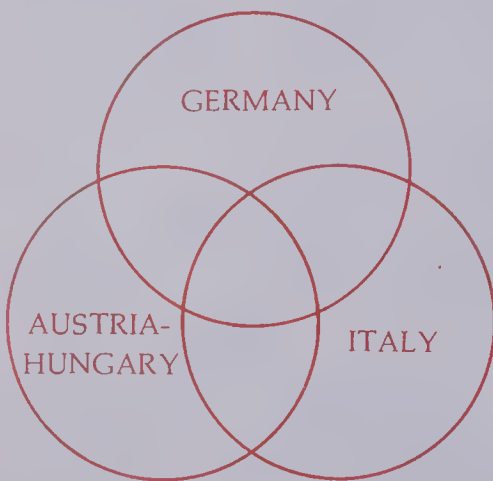
2. There were many reasons why the danger of war in Europe was increasing. Nations sometimes act like people. They are proud of themselves and jealous of their neighbours. They remember insults and look for revenge. They do not usually forgive and forget. This strong feeling of pride in one's people is called nationalism. In Europe, Germany and France were very jealous and angry with each other after Germany had defeated France in 1871. Austria-Hungary and Russia were also angry and jealous over the lands in south-east Europe called the Balkans.

3. The countries of Europe competed with each other around the world for colonies. This is called imperialism. Countries like Britain, France, and Germany wanted colonies for raw materials and trade. They also wanted to see who could collect the most colonies to prove who was the biggest and strongest. They liked to brag about the size of their empires. Frequently, two countries tried to get the same colony, like Britain and France in Egypt or Germany and France in Morocco, North Africa. This race for colonies added to the anger and jealousy among countries.

4. As the countries competed with each other they felt the need for more weapons and larger forces. They competed to see who could build the best navy (Britain and Germany) and the strongest army (Germany and France). This pride in fighting strength is called **militarism**. As the countries built up their armies and navies, the danger of war increased.

5. If one person threatens to attack another person, it is natural to look for friends or allies to help in case of a fight. This was what the countries of Europe did. Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy agreed to help each other if one of them was attacked by another big country. They were called the Triple

Triple Alliance



Triple Entente

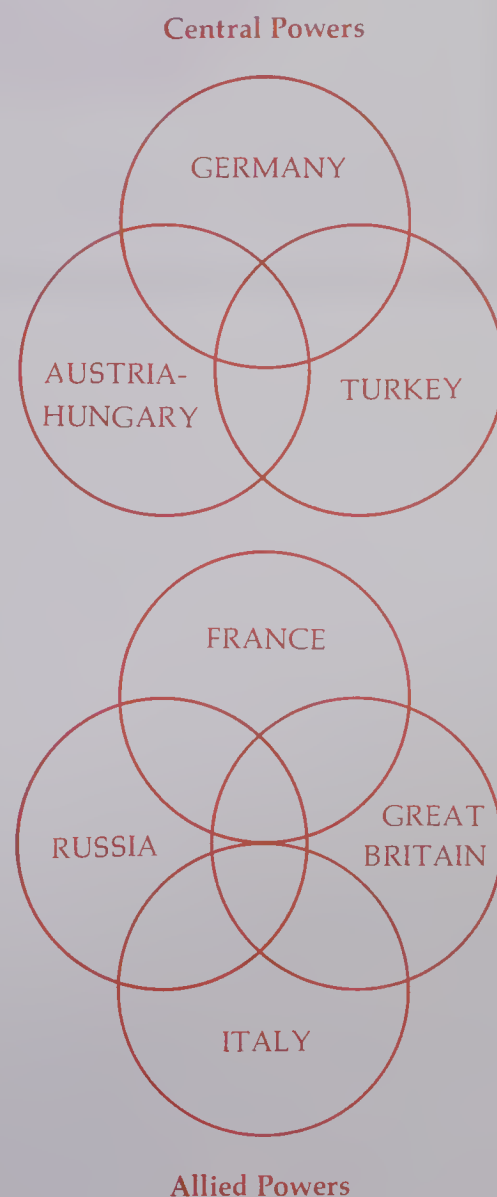
Alliance. Russia, France, and Britain agreed to help each other if one of them was attacked by another big country. They were called the Triple Entente. Europe was divided into two groups of allies or two **alliances**. The countries felt safer because they knew they had friends they could call on in a fight. But this also meant that if two countries got into a fight, then all six would be dragged into the fight. A war between two countries would spread very quickly into a great war between the two groups of allies and their colonies throughout the world.

6. The countries had kept their arguments from spreading into wars for many years. However, in 1914, disaster struck in the Balkans. Many Slavic people lived inside the Austro-Hungarian Empire. They wanted to separate from the Empire and form their own countries. They were nationalists. One group of Slavic people called Serbs had broken away from the Turkish Empire and created the country of Serbia. The Serbs who lived in the Austro-Hungarian Empire wanted to separate from Austria-Hungary and join their fellow Serbs in their own country of Serbia. Austria-Hungary did not want to let the Serbs go.

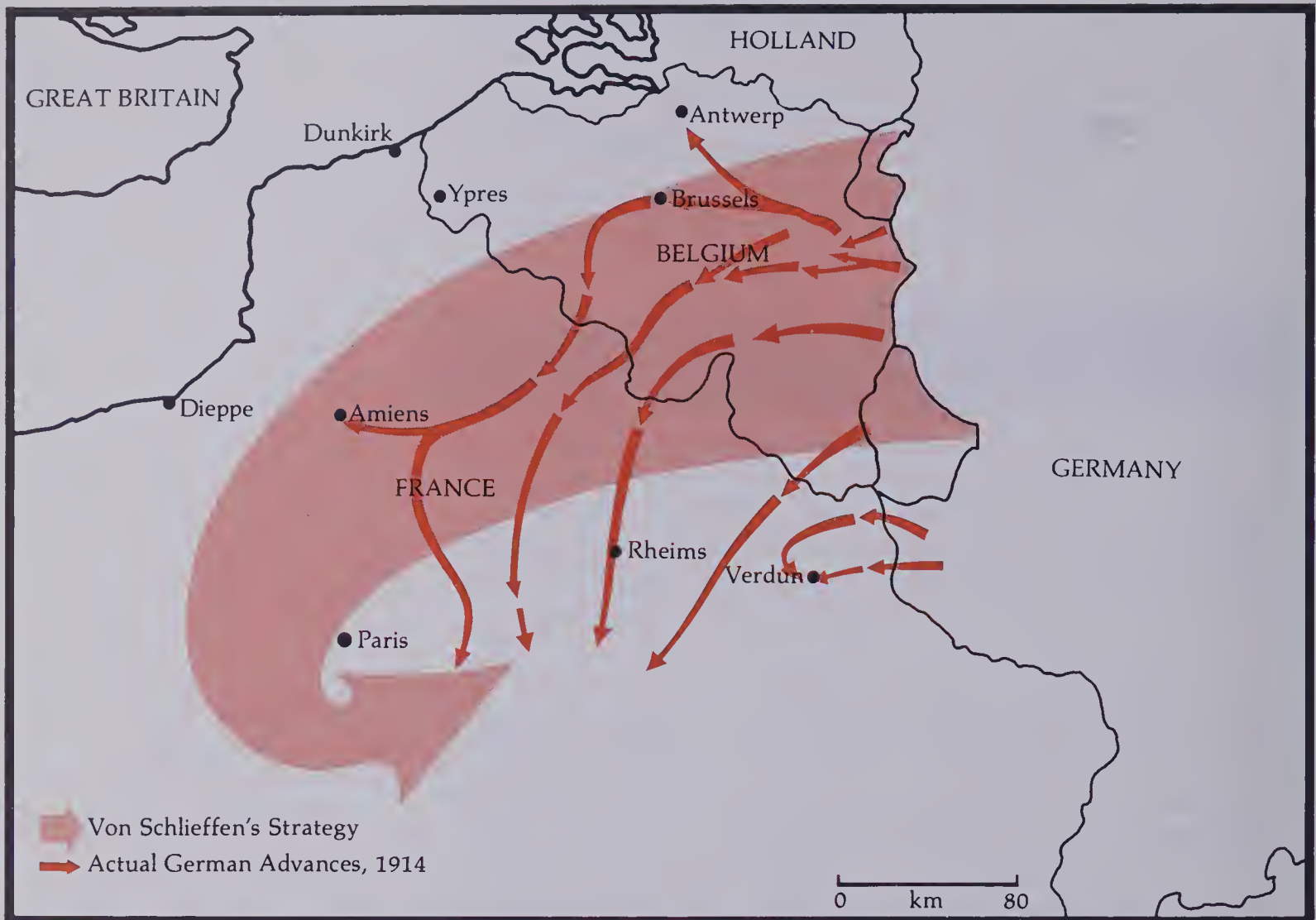
7. A Serbian nationalist shot and killed Archduke Ferdinand of Austria and his wife, Sophie, on June 28, 1914. Ferdinand was going to be the next Emperor of the Austro-Hungarian Empire. The murder of an important political leader is called an **assassination**. Austria-Hungary was very angry. It blamed the small country of Serbia for this assassination. The Serbian government was not responsible, but Austria-Hungary saw its chance to declare war on Serbia. Russia was also a Slavic country and Russia said that it would protect Serbia. When Austria-Hungary attacked Serbia, Russia prepared for war against Austria-Hungary. The national pride and imperial ambition of Austria-Hungary and Russia threatened to push the world to war.

8. The two alliances prepared for war. Germany and Turkey sided with Austria-Hungary and were called the Central Powers. France and Britain sided with Russia and were called the Allied Powers. Italy did not support its allies when the war started. In 1915, Italy switched sides and joined the Allied Powers. They promised Italy more land after the war.

9. Britain declared war on August 4, 1914 when Germany attacked France through Belgium. Belgium was a **neutral** country which had not joined in the war and did not belong to any alliance. Britain was determined to protect Belgium and help France. Britain controlled Canada's external affairs. When Britain was at war, Canada was at war. By August 10, Prime Minister Borden and his Cabinet decided to create an army of 25 000 volunteers to join the British in Europe. The people were certain that it would be a short war. "Home by Christmas" was the common British saying in 1914.







## How Was the War Fought?

### The German Plan

10. Germany was surrounded by enemy countries. Germany would have to knock out either France or Russia at the beginning of the war to avoid fighting on two sides or fronts. If Germany had to fight France and Russia at the same time, it would have to divide its army in two. This would weaken the German army and prevent it from winning the war quickly. A German general named Von Schlieffen made up a plan or **strategy**, to knock France completely out of the war in six weeks. Von Schlieffen had been a boxer and he wanted to knock France out of the war with one big punch. He wanted to crash through France with most of the German army. He thought that the French army would be knocked out of the war by this surprise attack. The entire German army would then be able to turn on Russia. Germany would not be forced to fight on two fronts and would win the war.

11. Unfortunately for Germany, the Schlieffen Plan was not carried out properly in the summer of 1914. The German army which made the surprise attack through Belgium was not strong enough to knock out France. French and British troops slowed

down the German army. In the end, the two sides dug trenches in the ground and the **stalemate** began. Neither army could move successfully against the other. On the Western Front, there were 1000 km of opposing trenches. They stretched from the English Channel to Switzerland. The French army had not been destroyed. Germany was forced to fight on two fronts.

### Trench Warfare

12. The two opposing sides had machine guns. Each machine gun fired hundreds of bullets within one minute. To protect themselves from the machine gun bullets, each side dug into the ground and built trenches. Small shovels or spades were carried by the soldiers to dig the trenches. Between the two opposing lines of trenches was land which no one controlled. It was called "no man's land". Each side put barbed wire in front of its trenches to slow down an enemy attack. Anyone who was caught in the barbed wire was an easy target. The stalemate would be broken when one side found a weapon which could destroy the other's barbed wire, machine guns, and trenches. Only then would the troops be able to get through and capture the enemy.

### Attempts to Break the Stalemate

13. Poison gas was the first weapon that was used to try and break the stalemate. On April 22, 1915, the German troops opened cans of poison gas in their trenches at Ypres. The wind blew this gas toward the trenches of the unsuspecting French and Canadian troops. The greenish-yellow chlorine gas drifted into the trenches. The gas was deadly. It burned the lungs of those who breathed it and even burned the skin. The German troops, wearing gas masks, attacked. The French troops ran away but the Canadians stayed and fought. For two days, they held off the German army until reinforcements arrived. The Canadian troops used wet handkerchiefs to breathe through. One of every three Canadians was either hurt or killed, but the Canadians held their positions. The German troops did not break through and Canadian troops acquired a reputation for being brave soldiers. Soon after this attack, Allied troops were given gas masks. Poison gas did not break the stalemate.

14. Both sides used artillery or large guns to try to destroy the enemy trenches. The idea was to bombard the enemy until all the soldiers in the trenches were killed. This would allow the attacking troops to charge through no man's land and capture the enemy position. But bombardment was not the answer to the stalemate. There were always some enemy survivors who had machine guns. They mowed down the advancing troops. In April, 1917, Canadian troops once again proved their bravery at a place called Vimy Ridge. Vimy Ridge was held by German troops and the Allies had



never been able to capture it. The Allies bombarded the Ridge for two weeks and then the Canadian troops attacked. Canadian losses were heavy—3598 men killed—but Vimy Ridge was captured.

15. The British navy tried to stop any ships taking supplies of food and raw materials to Germany. This was called a **blockade**. The purpose of the blockade was to weaken Germany and its people. At the same time, German submarines called U-boats were trying to weaken Britain. They were sinking ships carrying supplies and troops to Britain. By 1916, German U-boats were sinking 160 Allied ships every month. However, the Allied discovery of depth charges and machines which listened for the U-boats (sonar) cut down the danger of U-boats after April, 1917. As more U-boats were destroyed, fewer Allied ships were sunk. The British blockade of Germany continued. The blockade took a long time to weaken Germany. It was not until 1918 that some of the German people starved.

16. During World War I, the aeroplane was used mainly for spying on enemy positions. The plane was not strong enough to carry many bombs and could not destroy enemy trenches. However, the planes carried machine guns which were used to shoot down enemy planes. Fights between enemy planes were

MAIN BATTLEFRONTS OF  
WORLD WAR I—1917



called "dogfights". Pilots who shot down five or more enemy planes were called air aces. The air aces who shot down the greatest number of planes became national heroes. Billy Bishop was Canada's most famous air ace; he shot down 72 enemy planes.

17. At the beginning of the war, the British generals regarded the tank as a "toy". It was too heavy and slow. As the war went on, improvements were made to the tank. It became lighter and faster. In 1917, 400 Allied tanks smashed through the German positions. It was the weapon that helped to break the deadlock created by the barbed wire, the spade, and the machine gun.

## How Did Canadians At Home Help Win the War?

### Working

18. This long war was not just fought on the high seas, in the air, or across the trenches. It was also fought on the farms, in the factories, and in the kitchens of Canada. This was called the "Home Front". Here the food and munitions (guns, ammunition, and other war materials) were produced to supply the fighting men. This was called the "War of Supply". Soldiers had to have full stomachs and loaded weapons to win on the Western Front.

19. Canadian farmers produced four times more food in 1918 than they had in 1913 to help feed the Canadian, British, and French soldiers. Farmers ploughed more land and many women, called "farmettes", and teenagers pitched in to help with the harvest.

20. Canada's manufacturing industries grew even more rapidly during the war. Uniforms, aeroplanes, engines, ships, guns, and shells were needed by all the Allied armies. Canada had the minerals needed to produce bullets, shells, explosives, and guns. In 1915, a whole new munitions industry was created with 1500 factories from British Columbia to Nova Scotia. These factories employed 350 000 people. They produced 800 000 shells a month for the greedy guns of the Western Front. Working with munitions was also dangerous. On December 6, 1917, two Allied ships carrying explosives collided in Halifax harbour. Almost 2000 people were killed and the north end of Halifax was flattened by the explosion. All was not quiet on the Home Front.

### Women

21. As more and more men joined the armed forces, the expanding farms and new factories needed more workers. They turned to the women of Canada. Some women had worked in factories before the war, but now women were called on to work for God, King, and country. Over 30 000 women worked in the highly skilled munitions factories. They operated drills, presses, and soldering irons. The government employed 6000 women as



*Soldering fuses in munitions factory,  
Verdun, Quebec*







## Elaine the Munitions Worker

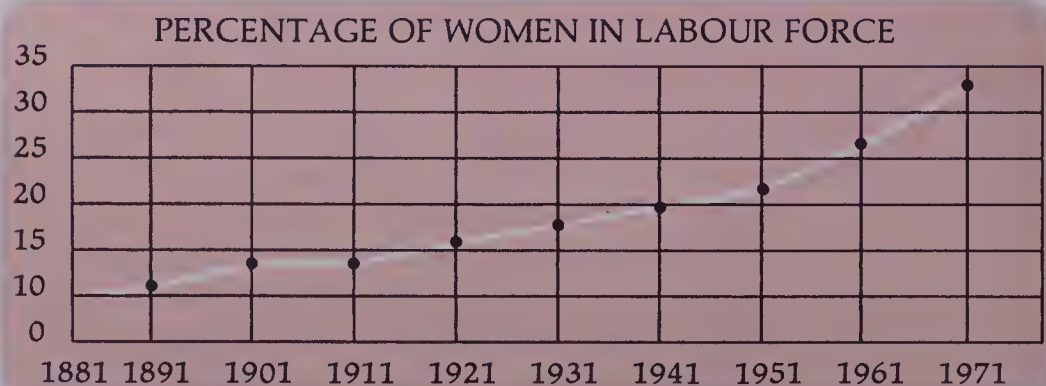
Elaine was eighteen years old when World War I began in 1914. She lived with her parents and one brother in Toronto, Ontario. When the war started, Elaine was engaged to John McNeil. Her fiancé volunteered to join the Canadian army. Their marriage was put off until he returned. Before the war started, Elaine had planned to marry and have children. The war changed her plans. As the men left for war, women took over their jobs.

There were many different jobs to choose from and this surprised Elaine. Before the war, respectable women were expected to stay at home. If they wanted jobs, they became teachers or nurses. The war changed this situation. Elaine decided to take a typing course and find an office job. However, before the course began, she saw an ad in the newspaper. It advertised munitions jobs in a factory close to where she lived. She had not even known what "munitions" meant. Her mother told her that it was the making of gun shells. Elaine hesitated to apply for the job. It sounded like a dangerous and hard job. In the end, she applied. She was told that she would start at \$1.89 a day. If she was good at the job, she would get a raise. She could make up to \$2.75 a day. That was good money! The bad part about the job was that she had to work twelve hours a day, six days a week. There was a short lunch break and some rest periods.

Elaine's first day at work was a hard one. When she entered the factory, she covered her ears to keep out the noise. The machines made a terrible racket. She was given a gown to put over her clothes. She also wore a yellow cap, called a "mop cap", to cover her hair. She was told that the mop cap was for safety. It kept her hair from being caught in the machines. Her boss showed her what to do. When the shell came out of the furnace, she used the drill to

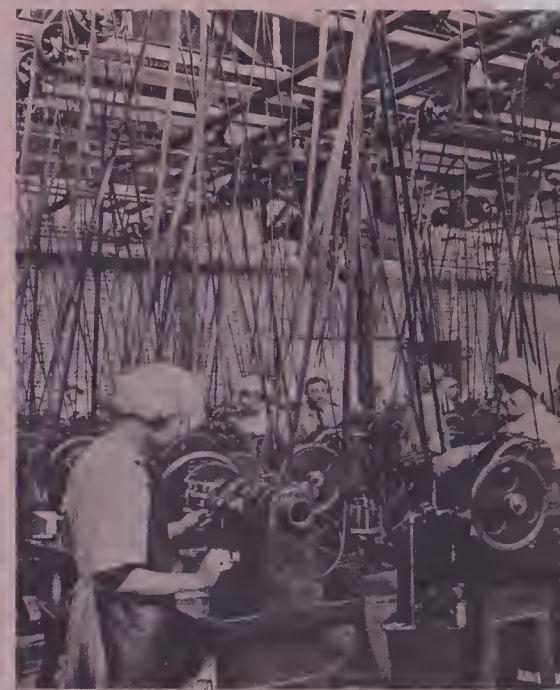
civil servants. Thousands worked in textile factories sewing uniforms. Women workers were very necessary in the 'War of Supply'.

22. Women did very important work in other ways, too. Wives and mothers persuaded their loved ones to join the army. Volunteers gave their time, money, and sewing to help the men at



shape it. Chemicals were poured over the shell before she drilled. The drilling only took about a minute. At first, she thought it was not a hard job. But the chemicals soaked her shoes and the factory was very hot. She also had to stand on her feet all day. It was so noisy that she could not even talk to other workers. The worst part of the job was knowing that an accident could happen at any moment. If she was careless, a machine could hurt or kill her. If one shell blew up, the whole factory would explode. There was no chance of escape. At the end of the first day, Elaine was exhausted. She seriously wondered if she wanted the job.

After a few weeks, Elaine became used to the job. Hundreds of men and women worked side by side in the factory. She could not understand why men, who did the same job, were paid more money than women. She felt that she was doing the job of a man and that she deserved the same pay and rights. Before the war, she had not supported the suffragettes who were trying to get votes for women. Like her mother, she believed that politics was for men. Working in the factory had changed her views. Elaine now wanted to be treated as an equal. She wanted equal pay and the right to vote. She knew that she still wanted to marry but she also wanted more freedom as a person. Men and women could create a better life if they worked together as equals.



*Routing powder groove on #80 fuse*

## Questions

1. List the hardships experienced by workers in the munitions factory.
2. In what ways did the munitions job change Elaine's thinking about women's rights?

the front. About 3000 female members of the armed forces looked after the wounded soldiers. Of these, 33 women died and 196 received medals for bravery in the war. Women proved that they could do most of the jobs normally done by men. They were proud of their efforts at home and abroad. They were confident and they demanded equal rights with men.

23. As women's efforts in the war increased, they demanded the right to vote and to run for election. **Suffragettes** had been demanding the right to vote before the war. Through women's organizations like the Women's Institute, Women's Christian Temperance Union, and local church groups, women organized and learned to speak in public. They spoke out on issues like public health, alcoholism, and poverty. But they knew that men would not really listen to them until women had the right to vote.





## Nellie McClung



Nellie McClung was born in 1873 in Ontario. She was an author and wrote several books. The most famous book she wrote was "In Times Like These". But Nellie McClung is known to most Canadians as a feminist. She wanted women to have equal rights with men. She thought that women should be able to vote and be elected to the government. Women would improve society if they became involved in politics. Nellie McClung thought that many problems in Canadian society were caused by men. War and drunkenness could be ended if women had a say in making the laws.

Nellie McClung was raised in Manitoba. She married and had five children. She became a suffragette and worked hard to win the vote for women. Manitoba gave women the right to vote in 1916. In the same year, women in Alberta and Saskatchewan received the right to vote in provincial elections. In 1918, all Canadian women received the right to vote in federal elections.

Nellie McClung was elected to the Alberta Legislature in 1921. Here she became involved in the temperance movement. She wanted to make it illegal to sell, buy, or drink alcohol. Alcohol was a terrible thing which hurt and destroyed many people. Many Canadians did not like her views on alcohol and disagreed with her. When she ran for election again in 1926, she was defeated.

Nellie McClung and other feminists wanted women to be appointed to the Senate. Unfortunately, the British North America Act stated that only certain "persons" could be appointed to the Senate. In 1928, the Supreme Court of Canada decided that women were not "persons". Only men were "persons" and only men could be appointed to the Senate. This decision was overturned in 1929 when a British court decided that Canadian women were "persons". This was an important victory for women's rights in Canada. Women could now be appointed to the Canadian Senate and other government jobs.

Nellie McClung thought that being a mother was the most important function of women. However, she wanted to end the situation where women were locked into the home with no rights. She wanted women to be able to develop themselves outside the home. She wanted to end discrimination against women in Canadian society. Discrimination exists where people cannot get jobs, equal pay, or equal treatment because of their sex, religion, colour, or race. In her opinion, this had to end. Women had the right to be treated as equals of men and to lead active lives. Women would then be able to contribute more to Canadian society and make Canada a better place.

Nellie McClung died in 1951 in Victoria, British Columbia. She is one of the most famous women in Canadian history.

## A TIMETABLE FOR WOMEN'S POLITICAL EQUALITY

Province	Suffrage (The Vote)	Eligible to Hold Office
Manitoba	28 January 1916	28 January 1916
Saskatchewan	14 March 1916	14 March 1916
Alberta	19 April 1916	19 April 1916
British Columbia	5 April 1917	5 April 1917
Ontario	12 April 1917	24 April 1919
Nova Scotia	26 April 1918	26 April 1918
Dominion of Canada	Close relatives of members of armed forces — 20 September 1917 all women — 24 May 1918	24 May 1918
New Brunswick	17 April 1919	9 March 1934
Prince Edward Island	3 May 1922	3 May 1922
*Newfoundland	13 April 1925	13 April 1925
Quebec	25 April 1940	25 April 1940

*\*Newfoundland did not join Confederation until 1949.*

### The Federal Government

24. The federal government played an important part in organizing the war effort. The War Measures Act was passed in 1914 which gave the federal government enormous power over the people and the economy. Prime Minister Borden and his Cabinet directed the war effort.

25. Governments on both sides of the war used **propaganda** to influence the way their citizens thought. Propaganda methods included speeches, slogans, posters, newspaper articles, and silent movies. The Canadian government used propaganda to convince people that the enemy was evil while its side was right. The government also used propaganda to encourage men to join the army. The government encouraged women and children to push men to volunteer. They also used propaganda to have people eat less meat and to give more money to the war effort. The government even used **censorship** to control what was reported and printed in Canadian newspapers.

26. As the war grew in size, the government set up Boards to control the production, use, and sale of important products like munitions, fuel, wheat, and other foods. The Boards decided how much should be sold to the public at home. Tonnes of wheat, flour, beef, and bacon were needed to feed the troops in Europe. The government urged Canadians on the Home Front to eat less of these foods. Cooks were encouraged to serve their families "Fried Mush" and "Vegetable Chops".

### Report on the German Army

"The dead body of a child of two was seen pinned to the ground with a German lance. A pregnant woman had been wounded with a bayonet and was discovered in the convent. She was dying."



27. The demand for many products in Europe and Canada went up during the war. Naturally, businessmen increased their prices. As the demand for goods kept increasing, so did the price. This is called **inflation**. The price of a man's coat jumped from \$5 in 1914 to \$13.95 in 1918 and the price of round steak went from .20/kg to .78/kg. The average weekly price for basics increased from \$7.96 in 1914 to \$13.49 in 1918. Workers did win higher wages, but their wages did not keep up with rising prices. As a result, they could not buy as much as they could before. However, businessmen's profits increased greatly during the war. Some businessmen were even accused of taking much higher profits than normal. This was called **profiteering**. The high profits and rising prices made many workers very angry with Prime Minister Borden and his government.

28. The war cost the government an enormous amount of money. Privates were paid \$1.10 per day, while Lieutenants received \$2 and Captains \$3 per day. The government had to buy 250 000 kg of meat and bread per day. It also bought over 400 000 rifles and bayonets and 4000 machine guns. By 1918, the war was costing Canada over \$1 000 000 per day and by March, 1919, the war had cost the country, in total, \$1 300 000 000.

29. Where did the money come from? How could a country of 8 000 000 people afford to spend so much money on the war? About 85 per cent of the money was raised through loans. The government borrowed money in Britain, the United States, and Canada. People gave the government money and the government gave each person a piece of paper promising to return the money plus 5 per cent interest in a number of years. This is called a Bond. The government held Victory Loan campaigns to get Canadians at home to buy Victory Bonds. Even children were asked to help by buying Victory Stamps for .25. The government also passed the first income tax in 1917 on people who earned over \$2000 per year. This tax was designed to help pay for the war. We still pay income tax today.

30. The Canadian war effort depended on the combined efforts of the soldiers, the citizens, and the government. With everyone pulling together, Canada was able to contribute greatly to the Allied war effort. In 1917, however, Canadian unity was broken and the success of the war effort was threatened.



## Why Was There A Conscription Crisis In Canada?

### A Shortage of Volunteers

31. When World War I began, Canada was not prepared for war. There were only 3000 people in the Canadian armed forces. By the end of the war, there were over 600 000. When the war began, almost all the 8 000 000 people in Canada supported the

war, even Henri Bourassa. At first, there was a great deal of **patriotism** among all Canadians. They were loyal to their country and they were united as a people. There were parades, speeches, and flag-waving—men volunteered to fight. Most French Canadians, including Laurier and Bourassa, supported the war in 1914. Prime Minister Borden promised that the Canadian armed forces would be made up of volunteers. No one would be forced to join the army to fight in Europe.

32. This unity among Canadians lasted for only a short time. As the war continued, Canadian casualties increased. By December, 1916, 68 000 Canadians had died or were wounded. In 1914, the French Canadians had enlisted in the army as readily as other Canadians. Nearly 25 per cent of the volunteers were French Canadians. As the war continued, fewer and fewer French Canadians joined the armed forces. By April, 1917, there were 424 526 volunteers in the armed forces; only 4.5 per cent of these were French Canadians. Some English Canadians resented that their relatives were risking their lives while many French Canadians stayed at home.

33. In 1917, Prime Minister Borden went overseas to see the war situation for himself. He became convinced that men would have to be forced to join the army. They were needed to replace the men who were being wounded and killed in Europe. The generals told him that there were not enough men volunteering for the army.

### French Canadian Opposition

34. When Borden returned to Canada in 1917, he announced that **conscription** would be brought in by the Canadian government. Canadian men who had not volunteered to join the armed forces would now be forced to join. This announcement brought cries of protest and anger from some workers and farmers. However, most English Canadians supported the government. Most French Canadians were strongly opposed to conscription—for many reasons.

- They had been in Canada a long time. They had little loyalty to either Britain or France. They had no love for Britain who had taken French Canada away from France in 1760. They felt that France had deserted them and they had no contact with relatives there.

- French Canadian men married at a younger age than English Canadian men. They had family responsibilities. This made it difficult for them to join the army.

- Many French Canadians were afraid that they would lose their culture and language. The teaching of subjects in French had been forbidden in Manitoba and in the junior grades of Ontario. This made French Canadians suspicious. If large numbers of

### Enlistment/Casualty Rate for 1917

Month	Enlistments	Casualties
January	9 194	4 396
February	6 809	1 250
March	6 640	6 161
April	5 530	13 477
May	6 407	13 457
June	6 348	7 931
July	3 882	7 906
August	3 117	13 232
September	3 588	10 990
October	4 884	5 929
November	4 019	30 741
December	3 921	7 476



Surgeons operating close to the front lines





## Robert Borden



Robert Borden was born, June 26, 1854, in Grand Pré, Nova Scotia. He went to school in Nova Scotia and then taught for one year in the United States. Returning to Halifax, he became a lawyer in 1878. Borden worked hard and his law practice grew rapidly in the 1880's. In 1889, he became the head of his own law office and married Laura Bond.

Borden was successful and happy in Halifax. He entered politics at the request of Charles Tupper from a sense of duty to his country. He was elected to the House of Commons for Halifax in 1896. When Charles Tupper decided to retire as leader of the Conservative Party in 1901, Borden agreed to act as 'temporary' leader. He remained leader of the Conservative Party until 1920.

The election of 1911 finally gave Borden and the Conservatives an opportunity to defeat Laurier and the Liberals. Borden and the Conservatives appealed to the loyalty of Canadians and their dislike of Americans. When the Liberals offered free trade in some goods with the U.S.A., the Conservatives replied 'no truck nor trade with the Yankees'. In Quebec, Borden made an alliance with Bourassa and the Nationalists to try and defeat the Liberals. In Ontario, Borden promised more help for the British navy while, in Quebec, Bourassa and the Nationalists said no help for the British navy. The voters ignored this disagreement and the Conservatives won the election. Robert Borden became Canada's eighth Prime Minister on October 10, 1911.

As Prime Minister, Borden introduced some reforms to improve the civil service. However, his emergency Naval Bill to give \$35 000 000 to the British Navy in 1912 led to a split with the French Canadian Nationalists from Quebec. The Liberal Senate defeated the bill.

When World War I broke out in August, 1914, Prime Minister Borden and the government faced an enormous job. Planning the war effort was far more difficult than the settlement of the West. They had to feed, clothe, and arm a force of 600 000. Industries

French Canadian men joined the army, they might be assimilated by the English Canadians.

- The Canadian government had not acted wisely when it tried to recruit French Canadian volunteers into the army. There were few French Canadian regiments. The man in charge of recruitment was Sam Hughes, the Minister of the Militia in Borden's Cabinet. He sent Protestant ministers who spoke no French into Quebec to recruit volunteers. He insisted that most new French Canadian recruits be trained in English regiments. French Canadians became even more suspicious.

had to be organized and supplies shipped to Europe. Sometimes, mistakes were made, theft and bribery happened, and a few businessmen cheated the government. But, on the whole, the government and the people did a very good job.

In August, 1914, Prime Minister Borden promised to send an army of 25 000 to Britain. The war dragged on and casualties increased. In 1916, Borden promised to raise an army of 500 000. However, by 1917, few men in Canada were willing to volunteer. The casualties continued to grow in Europe. The U.S.A. entered the war in March, 1917, but their soldiers would not arrive until late in the year. Borden was determined to keep his promise and protect Canada's fighting reputation. He decided on May 17, 1917 to use conscription to get the men needed for the army.

The decision split the country. The majority of English Canadians supported the government. The Liberal Party was split between English and French members. The 1917 election showed this split between English and French Canadians. The Conservative Party was destroyed in Quebec.

Robert Borden represented Canada in the Imperial War Cabinet in Britain in 1917 and 1918. He led Canada's representatives to the Peace Conference in 1919 where he worked very hard to help write the Treaty of Versailles.

When Borden returned to Canada in 1919, he was exhausted from his years of work as Prime Minister and as Canada's war leader. Borden selected Arthur Meighen to follow him as Leader of the Conservative Party and then he resigned on July 10, 1920.

During his retirement, Borden worked in business. He was a director of several companies and became President of Crown Life Insurance Company in 1928. He became a self-made millionaire. In 1930, he represented Canada at the League of Nations which he had helped to create in 1919. The Great Depression cut Borden's fortune in half, but he continued to enjoy life as a respected Canadian and world leader until his death, June 10, 1937.

### The Election of 1917

35. In the summer of 1917, Prime Minister Borden and the government brought in the Military Service Act. This made conscription the law in Canada. It split English and French Canada once again. Never had they been so divided. Laurier spoke out against conscription. He believed that the government could still recruit volunteers—by using better methods. Laurier also knew that French Canadians were totally against conscription. Henri Bourassa, the Quebec nationalist, was violently attacking conscription. Laurier knew that if he did not oppose conscription, he would lose the support of the French Canadians.



36. Borden called an election for December, 1917. This vote was important because it would show how Canadians felt about the government and conscription. To win the election, the Borden government changed some voting laws and made certain promises.

- The Borden government did not allow **conscientious objectors** to vote in the election. These are people who refused to join the army and fight because of their beliefs. These people would not have voted for Borden.

- The Borden government took away the vote from immigrants who had come to Canada from enemy countries like Germany and Austria-Hungary and had become Canadian citizens since 1902. They might have voted against conscription and the Borden government.

- The Borden government gave the vote to some, but not all women, before the election. The women, who were given the vote, were either in the armed forces or were related to men fighting overseas. These women would vote for conscription and the Borden government.

- The Borden government allowed the soldiers overseas to vote in any riding they wanted. Soldiers were able to vote in ridings where the government candidates were in trouble. Several Liberals were defeated because of the soldiers' vote. 216 000 soldiers voted for the Borden government, and only 18 500 voted for the Liberals.

37. Borden suggested a coalition government. Such a government would be made up of both the Liberal and Conservative Parties. Borden argued that such a government would be able to unite the country and win the war. Laurier refused to join a coalition government because it favoured conscription. Most English-speaking Liberals deserted Laurier and joined the new Union government led by Borden. Laurier was criticized and condemned by his former friends. The Liberal Party was split in two between the English and French members.

38. When the vote was counted, Borden and the Unionists had won a great victory—153 seats in the House of Commons. Laurier's Liberals won only 82 seats—62 of them from Quebec. Riots broke out in Quebec when the conscription law went into effect. Several people were killed when soldiers had to stop the riots. Before the war ended, 60 000 men had been conscripted. Perhaps as many volunteers could have been recruited if the government had tried different methods. No one knows. The one thing that remained after the Military Service Act and the election of 1917 was hatred and bitterness between English and French Canadians.

## How Was Peace Restored?

39. In many ways, 1917 was not a good year for the Allies. German U-boats sank more ships than ever before. Russia, a member of the Triple Entente, had a **revolution**. The people used force to overthrow the government. Soon the Communist Party in Russia, led by Lenin, took Russia out of the war. The Triple Entente lost an important ally. Germany transferred its troops to the Western Front. It looked like Britain and France might lose the war. Fortunately for the Allies, the U.S.A. entered the war on their side in 1917. The U.S.A. was now the most powerful country in the world. American troops, weapons, and supplies were used to help defeat Germany in 1918.

40. On November 11, 1918, Germany signed the armistice and stopped fighting. The Allies had won the war. The peace treaty was not worked out until 1919 at Versailles, France. The winners of the war treated the losers very badly. They took revenge on Germany.

41. Canada had made a huge contribution to the war effort. Besides all the money spent on the war, 60 000 Canadians had died. Over 170 000 were wounded.

42. Canada had become a member of the Imperial War Cabinet in London, England. Canada helped to make some decisions on how the war was fought. Arthur Currie became the first Canadian commander of the Canadian Corps (army) in Europe. Canada signed the Treaty of Versailles in 1919 which brought World War I to an end. Canada also joined the League of Nations as a separate country in 1919. The League of Nations was an organization of countries that worked to keep world peace. Canada was now an independent country. It was only a matter of time before Canada would have complete control over its own external affairs.



*Lenin, Second Congress of Soviets, 1917*



*Victorious Canadians after Vimy Ridge, 1917*



## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—9

#### Knowing The People

1. What is the connection between Archduke Ferdinand and World War I?

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Militarism means having
  - (a) great pride in your country
  - (b) the desire to have more land
  - (c) pride in the armed forces
  - (d) all of the above
3. An alliance refers to
  - (a) a group of friends
  - (b) a group of countries that agree to fight together
  - (c) a group of countries that are jealous of each other
  - (d) building a great empire with many colonies
4. Assassination means
  - (a) using a gun to rob another person
  - (b) receiving a shot from a doctor to guard against disease
  - (c) killing an enemy soldier in war
  - (d) killing a political leader
5. Remaining neutral means
  - (a) not supporting either side
  - (b) your car is standing still
  - (c) you do not care
  - (d) promising to support another country if it is attacked

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

6. World War I broke out because
  - (a) the nations of Europe were proud of themselves and jealous of each other
  - (b) the European armies and navies were small and no one thought that many people would be killed
  - (c) Austria-Hungary and Germany thought that Russia had no allies and could be easily defeated
  - (d) Archduke Ferdinand was poisoned while visiting Serbia

## Questions

7. What is the term used to refer to a country's pride in itself and its people?
8. What is the term used to refer to countries wanting to gain more lands and people?
9. What did the Serbs living in Austria-Hungary want and why?

### Paragraphs 10—17

#### Knowing The People

1. What was Von Schlieffen's plan for the German army?
2. Name one of Canada's best known air aces. How many enemy planes was he responsible for shooting down?

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. A strategy is
  - (a) one strong boxing punch
  - (b) a plan
  - (c) a German word meaning "two fronts"
  - (d) a surprise attack
4. A stalemate is
  - (a) a situation in which neither side can move successfully against the other
  - (b) a chess move
  - (c) a knock-out blow by one country against another
  - (d) the way in which Von Schlieffen wanted his plan carried out
5. A blockade is
  - (a) a type of drink used by the soldiers in the trenches
  - (b) what happened when sonar was used against the U-boats
  - (c) a situation such as the Germans starving in World War I
  - (d) what occurs when the navy blocks ships getting into or out of a country

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

6. The success of the Von Schlieffen plan was important because
  - (a) Germany did not want to be defeated by a surprise attack from France
  - (b) Germany did not want to fight on two fronts at the same time
  - (c) Germany did not want to fight Russia alone

7. A stalemate occurred in World War I because
  - (a) the machine gun could kill attacking troops in large numbers
  - (b) one side was able to destroy the enemy trenches with artillery
  - (c) the section between the trenches called “no man’s land” could not be taken by either side

### Questions

8. Why did Germany use chlorine gas?
9. Why did Britain set up a blockade against Germany?

### Paragraphs 18—23

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Suffragettes are
  - (a) women who want women to have the right to vote
  - (b) women who want controls put on the sale of alcoholic beverages
  - (c) women who blame men for all the problems of the world

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The “War of Supply” was very important because
  - (a) Britain and France needed food from Canada
  - (b) Canadian factories produced much of the munitions needed by the Allies
  - (c) soldiers could not fight if they ran out of food and bullets
  - (d) all of the above
3. Women worked in factories during World War I because
  - (a) there were not enough men to fill the jobs
  - (b) women were able to do the skilled jobs as well as men
  - (c) women wanted to help in the war effort
  - (d) all of the above

#### Question

4. Why did people like Nellie McClung think that it was important for women to have the vote?

### Paragraphs 24—30

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Propaganda is used
  - (a) to attack enemy submarines
  - (b) to influence the way people think
  - (c) to establish a blockade
2. Censorship is
  - (a) helping people to read newspapers better
  - (b) control of what people write, read, or see
  - (c) encouraging people to buy more products
3. Inflation is
  - (a) an increase in prices as demand for goods increases
  - (b) an increase in prices as factories produce less
  - (c) a decrease in prices due to government control
4. Profiteering means that
  - (a) businessmen are receiving a normal profit from the goods they sell
  - (b) the normal price of goods is increased by a tariff
  - (c) businessmen are taking too high a profit from the sale of their products

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

5. The federal government created Boards during the War because
  - (a) they had to control the manufacture and use of such important goods as fuel and food
  - (b) Canada had a communist government at this time
  - (c) Canada’s large forests were used to supply boards to build the trenches overseas
  - (d) none of the above
6. Many workers were unhappy with the Borden government in 1917 because
  - (a) wages were rising faster than prices
  - (b) there were no jobs for Canadians
  - (c) they wanted to volunteer to serve in the army
  - (d) prices were rising faster than wages

#### Questions

7. Why did the Borden government pass the War Measures Act in 1914?
8. What is a bond that is issued by a government?



## Paragraphs 31—42

### Knowing The People

Make a list of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| 1. Lenin        | —was the Minister of Militia in Borden's Cabinet                    |
| Robert Borden   | —became the first Canadian commander of the Canadian Corps          |
| Henri Bourassa  | —led the communist revolution in Russia in 1917                     |
| Sam Hughes      | —followed Borden as leader of the Conservative Party in 1920        |
| Arthur Currie   | —supported Canada's war effort but opposed conscription             |
| Wilfrid Laurier | —a Quebec nationalist who opposed conscription                      |
| Arthur Meighen  | —introduced conscription in 1917 and won the election on this issue |

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Patriotism is
  - (a) a strong feeling of loyalty to one's country
  - (b) a type of parade common during World War I
  - (c) a person who volunteers to fight for his country
  - (d) none of the above
3. Conscription
  - (a) caused a split between English and French Canadians
  - (b) is a type of parade common during World War I
  - (c) is a person who volunteers to fight for his country
  - (d) requires citizens to fight for their country
4. Conscientious objectors
  - (a) were put to death by the Canadian government in World War I
  - (b) are people who refuse to fight in a war because of their beliefs
  - (c) are people who came from enemy countries and were not allowed to vote
5. A revolution is
  - (a) using force to overthrow a government
  - (b) one turn of the wheel
  - (c) fighting a war against a neighbouring country
  - (d) killing a political leader

### Question

6. (a) Why did Russia leave the war?  
(b) What happened in 1917 that helped the Allies to defeat Germany?

### USING SOURCES

Read the description of trench warfare written by an historian. Then read the poem written by a Canadian soldier. Answer the questions that follow.

### Questions

1. Why was it so uncomfortable to live in the trenches on the Western Front?
2. What three things threatened to kill the soldiers in the poem?
3. How do we know that the soldiers were lonely?
4. How did the trenches and war treat everyone equally?

### Life in the Trenches

When it rained, which it did a great deal, the water poured into the trenches and down into the dug-outs. Day after day, week after week, the men ate and slept, or crouched behind their rifles, in soaking wet uniforms. Often the water and the mud came above their knees. When shells landed near them they were half buried in mud. There was mud everywhere, thick, gluey mud, in which was mixed up all the ruin of the war, bits of trees and buildings and guns ... and human bodies.

They could not keep warm and they could not keep clean. Their bodies crawled with lice, and rats swarmed everywhere. There was always plenty of food for the rats, for they fed upon the dead bodies. The men who died in no-man's-land could not be buried. It was not safe to go out and fetch them. And even the wounded could not always be brought to safety. The men in the trenches had to listen to the cries of their dying comrades. They had to smell the smell of blood and rotting bodies.

For the guns hardly ever stopped firing, day or night. High explosive shells fell upon the dug-outs and buried men alive. Shrapnel shells burst in the air, spraying their deadly splinters above the open trenches—the tin helmet was invented to protect men's heads against shrapnel. Machine-guns spluttered. Rifles cracked. There were many different noises at the front. Even more terrifying than the crash of the explosions was the noise the shells made as they flew through the air. The heavy shells rumbled like express trains. The smaller shells whined. The bullets whistled.

## "A Soldier's Poem"

If you think it crude to be rough and rude,  
This tale is not for you.  
There's nothing nice about rats and mice  
From any point of view.

Yes, the rats do roam and make their home  
In the fields where the dead men lie.  
Yes, the lice do bite all day and night  
And never quit till you die.

Here the human moles from the stinking holes  
Crawl up through the muck and slime  
To hide all day, then work all night  
Till there is no sense to time.

The great shells roar through the leaden skies  
As their targets crouch in the drains,  
Then burst with a roar and the shrapnel flies,  
And it rains and rains and rains.

On a dirty night when your nerves draw tight  
And you rouse to the gas alarms,  
In a dank shell hole you'd sell your soul  
For a night in a woman's arms.

When the grey green mass of chlorine gas  
Drifts down from the eastern sky,  
You choke and spit till your lungs are split  
And you hear your best friends die.

In the stinking stench of a rotten trench  
Mid the swarms of filthy flies,  
Some men got caught so their bodies rot,  
And the maggots eat their eyes.

Here tattered bums from city slums  
With pampered sons of the rich,  
All lie with God on that sodden sod,  
And you can't tell which is which.

In that sea of mud you can feel your blood  
Go cold as you shake with fright,  
And among the dead you raise your head  
To stand to your post to fight.

So a few survive and are still alive  
When at last relief breaks through,  
And the press reports all quiet,  
As they bury the lads they knew.

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Interpreting A Chart

This chart shows the military strength of the Allied Powers and the Central Powers in 1914.

Which side had the stronger army? Which side had the larger navy? If numbers indicate strength, which side should have won the war?

	SIZE OF ARMIES		SIZE OF NAVAL FLEET	
	Regulars	Reserves	Battleships	Destroyers
Allied Powers	2 238 000	12 000 000	80	310
Central Powers	1 285 000	8 600 000	52	157

### Reading A Chart

This chart shows some of the casualties suffered by some of the countries involved in World War I. Copy these figures into your notebook. Total the

number of casualties for each country/empire. Which country had the greatest number? Which the least?

COUNTRY	MILITARY DEATHS	CIVILIAN DEATHS	MISSING PRISONERS
Russia	1 700 000	2 000 000	2 500 000
United States	50 385	—	4 500
France	1 357 800	40 000	537 000
British Empire	908 371	30 633	191 652
Germany	1 808 575	760 000	1 152 800
Austria-Hungary	922 500	300 000	2 200 000



## TIME LINE

### World War I

#### Reading the Time Line

Review the time line and then answer these questions.

1. What event started World War I?
2. What event took place just before Britain declared war on Germany?
3. In what year did the Canadian government pass the War Measures Act?
4. When did the Battle of Ypres take place? The Battle of Vimy Ridge?
5. When did the U.S.A. enter the war?
6. When did conscription begin in Canada?
7. When did all Canadian women receive the right to vote in federal elections?
8. When did the fighting stop?

1914	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Assassination of Archduke Ferdinand of Austro-Hungarian Empire</li> <li>—Austro-Hungarian Empire declares war on Serbia</li> <li>—Russia calls up troops to come to the aid of Serbia</li> <li>—Germany demands Russian withdrawal of troops from the Russian border</li> <li>—Russia and Germany go to war</li> <li>—Germany invades Belgium to attack France</li> <li>—Britain declares war on Germany</li> <li>—War Measures Act is passed by the Canadian government</li> <li>—Trench warfare begins in Europe</li> </ul>
1915	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Canadian troops fight off a German gas attack at Ypres</li> <li>—Italy joins the Allied Powers</li> </ul>
1916	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Battle of Verdun</li> <li>—Battle of the Somme</li> <li>—German U-boats sink up to 160 Allied ships each month</li> </ul>
1917	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—The Russian Revolution overthrows the government of the Czar</li> <li>—Battle of Vimy Ridge</li> <li>—Military Service Act brings conscription to Canada</li> <li>—The U.S.A. enters the war on the side of the Allied Powers</li> <li>—The Halifax disaster occurs</li> <li>—The first income tax is brought in by the Borden government</li> <li>—The Wartime Election Act gives the vote to female relatives of men fighting overseas and to women in the armed forces</li> <li>—Borden and the Unionists win the election</li> <li>—Riots break out in Quebec</li> </ul>
1918	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Canadian women receive the right to vote in federal elections</li> <li>—Germany signs the Armistice and the fighting stops</li> </ul>
1919	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Canada signs the Treaty of Versailles</li> <li>—Canada joins the League of Nations</li> </ul>

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

1. Discuss whether conscientious objectors have the right to their opinions when their country is under attack.
2. Divide the class into groups of five to ten people. Choose a subject for each group and decide whether or not you are in favour of the subject. Create pieces of propaganda that will convince others that your point of view is the correct one.

## CHAPTER NINE

# Picking Up The Pieces, 1919-1929

AIM: What Was Life Like In Canada Between 1919 and 1929?

### Why Were Many Canadians Unhappy and How Did They Protest?

1. When World War I ended in 1918, Canadians expected good times to return to Canada. After all, Canadians had helped to win the war. Instead, the end of the war brought many problems to Canada.

#### The Workers

2. The factories that produced weapons and war equipment shut down. Many workers found themselves unemployed. In those days, there was no unemployment insurance. People who lost their jobs could not collect money from the government. They had to find new jobs. People had to work to stay alive. Soldiers returning from the war expected to be treated as heroes. There were some parades and speeches but there were few jobs available. Many soldiers were angry because they had risked their lives for their country. They believed that their country should provide them with jobs to let them earn a living.

3. Many Canadian workers wanted to form unions. They wanted better wages, shorter hours, and better working conditions. They thought that the strength of a union would help them in these demands. The employers were against unions since higher wages would raise the prices of goods. Then fewer people would buy the goods and businesses would make less profit. The government supported the employers because it wanted strong businesses in Canada.

4. The anger of the workers exploded on May 15, 1919, in the city of Winnipeg. The workers went on a **General Strike**. Postmen, firemen, milkmen, garbage collectors, bakers, construction workers, went on strike at the same time. Altogether 35 000 workers refused to work. They demanded better wages and shorter working hours. They also wanted the right to have **collective bargaining**. The workers wanted the right to have a





**J.S. Woodsworth**

One of workers' leaders elected to House of Commons in 1921; helped establish Old Age pensions for Canadians in 1926; became leader of a new political party, the CCF, in 1932.

union. Unions could then negotiate with the employers to get better conditions for their members. The General Strike shut down the entire city of Winnipeg.

5. Many Canadians did not support the General Strike. They were afraid that this was the beginning of a communist revolution in Canada. The government passed laws that weakened the strike. It sent mounted police and troops to Winnipeg to put down the strike. On June 17, 1919, the government arrested the leaders of the strike. On June 21, the strikers marched into the streets of Winnipeg to protest these arrests. This day is called "Bloody Saturday". The strikers were ordered to stop their march. When they refused, violence broke out. Police on horses charged the strikers. When the police met opposition, they opened fire on the crowd. Two men were killed and many were wounded.

6. The strikers fled. On June 25, 1919, the General Strike ended. The strikers had lost. The General Strike hurt the growth of unions for many years. However, the strike showed workers what their opposition was. They elected two of their leaders to the House of Commons in the election of 1921 to represent them. One of these men was J.S. Woodsworth.

#### Farmers

7. The farmers of Canada were just as unhappy as the workers after the war. The Conservatives and the English-speaking Liberals had broken their promise and had conscripted the farmers' sons in 1918. The federal government kept the tariff high while the prices of manufactured goods continued to rise. This meant that farmers had to pay higher prices for manufactured goods. Now the sales of wheat were falling and so was the price of wheat. Farmers' barns filled up with the unsold wheat. How could they pay for the extra land and equipment they had bought during the war?

8. The farmers said that the cause of their problems was the National Policy and its high tariff. They asked the federal government to bring in a 'New National Policy'. This new policy called for reciprocity with the United States and free trade with Europe. Farmers were taking dead aim at the high tariffs that protected businessmen. Prime Minister Meighen and the Conservatives said 'no' to their demands.

9. The farmers decided to take action. They were fed up with the two old parties, the Conservatives and the Liberals. The farmers thought that one way to solve their problems was to elect farmers to represent them in government. Then laws could be passed to cut the tariff and protect the family farm. Farmers' parties did win provincial elections in Ontario and Alberta. In 1920, farmers from across Canada created the National Progressive Party. Thomas Crerar of Manitoba was chosen as the leader of the new party.



*Thomas Crerar*

### The Maritimes

10. The Maritimes had shared in the good times during World War I. Canadian trade with Europe had increased sharply. Many Canadian soldiers boarded ships for Europe at St. John and Halifax. The Maritime provinces were in the centre of Canadian activity. But after the war, the Maritime economy collapsed. The coal mines and steel mills in Nova Scotia lost business. Other factories had to close when freight rates to Montreal and the West increased. Maritime industries could not keep up with industries in central Canada. Macdonald's promise to make all provinces prosperous seemed to be forgotten. Young people moved west in search of jobs. Once again, the Maritime provinces talked of separation from Canada.

*Arthur Meighen*

### Politics in the 1920's

11. In 1921, a federal election was held in Canada. It was a new kind of election for Canadian voters. Instead of two parties, there were now three federal parties running for election. Arthur Meighen was the Prime Minister of Canada and the new leader of the Conservative Party. William Lyon Mackenzie King was the new leader of the Liberal Party. Thomas Crerar was the leader of the new National Progressive Party that represented the farmers.



12. In 1921, there were 235 seats in the House of Commons. Each seat represents a riding. The candidate who receives the largest number of votes in a riding wins a seat in the House of Commons and becomes a Member of Parliament. The Conservative Party elected only 50 MPs in the 1921 election. Arthur Meighen had many things against him. He wanted high tariffs and this hurt him in the West. His party had been in power a long time





## William Lyon Mackenzie King



William Lyon Mackenzie King served as Prime Minister of Canada for twenty-two years, longer than any other person. King was born in Berlin, later Kitchener, Ontario, in 1874. His family was very important in his life. His father was John King but it was his mother, Isabel Mackenzie, who influenced him the most. She was the daughter of William Lyon Mackenzie, the leader of the Rebellion of 1837 in Upper Canada. She named her son after her father. Mrs. King taught her son to be proud of his grandfather and to work for a better society. King was very close to his mother as long as she lived. After her death in 1917, he tried to 'talk' with her in the spirit world.

Mackenzie King graduated from the University of Toronto. He then studied at Harvard in the U.S.A. and in London, England. He studied economics and, in particular, the life of poor working people.

King started working for the federal government in 1900. He helped set up the Department of Labour and became the Deputy Minister or top civil servant in that department. King helped write the federal labour laws. He also helped to settle several strikes.

In 1908, King was elected to the House of Commons. Laurier made King his Minister of Labour in the Cabinet. However, in the 1911 federal election, King was defeated in his riding and lost his seat in the House of Commons.

King left politics and went to the United States to work for the Rockefellers. The Rockefeller family was one of the richest families in the world. King worked for the Rockefellers during World War I. He helped to settle strikes in their mines and he made a lot of money (\$1000 per week during 1917).

In the 1917 federal election, King was one of the few English-speaking Liberals who stayed loyal to Laurier. King was defeated in his riding by only a few votes. When Laurier died in 1919, the French-speaking Liberals remembered King's loyalty. They voted for King and he won the leadership of the Liberal Party in 1919. As leader, King always counted on the support of French Canadian voters.

The Liberals won the most seats in the 1921 federal election and King became Prime Minister of Canada at the age of 47. King led a minority government after the 1921 and the 1925 elections. But he was able to compromise and win the support of the Progressives. In the 1926 election, King and the Liberals won a majority of the seats in the House of Commons. Most of the Progressives had joined the Liberal Party by the end of the 1920's.

The Liberals were defeated in the 1930 election. King became Leader of the Opposition in the House of Commons. However, the Great Depression of the 1930's led to the defeat of Prime

Minister Bennett and the Conservatives. In the 1935 election, the Liberals won and King became Prime Minister again. King did not solve the Great Depression, but in 1939, World War II broke out and the depression ended.

The Canadian Parliament voted to declare war on Germany on September 9, 1939. King promised not to bring in conscription for overseas fighting in World War II. King and the Liberals won the election of 1940 on this promise. Although King had to break this promise in 1944, he worked very hard to keep English and French Canadians together. The government did an excellent job of directing the country during the war. When the war ended, King and the Liberals were re-elected in 1945. During his years as Prime Minister, old age pensions and baby bonuses were introduced. Canada had survived the Great Depression and a second World War.

In public, King looked and sounded like a very serious and cautious person. But he had some interesting beliefs and hobbies that few people knew about until after his death. King wrote a regular diary where he described what was happening in his life. As a young man, he was very interested in women. Just how interested, we really do not know. He certainly felt very guilty about his feelings towards women. King had planned to marry. He was very religious and he believed that God would send him a helpmate or wife. King dated a number of wealthy women, mainly in the U.S.A., but he never did marry. He remained a bachelor. Instead, he turned to his dog, Pat, for company. King also visited fortune-tellers and believed in spirits. He believed that living people could 'talk' with the spirits of dead people. King frequently 'talked' with his mother, Wilfrid Laurier, and other great people. They always encouraged him. Most Canadians thought that Mackenzie King was a very dull and straight person. But he led an interesting secret life.

and people wanted a change. French Canadians would not vote for the Conservative Party. They blamed the Conservatives for bringing in conscription.

13. The National Progressive Party won 64 seats. The farmers had done very well. They had won more seats than the Conservatives. They now had a chance to influence the government of Canada.

14. William Lyon Mackenzie King became the new Prime Minister of Canada. The Liberal Party had won the largest number of seats in the House of Commons. W.L.M. King had been one of the few English-speaking Liberals who had supported Laurier during the conscription crisis of 1917. He received the support of French Canadians in Quebec. Even though the Liberals elected 116 MPs, they did not have a majority government. They

#### 1921 ELECTION RESULTS

Liberals	116
National Progressives	64
Conservatives	50
Independent	3
Labour	2





*King campaigning*

#### 1925 ELECTION RESULTS

Conservatives	116
Liberals	99
National Progressives	24
Independent	4
Labour	2

had less than half of the seats in the House of Commons and had to form a **minority government**. The Liberal Party needed the support of another political party in the House of Commons. The Progressives decided to support King because they liked him better than Meighen and his high tariffs.

15. When there is a minority government, there are more MPs in the opposition parties than in the government party. They can pass a vote of non-confidence in the government. When this happens, the Prime Minister usually asks for a new election. King had to be careful not to lose the support of the Progressive MPs in the House of Commons.

16. By the time of the next election in 1925, good times were returning to Canada. People began to forget the bad times they had experienced during and after World War I. In this election, the Conservatives managed to elect more MPs than either of the other parties. They won 116 seats of 245 seats. The Liberals won 99 seats and the Progressives won only 24 seats. The National Progressive Party was losing the support of the farmers as good times returned to Canada. Since the Conservatives had won the largest number of seats, Meighen expected to become Prime Minister of Canada. Unfortunately for Meighen, the Progressive and Independent MPs, like J.S. Woodsworth, supported the Liberals. King remained Prime Minister of Canada. A year later, another election was held and King won a majority government. He no longer had to depend on another political party. King remained Prime Minister of Canada until 1930.

### How Did Canadians Enjoy the 1920's?

#### The Economy

17. The hard times that followed World War I disappeared by 1923. Immigrants settled the rest of the West. The price of wheat rose and the farmers grew bumper crops. The pulp and paper mills hummed with activity. The mines doubled their production of minerals. The factories turned out many new products—radios, cars, aeroplanes, electric refrigerators, and stoves. Life certainly became easier for the **middle class**. These people were better educated and made more money than the ordinary workers. The middle class included people such as doctors, lawyers, engineers, bankers, accountants, and small businessmen. Soon the farmers joined in the spending spree. Workers' wages did not allow them to buy cars like the Grey-Dort, Maxwell, or McLaughlin, but their wages of \$26 per week let them buy a radio, if they saved. If the boom of good times continued, someday workers too might own a Model T Ford. The boom helped most Canadians forget the horrors of the war. Only the Maritimes did not share in the boom.

#### Price List, 1929

Dishwasher	\$145.00
Egg Cooker	3.00
Hair Dryer	11.50
Ironing Machine	135.50
Refrigerator	150.00
Table Lamp	2.50
Electric Range	160.00

18. One reason for Canada's new prosperity was the increase in trade with the U.S.A. Before 1922, most of Canada's trade was with Britain. After 1922, more than half of Canada's trade was with the U.S.A. The U.S.A. was Canada's best customer for minerals, newsprint, and manufactured goods. Much of the money to open new factories, pulp mills, and mines also came from the U.S.A. Factories which foreigners buy or build in Canada are called **branch plants**. A few Canadians were worried about the number of American branch plants. Would American control of Canadian industries lead to a takeover of the country? Would Canada lose the independence it had won in World War I?

19. Most Canadians did not stop to think about these questions. They were happy to have jobs in any industry and receive their weekly pay. They were more interested in movie stars and sports heroes. The 1920's was a time to have fun. Canadians believed that the world would look after itself. Things would only get better!

### Communications and Entertainment

20. In the 1920's, Canadians finally overcame the distance that separated them from their neighbours and relatives. The telephone, car, and aeroplane helped Canadians to reach out to each other. The radio and movies brought the rest of Canada and the world to them.

21. The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell at Brantford, Ontario, in 1874. Bell built the first working model in 1876. However, it was not until the 1920's that telephone companies strung lines across most of Canada. In 1920, only one family in four had a telephone and these people lived mainly in the cities. By 1929, three of every four families had telephones. Businessmen found the telephone very helpful but the people living in the countryside thought that it was a miracle. The telephone linked farm houses throughout rural Canada. It allowed people to call the doctor in an emergency and to visit friends on a long, cold, winter night. If a person did not have anything to say, he could always listen in on the party line for the latest gossip. Six to twenty or more families shared one telephone line. A person simply picked up the receiver and eavesdropped. Everyone soon knew when a boy asked a girl for a date. There were no secrets with Grandma listening to all the calls as she sat in her rocking chair by the woodstove!

22. At the beginning of the twenties, every Canadian city seemed to have at least one car company. However, Henry Ford's **assembly line** soon put them out of business. Ford developed a very long assembly line where each worker added one piece to the car as it moved along. Hundreds of people worked on one line that produced a new car every few minutes. All the parts on every Ford

*Magneto type wall telephone used for rural line service, 1910 until the 1930's*





*Ford assembly line*



car were **standardized** or the same. This made the car cheaper to produce and easier for the proud owner to repair. Ford was able to sell his cars for a low price. The 1924 Model T or "Tin Lizzie" cost only \$455 in Canada. Of the cars built in Canada, 77 per cent were made by big American companies, Ford and General Motors. They were built at their branch plants in cities like Windsor and Oshawa.

23. The new cars and trucks needed roads. Provincial governments across Canada began to build roads. The Trans Canada Highway was also started. By 1929, there were almost 17 000 km of paved roads, 105 000 km of 'improved' gravel roads, and about 242 000 km of 'unimproved' dirt roads. Filling stations were built along the main roads and many young men found jobs fixing cars. A whole new industry had developed around the automobile.

24. Aeroplanes also helped to bring Canadians together. Aeroplanes flew into new areas and opened up the far north. Canada's flying aces of World War I became the daring bush pilots of the twenties. Men like Wilfrid "Wop" May flew prospectors and supplies into mining camps. Planes soon had pontoons to land on northern lakes in the summer and skis to land on snow in the winter. Pilots flew the sick and injured to southern hospitals or rushed doctors and medicine to northern communities. Planes also began to carry 'air mail' for the Canadian Post Office in 1927. Other pilots used their famous flying skills to entertain crowds at local fairs and exhibitions. Thousands gathered to watch these daredevils in their Camels do loops, rolls, and imitation dog fights. Oh to be young, a pilot, and free!

### Radio

25. The first radios were run by crystals and batteries, and earphones were needed. There was a "loud" and a "soft" switch to control the volume. There were only 10 000 radios in Canada in

*Listening to the radio, 1924*



1923. However, the radio was improved. Speakers replaced earphones and electricity replaced batteries. By 1929, there were 300 000 radios in Canada.

26. Most Canadians used the radio for entertainment and information. For the first time, Canadians were able to listen to music, shows, and news in the comfort of their own homes. The latest music and dances were heard. Jazz music and dances like the Charleston, the Black Bottom, and the Bunny Hop became popular. Songs like "Yes, We Have No Bananas", "Happy Days Are Here Again", and "Toot, Toot, Tootsie Goodbye" were enjoyed by many people. Big bands and orchestras were known by millions of Canadians. Guy Lombardo and the Royal Canadians were very popular. Everyone knew the names of American singers like Rudy Vallee, Al Jolson, and Eddy Cantor. Comedy groups like Amos 'n Andy and detective stories were also popular on the radio. On March 22, 1923, Foster Hewitt made his first radio hockey broadcast from Toronto. It was called "Hockey Night in Canada".

27. The radio also made Canada a smaller country. Before the radio, it had sometimes taken weeks or months for news to travel throughout the country. The radio now provided instant news to almost everyone in Canada. People living in the North and on farms now heard the news and entertainment at the same time as city people.

28. Despite its many benefits, the radio also brought certain problems to Canada. Most Canadians listened to American radio stations in the 1920's. They listened to American singers, announcers, shows, and news. Some Canadians were afraid that the radio might turn Canadians into Americans. If this happened, it would be the end of Canada. In 1932, the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC) was set up by the federal government to encourage Canadian radio programmes and performers. It was hoped that the CBC would reduce the effects of American radio programmes on Canadians.



*Foster Hewitt*

*Putting together a radio programme, CBC, 1920's*



## Movies

29. Another popular type of communication and entertainment in the 1920's was the "silent screen". Millions of people watched famous movie stars in theatres and read what they said on the screen. A musician played the piano while the movie was playing. The silent movies made stars of some actors and actresses. Rudolph Valentino was shown as a great lover and millions of women went to see his movies. When he died in 1926, 40 000 women rioted when they all tried to see his coffin at the same time. Greta Garbo was one of the great female-lovers on the silent screen. Charlie Chaplin, the comedian, made millions laugh at the situations in which he found himself. Douglas Fairbanks, Gloria Swanson, Clara Bow, Buster Keaton, Lon Chaney, Lionel



Barrymore, and many others became well known in the 1920's. Movie stars from Canada included Mary Pickford. She became known as "America's Sweetheart" and was one of the most popular of all the stars. Marie Dressler, from Cobourg, Ontario, was also a great actress. The first "talkie" came out in 1927. It was called *The Jazz Singer* and starred Al Jolson. At first, the audience was amazed that they could actually hear what the people on the screen were saying. The invention of the "talkies" made movies even more popular. At the beginning of the film, moviegoers were shown films of the news they had heard on the radio. People in the news were now seen on screen.

30. A few movie stars came from Canada. But even these people lived and worked in the U.S.A. The movies showed Canadians the American way of life; they did very little to make them aware of Canada. If Canada was the scene of a movie, it was shown as a land of ice and snow, where Indians and buffalo still roamed. The Mounties were men who hunted down criminals in the wilderness and always caught their man. Canada was not shown as a young country of over nine million people with many different peoples, jobs, and challenges.

### Canadian Culture and Science

31. In 1920, a group of Canadian painters showed their paintings together for the first time. They became known as the Group of Seven. The artists in the Group of Seven were Arthur Lismer, J.E.H. MacDonald, A.Y. Jackson, Lauren Harris, F.H. Varley, Franz Johnston, and Frank Carmichael. The paintings of these Canadian artists showed Canada's North in rich, bright colours. These artists were fascinated with Canada. They wanted to paint Canada in a way that had never been done before. They wanted to show Canadians the strength and beauty of their country. Their art reflected a growing Canadian nationalism.

32. Not all people liked their art. Some people called it the "Hot Mush School". Tom Thomson also painted vivid Canadian landscapes. Emily Carr was painting scenes of the West Coast at this time. She did not receive very much praise for her paintings during her lifetime either. Today the paintings of the Group of Seven, Thomson, Carr, and others are admired and are very valuable. They are different from European and American paintings. They are clearly Canadian.

33. Canadian writers were even less successful than the artists in the 1920's. However, there were some famous Canadian writers. Stephen Leacock is known throughout the world for his humorous novels. Mazo de la Roche wrote several novels, including *Jalna*. Some of her books have been turned into a television series. Leslie McFarlane began writing some of the books for the "Hardy Boys" series in 1926. These books are still read today.

Group of Seven



"LADIES: My own earnest, heartfelt conviction is that you are a pack of cats. I use the word "cats" advisedly, and I mean every letter of it. I want to go on record before this gathering as being strongly and unalterably opposed to Woman Suffrage until you get it. After that I favour it. My reasons for opposing the suffrage are of a kind that you couldn't understand. But all men—except the few that I see at this meeting—understand them by instinct.

As you may, however, succeed, as a result of the fuss that you are making, in getting votes, I have thought it best to come. Also—I am free to confess—I wanted to see what you looked like.

On this last head I am disappointed. Personally I like women a good deal fatter than most of you are, and better looking. As I look around this gathering I see one or two of you that are not so bad, but on the whole not many. But my own strong personal predilection is and remains in favour of a woman who can cook, mend clothes, talk when I want her to, and give me the kind of admiration to which I am accustomed.

Let me, however, say in conclusion that I am altogether in sympathy with your movement to this extent: if you ever DO get votes—and the indications are that you will, blast you—I want your votes, and I want all of them."

## TRUTHFUL SPEECH OF A DISTRICT POLITICIAN TO A LADIES SUFFRAGE SOCIETY

from *"Moonbeams from the Larger Lunacy"* by Stephen Leacock

34. In science, however, Canadians became world famous. A Toronto doctor, Frederick Banting, assisted by Charles Best, Dr. J.B. Collip, and Prof. J.J.R. Macleod, made an important discovery in 1922. They discovered insulin. Insulin allows people suffering from a disease called diabetes to lead normal lives. Dr. Banting and Prof. Macleod received the Nobel Prize for medicine in 1923. They shared their prize money with Dr. Collip and Charles Best. Their discovery is only one example of Canadian contributions to research in medicine.

## Sports

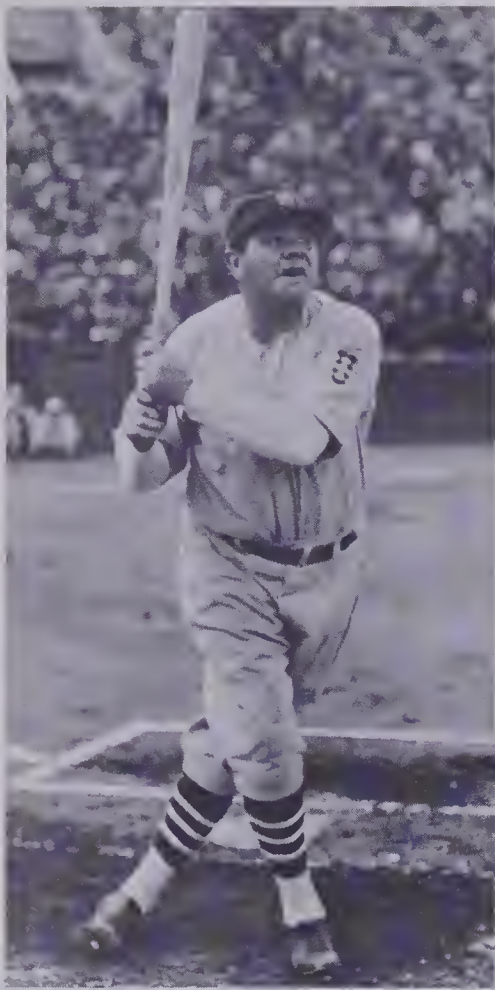
35. In the 1920's, Canadians were determined to have a good time. Sports captured the excitement of the times. Large arenas and stadiums were built for thousands of spectators. Live radio reporting made professional athletes famous. Babe Ruth, Howie Morenz, and Jack Dempsey were the stars of baseball, hockey, and boxing. In Canada, Lionel Conacher was the hero of all sports fans. "The Big Train" Conacher was an over-powering fullback who ran over tacklers and scored touchdowns for the Toronto Argonauts. Conacher was also a champion wrestler, boxer, lacrosse and baseball player, and a star in the National Hockey League. He was voted Canada's greatest male athlete for the first half of the twentieth century.

36. Canada's amateur athletes also won world recognition for the country at the 1928 Olympics in Amsterdam, Holland. Percy



Banting, Best, and Marjorie





*Babe Ruth*

*Jack Dempsey*



*Lionel Conacher*



*Ethel Catherwood*

Williams of Vancouver won two gold medals in the 100 metre and 200 metre races. Williams was called the fastest human being alive. But it was Canada's female athletes who won the most medals at the 1928 Olympics. Led by Ethel Catherwood of Saskatoon in the high jump and Fanny "Bobbie" Rosenthal on the track, Canadian women won the women's team championship. Canada's athletes returned from Amsterdam to a heroes' welcome with parades in their hometowns.

## Prohibition

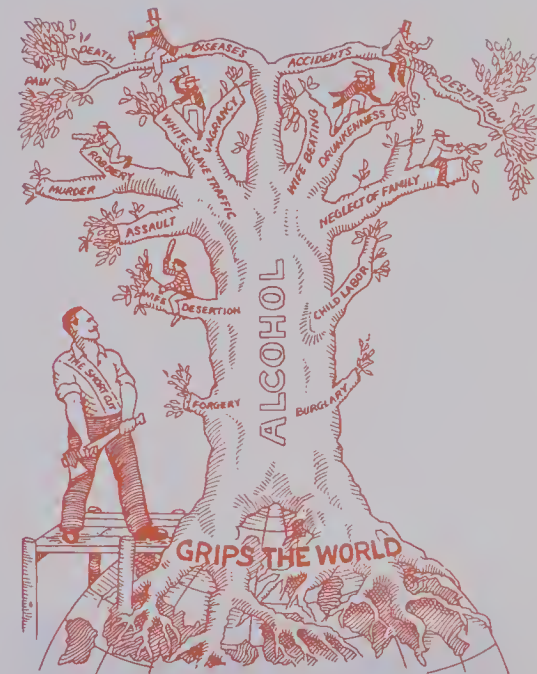
37. Many Canadians believed that alcoholic drinks were evil. These people wanted the government to introduce Prohibition to stop the manufacture and sale of alcoholic drinks. They said that alcohol tempted the working man to waste his pay cheque, beat his wife and kids, and rob his neighbours. By 1917, they persuaded all provinces except Quebec to accept Prohibition. They also persuaded the federal government to support Prohibition between 1917 and 1919 to help win the war. Instead of making beer and alcohol, grain was used to help feed the soldiers and people in Europe.

38. There were many advantages. Arrests for drunkenness almost disappeared and fewer crimes were committed. Some provinces even closed a jail or two. Workers missed fewer days on the job. Fewer children went hungry or cold. Drinking no longer created as many problems.

39. However, Prohibition was very difficult to enforce. Some people set up their own stills to make illegal alcohol. Some doctors gave thousands of prescriptions for alcohol for “medicinal purposes”. But the most serious problems came when alcohol was sold to other provinces and to the U.S.A. Harry and Sam Bronfman built the multi-million dollar Seagrams empire from one hotel in Yorkton, Saskatchewan. Harry Bronfman set up a liquor mail order business in Canada in 1919. Then, with the adoption of Prohibition in the U.S.A., he decided to move into the big time. He borrowed \$300 000 from the Bank of Montreal and started to sell liquor to the thirsty Americans. The production of alcohol in Canada for sale in the U.S.A. was legal. The Bronfmans sold liquor for \$65 a case and they made \$390 000 profit per month.

40. The Bronfmans were the biggest exporters of liquor to the U.S.A., but they were not the only ones. Many Canadians along the American border became involved in a little “rum running” or smuggling. Many sea captains sailed to the U.S.A. with a shipload of liquor. The captain only had to anchor a few kilometres from the shore and let Americans row out to his ship for the whiskey. A captain could make \$50 000 on one trip. Many Canadians found “rum running” an exciting and profitable business.

41. In the U.S.A., Prohibition lasted from 1919 to 1933. Many Americans refused to stop drinking. They turned to bootleggers who sold illegal liquor. They built beautiful “speakeasies” or clubs where a softly-spoken password allowed customers to come in for a drink. The billions of dollars made by Al Capone and other crime leaders during Prohibition allowed them to move into gambling and prostitution. The organized crime families of today received their start during Prohibition.







*Agnes MacPhail*



42. At first, Prohibition had the support of most Canadians. However, during the 1920's, more people became interested in having a good time. They did not like other people telling them what to do. By 1930, all the provinces, except P.E.I., had dropped Prohibition. However, many provinces decided to control liquor sales through government stores. If alcohol was no longer evil, it was still dangerous and unhealthy in the eyes of many Canadians.

### Women

43. World War I had allowed women to prove that they could do the jobs of men. More women now worked in factories, banks, stores, and offices. By 1929, one of every five women had jobs outside the home. Women had fewer children and families were smaller. In the 1920's, women had the right to vote in all provinces except Quebec. Women in Quebec did not obtain the right to vote in provincial elections until 1940. New inventions also made the job of a housewife easier. Electricity was brought into many homes. Women could now use vacuum cleaners, refrigerators, sewing machines, washing machines, floor polishers, and electric irons, if they could afford them.

44. These inventions saved time and allowed housewives more time for other things. People also used more canned goods and meals did not have to be prepared from scratch. Some women learned to drive the automobile and this increased their freedom. Women now cut their hair shorter and the "bobbed" look was in fashion in the 1920's. The hemlines on women's dresses were also shorter. These new fashions showed that women were freer.

45. But they were not totally free. Women were still not treated as the equals of men. Many jobs were still closed to them. There were few women doctors or lawyers. Women were still paid less than men for doing the same jobs. Employers believed that women could be paid less because they had husbands to support them. They wanted to believe that women worked only to buy extra things for the home. They ignored the fact that many working women had to support families on what they earned. Working women usually found themselves in low paying jobs. Some female factory workers might earn \$8.37 per week for 55 hours work! Middle class women could work until they were married. But after they married, they were expected to stay at home. Middle class husbands were expected to support their wives and to keep them at home. In 1921, a federal law was passed that required female civil servants to quit work when they married. Although Canadian women had the vote, they had little influence in politics. Agnes MacPhail was the first woman to be elected to the House of Commons, but there were few women in politics. Men still made all the important decisions. Women were regarded as weak creatures who needed to be protected by men.



46. Only a small number of Canadian women tried to break out of their situations. They usually lived in the big cities. They wore the new dress styles and silk stockings. They also wore make-up. They smoked and drank in public, went to parties, and danced until early in the morning. Most Canadians did not like their behaviour and called these women “Flappers”.

### **Influence of the United States**

47. In the 1920's, English Canadians became less like the British and more like the Americans. Canadian painters and writers created important works of art, but most Canadians had never heard of them. Movies, records, radios, popular magazines, and tourists introduced American songs, fashions, heroes, and ideas to Canadians. At the same time, more people worked for American companies in Canada and bought American manufactured goods. Canadians shared the good times and fun of the 1920's with their American neighbours. Soon they would share the bad times of the 1930's.

RIGHT: Downtown Toronto, 1929  
LEFT: Yonge and Queen Streets, Toronto



## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—10

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. A General Strike is
  - (a) a perfect pitch in baseball
  - (b) a refusal to work by many workers at the same time
  - (c) a refusal to work by a few workers in one factory
2. Collective bargaining is
  - (a) the right to dispute a price
  - (b) the use of propaganda by a national government
  - (c) the right of workers to have a union that will negotiate with employers

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Farmers were unhappy with the federal government after World War I because
  - (a) tractors were not being built
  - (b) the tariff kept prices very high
  - (c) their children could not find jobs
  - (d) all of the above

#### Questions

4. Why was the Winnipeg General Strike a failure?
5. What was the new National Policy that the farmers wanted in 1920?

### Paragraphs 11—19

#### Knowing The People

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Thomas Crerar —elected to the House of Commons as an Independent MP in 1921
- Arthur Meighen —leader of a minority government in 1921
- W.L. Mackenzie King —National Progressive leader who supported King's minority governments
- J.S. Woodsworth —leader of the party that elected the most MPs in 1925 yet he did not become Prime Minister

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Minority government means that
  - (a) the Prime Minister has the support of less than half the MPs in the Senate
  - (b) the Prime Minister has the support of half the MPs in the House of Commons
  - (c) the Prime Minister has the support of less than half the MPs in the House of Commons
  - (d) the Prime Minister has the support of more than half the MPs in the House of Commons
3. Middle class means
  - (a) all people between the ages of 30 and 60
  - (b) all the very wealthy people in the country
  - (c) all the poor people in the country
  - (d) people who have some education and earn a good salary
4. Branch plants are
  - (a) factories in Canada that are owned by foreigners
  - (b) factories in Ontario that are owned by Albertans
  - (c) all Canadian-owned factories
  - (d) factories that use tree branches to make plywood

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

5. Arthur Meighen lost the election of 1921 because
  - (a) the Conservatives only had the support of the farmers
  - (b) he was in favour of high tariffs and had supported conscription
  - (c) the voters did not think he had enough experience to run the government
  - (d) all of the above
6. W.L.M. King had to rely on the support of the National Progressive Party because
  - (a) he had a minority government
  - (b) he wanted to make the farmers happy
  - (c) he had a majority government
  - (d) he wanted Arthur Meighen to join the Party

#### Question

7. (a) What does a "seat" in the House of Commons represent?  
(b) What does a political leader need in order to form a majority government?

## Paragraphs 20—36

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Alexander    | —wrote humorous novels          |
| Graham Bell     |                                 |
| Henry Ford      | —a famous football player       |
| Wilfrid 'Wop'   | —won the gold medal in the      |
| May             | high jump at the 1928           |
|                 | Olympics                        |
| Guy Lombardo    | —a bush pilot                   |
| Al Jolson       | —a famous band leader           |
| Foster Hewitt   | —a famous male movie star       |
| Rudolph         | —a famous actress from          |
| Valentino       | Coburg, Ontario                 |
| Mary Pickford   | —known today as a great         |
|                 | Canadian painter                |
| Marie Dressler  | —the author of <i>Jalna</i>     |
| A.Y. Jackson    | —one of the men who             |
|                 | discovered insulin              |
| Emily Carr      | —a famous baseball player       |
| Stephen Leacock | —starred in the first 'talkie', |
|                 | called <i>The Jazz Singer</i>   |
| Mazo dela Roche | —a famous radio broadcaster     |
| Frederick       | —a member of the Group of       |
| Banting         | Seven                           |
| Babe Ruth       | —the inventor of the telephone  |
| Lionel Conacher | —a popular movie actress        |
|                 | from Canada, known as           |
|                 | "America's Sweetheart"          |
| Percy Williams  | —developed the assembly         |
|                 | line for the making of cars     |
| Ethel           | —won two gold medals for        |
| Catherwood      | Canada in the 1928              |
|                 | Olympics                        |

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. An assembly line is
  - (a) a very straight line on the floor
  - (b) a line on the factory floor showing where workers can walk
  - (c) a line of work in a factory where each worker adds a piece to the product as it moves along
  - (d) all of the above
3. Standardized means
  - (a) a car with a stick shift
  - (b) all products of a high quality
  - (c) all parts of a product are the same for every model and can be easily replaced
  - (d) every product is produced differently

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. The paintings of the Group of Seven were unusual because
  - (a) they showed Canadians the strength and beauty of their country
  - (b) they painted Canada's North in rich, bright colours
  - (c) they reflected a growing Canadian nationalism
  - (d) all of the above
5. Telephones were very important because
  - (a) they allowed people to get help in emergencies
  - (b) businessmen could work faster
  - (c) farm families could visit with their neighbours
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

6. Why did the radio become so popular in Canada?
7. What impressions of Canada did the movies give audiences? What was right or wrong about these impressions?

## Paragraphs 37—47

### Knowing The People

Answer these questions in your notebook.

1. How did the Bronfman family build a business that is still growing today?
2. Who is Agnes MacPhail?

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Prohibition was stopped in Canada because
  - (a) people were thirsty
  - (b) everyone had stopped drinking alcohol and prohibition was no longer necessary
  - (c) it was very hard to enforce
  - (d) the Americans never accepted it

### Question

4. Why did some Canadians think Prohibition was a good idea?



## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Reading A Chart

Study the following chart and then answer the questions.

PROHIBITION IN CANADA

Province	Year Prohibition Came Into Effect	Year Prohibition Was Repealed
P.E.I.	1900	1948
Nova Scotia	1910 (except Halifax which went dry in 1916)	1930
Ontario	1916	1927
Manitoba	1916	1923
Alberta	1916	1924
New Brunswick	1917	1927
Saskatchewan	1917	1925
Yukon Territory	1917	1920
British Columbia	1917	1921
Quebec	in 1918 a law was passed stating that Quebec would become "dry" in 1919 for the duration of World War I. Since W.W.I. ended in 1918, prohibition was never put into effect.	

*\* Newfoundland did not join Confederation until 1949.*

1. What was the first province to introduce prohibition in Canada?
2. What was the name of the province that never had prohibition?
3. Which province had prohibition for the longest time?
4. Survey the members of your family or neighbours about their reaction if Prohibition were re-introduced today.

### EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

Pretend you are a young person living in a Canadian city during the 1920's. Write a paragraph that describes an actual day in your life. Mention the new inventions, fashions, entertainment, and the ideas of people you know.

## CHAPTER TEN

# The Great Depression

**AIM:** What Caused The Depression and How Did It Change Canadians?

1. Between 1929 and 1939, Canada and the other countries of the world experienced the "Great Depression". Never before had Canadians experienced such bad times. Companies went bankrupt, thousands of workers were out of work, and world trade went down. A terrible drought in Canada's West made the Great Depression worse in this country. The prosperity of the 1920's became only a memory to millions of Canadians. Canada's politicians were not able to solve the problems experienced by Canadians. As a result, many Canadians supported new political parties which promised to end their miseries. However, no Canadian political party or government was able to bring the Great Depression to an end. It took another world war to end the bad times in Canada.

### What Caused the Great Depression?

2. On October 29, 1929, the stockmarket in the U.S.A. collapsed. The Great Depression had begun. ① misleading

3. Throughout the 1920's, many people in Canada and the U.S.A. had bought shares in companies. They thought that this was a sure way to make money. A share is one unit of ownership in a company. Shares are bought and sold in the stockmarket. The prices of shares had risen steadily in the 1920's and more and more people used their savings to buy shares. Some people bought shares on credit. Only 10 per cent of the cost of the shares had to be paid. The rest of the money needed to buy the shares could be borrowed. This is called "buying on margin". The large number of people who wanted to buy shares created a big demand for shares and drove up their prices even higher. Usually, the shares of a company rise if that company makes a profit. People buy shares of a company that is making money. Shareholders hope that the prices of the shares they own will increase more so that they can sell them later at a profit.

4. In the 1920's, people were very optimistic about the future. They believed that the good times would last forever. This optimism drove up the prices of shares. By 1929, the prices of shares were too high. Unfortunately, most shareholders did not



realize that their shares were overpriced until October 29, 1929. On this day, thousands of shareholders tried to sell their shares to get back their money. Altogether 16 419 030 shares were offered for sale on the New York stockmarket. The prices of shares went down sharply and many people lost all their money. However, the fall of the stockmarket was not the cause of the depression; it was the event that started the depression. There were many causes and a few of them will be described here.

### The Values of Shares in Companies

Names of Companies	1929 Price of Each Share	1932 Price of Each Share
Abitibi	\$ 57.75	\$ 1.00
Bell Telephone	183.00	78.00
B.C. Power "A"	60.00	15.50
Canada Cement	36.00	2.25
CPR	67.50	8.50
Consumers' Gas	196.00	142.00
Dominion Glass	220.00	40.00
Dominion Stores	55.00	133/8
Imperial Oil	41.25	73/8
International Nickel	72.50	41/8
Massey Harris	99.50	2.50
Noranda	69.00	12.50
Quebec Power	99.00	9.25

### Loss of Customers

5. Some students might wonder why the collapse of the stock-market in the U.S.A. started the biggest depression in Canada's history. By 1929, the U.S.A. was the most powerful country in the world. The U.S.A. was Canada's biggest customer and bought 40 per cent of all goods that Canada exported. When many American companies went bankrupt after the stockmarket crash, there were fewer customers for Canadian goods. This meant that Canadian companies had goods that they could not sell and they lost business. Companies produced less and some even went bankrupt during the 1930's.

6. In the 1920's, Canada received a great deal of its money by exporting its natural resources to other countries. The export of wheat, minerals, fish, newsprint, and other timber products brought millions of dollars into Canada every year. Everything seemed to be working in favour of Canadian exports until countries began to raise their tariffs in the late 1920's and early 1930's. Countries raised their tariffs to protect their own producers and the demand for Canadian goods fell. Grain elevators and warehouses began to fill with unsold wheat and other products. Unemployment increased in Canada because the farmers did not have money to buy factory goods.

7. The 1920's were good years for many Canadians. Jobs were available in the cities and people had money to spend on entertainment, cars, and household goods. More people than ever before bought their own homes. Since people wanted goods, companies hired more workers and built new factories. Companies borrowed the money to produce more goods. The shares in these companies increased in price as companies expanded. There seemed to be no end to the good times. Farmers were getting the highest prices ever paid for wheat in the late 1920's. The National Policy seemed to be working very well. Railroads made money shipping the grain to customers and wheat farmers bought farm machinery and goods from factories in central Canada. These purchases created factory jobs and put money into the economy. Wheat was "King" in Canada. It brought prosperity to many Canadians.

8. However, there were serious problems with the economy. Farmers borrowed money from banks to buy more land to increase their production. Factories also borrowed money to expand and to produce more goods. It became fashionable to borrow money; everyone was buying on credit. "Buy now, pay later" was part of the general way-of-life for millions of Canadians. As long as people had steady jobs, they were able to make the payments on their purchases. But by 1929, the economy of Canada was on very shaky ground.

### Not Everyone Shared in the Prosperity of the 1920's

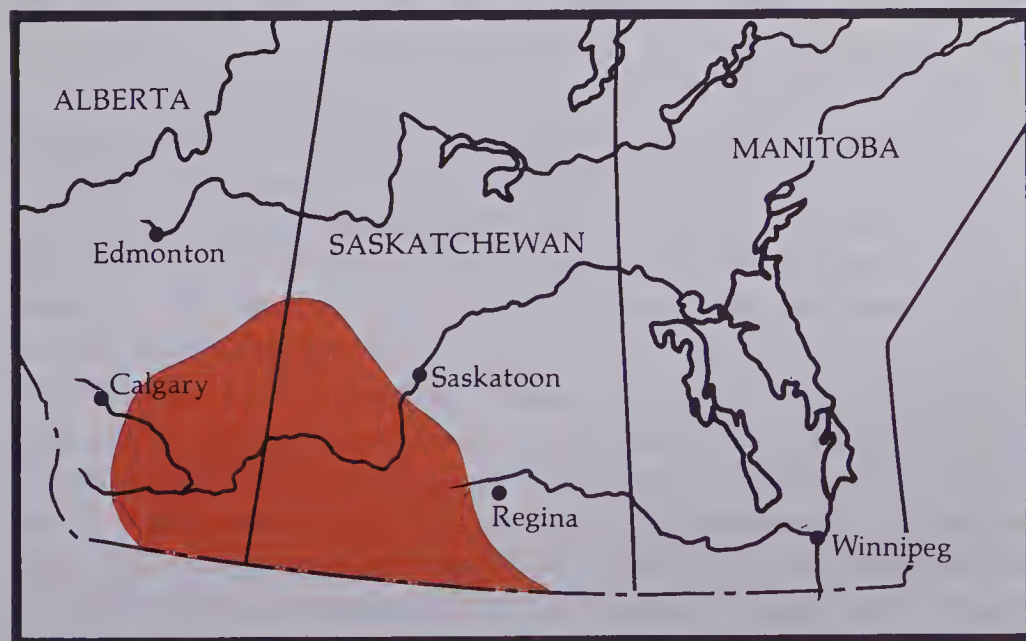
9. Not everyone was sharing in the good times of the 1920's. Most people in the Maritimes faced hard times. Few new factories were built. There was a high rate of unemployment and those who worked did not make high wages or receive high prices for the goods they produced. Maritimers could not afford to buy as much as many other Canadians. Many Canadian workers in other parts of the country also received low wages that did not keep up with the rising prices of the 1920's. In addition, farmers who did not grow wheat did not share in Canada's prosperity. They were paid less for their crops.

### The Drought

10. To make matters worse, in 1929, prairie farmers experienced a terrible drought. The land that was hardest hit was in southern Saskatchewan. This huge area of land is called the Palliser Triangle and it stretches into southern Manitoba and Alberta. This land had been farmed too much in the 1920's and the wheat crops had taken the natural moisture out of the soil. When the rains failed to come in 1929, this whole area became a vast "dust bowl". High winds blew away the top soil and turned

### Laundry was Never White

I could never get my laundry white. I'd try and try. The children's things, the curtains and the sheets, why they all looked grey as that sky out there. I'd work my fingers to the bone scrubbing, it was no use. We were lucky to have a deep well and good water but even down that well... the water came up with dirt and dust in it... The wind blew that dust all the time. It never stopped.



PALLISER TRIANGLE



## SASKATCHEWAN WHEAT PRODUCTION

Year	Hectares in Production	Average Yield per Hectare in Litres	Value of Wheat Sold From Farms
1928	5 585 355	2093	\$218 000 000
1929	5 850 225	998	134 932 000
1930	5 959 170	1258	72 293 000
1931	6 085 530	790	44 407 000
1932	6 294 915	1222	56 889 000
1933	5 970 915	781	52 301 000
1934	5 371 110	773	57 950 000
1935	5 348 430	970	68 400 000
1936	5 911 380	718	81 000 000
1937	5 893 000	243	16 000 000

farmlands into deserts. The drought was to last for most of the 1930's. In 1928, Saskatchewan had the highest cash income for each farm in Canada — \$1614 a year. By 1933, this had dropped to \$66 per year, the lowest cash farm income except for New Brunswick. Here the average cash farm income was \$20 per year!

### Competition From Other Countries

11. A great many different things seemed to happen all at once to start the Great Depression. But most of the events that occurred were connected to each other. Countries like Argentina, Australia, and Russia had huge harvests of wheat in the late 1920's and early 1930's. They sold their wheat at very low prices to other countries. Canadian farmers were forced to sell their wheat at lower prices and this meant that they had less money to spend. By 1933, many Canadian farmers were receiving less for their wheat than the cost of producing it.

### A Circle of Causes

12. Since western farmers were not buying as much as they had in the past, there were fewer customers for factory goods. Warehouses started to fill with unsold goods. Factories started to lay off workers. There was no point in producing more goods while goods remained unsold. The unemployed could not make their payments on merchandise they had bought on credit. These goods were repossessed by the stores and added to the warehouse stock. There was no unemployment insurance in the 1920's and 1930's and the unemployed had to rely on handouts and government help. They had no money to spend and this cut down on the demand for goods even more. More and more people were laid off work until many companies stopped producing goods and went bankrupt. They could not pay their debts. As companies lost

Naseby, Manitoba  
Jan 29, 1934  
Premier Bennett

We you know we have nothing up here dried out & eat out with grasshoppers, nothing to eat outside or in horses no oats for years, asking help for both out side & in

My children has not enough to eat. Please try & do some thing. We are in Claywater Municipality in Albert along side of me they got lots of help, & everything just what they should get—horses starving. farmer suffering to much in every way, come & see for yourself you can't belive till you see, try & come

Mrs. G.T. McTavish

business, their shares went down in value. If a company went bankrupt, its shares were worth nothing.

13. By 1933, 850 000 people were out of work in Canada. The unemployment rate was more than 25 per cent of all the working people in Canada. Those Canadians who were fortunate enough to have jobs had to take cuts in their salaries to keep working. After a few years, it seemed to many Canadians that the bad times would last forever. Many felt that nothing could be done to stop the depression. They began to believe that the situation was hopeless.

### What Did the Canadian Government Do to Solve the Depression?

14. Prime Minister King did not think that a depression was starting in 1929. Like most Canadians, he thought that prosperity would continue. King believed that the stockmarket crash was just a temporary setback. Every year some people were laid off from their jobs during the winter months and so the Prime Minister did not worry about the rising number of unemployed people. He was sure that they would find jobs again in the spring and summer of 1930. Some politicians suggested that the federal government should give money to the provinces to help the unemployed people. Prime Minister King did not think much of that idea.

15. The people of Canada felt that the Prime Minister did not understand their problems. When King called an election for July 28, 1930, the Liberals were defeated. The people turned to R.B. Bennett and the Conservatives.

16. Mr. Bennett promised to act quickly to solve the depression. Bennett said the best way to deal with the depression was to raise the tariff even higher. Then Canadians would buy Canadian products instead of products from other countries and Canadian workers would have jobs. He also planned to make trade deals with the U.S.A. and Britain. Bennett hoped that raising the Canadian tariff would force other countries to talk about ways of increasing trade. If another country promised to lower its tariff on a Canadian product and buy more goods from Canada, then Canada would do the same thing. In the meantime, Bennett promised \$20 000 000 to help the provinces meet the needs of the unemployed. Many people liked the sound of Bennett's promises and the Conservatives won the 1930 election.

17. Prime Minister Bennett quickly introduced his programme. Canadian tariffs were increased to their highest levels ever. The government raised \$20 000 000 to help the unemployed and the poor in 1930. But the Great Depression grew worse. More people lost their jobs; more farmers lost their farms; more businessmen went bankrupt; fewer products were sold to other countries.

### Total Value of all fish landed in the Maritimes

Year	Amount of Money
1929	\$19 334 431
1930	17 026 070
1932	10 914 306
1933	10 266 474

"With respect to giving moneys... to any Tory (provincial) government for... unemployment purposes... I would not give them a five-cent piece"

*King in the House of Commons, 1930*

"I promise you action. King promises (discussion) of the problem of unemployment; I promise to end unemployment. Which plan do you like best?"

*R.B. Bennett, 1930*

"I will use tariffs to blast a way into the markets (of the world)."

*R.B. Bennett, 1930*



18. In 1932, the countries of the British Commonwealth met in Ottawa to discuss the Great Depression. They agreed to lower their tariffs with each other on a few products to try and increase trade. These agreements created only a few new jobs and did not bring back prosperity.

19. Bennett asked the people to be patient. He believed the government could not spend more money than it collected in taxes. The government should not borrow money to give to the poor. The people must wait for good times to return. Bennett believed that the rich and the fortunate should give money to help the poor. The Prime Minister himself gave thousands of dollars to many of the poor Canadians who wrote to him. But in 1932 he was not yet ready to make great changes in government policy. And the depression dragged on.

20. Many people criticized the government for failing to solve the depression. Bennett was angered by their complaints. The Prime Minister stationed police on Parliament Hill to meet unemployed demonstrators. Members of the Communist Party were arrested, tried, and sentenced to jail for five years for trying to organize the unemployed. Many people were deported from Canada. Young, single men were sent to camps run by the army to do meaningless work for .20 a day. The R.C.M.P. was used to stop demonstrators from coming to Ottawa. The government was determined to maintain law and order, but the depression continued. The government appeared helpless; it could not solve the depression.

### Letter to Prime Minister Bennett

...Received your letter also the five dollars and thank you very much for it. Got quite a thrill when my little boy came in with the letter. Was rather disappointed as I needed more than five so much and did not expect you to give it to me but lend it till fall. However it helped a lot as my baby boy will have shoes in time for his 1st birthday.

May 20/31  
Mr. Bennette

Since you have been elected, work had been impossible to get. We have decided that in a month from this date, if thing's are the same, We'll skin you alive, the first chance we get.

Sudbury Starving  
Unemployed



Richard Bennett was born at Hopewell, New Brunswick, in 1870. He became a teacher and then a lawyer. He never married. In 1897, Bennett, like many other Canadians, moved West. He settled in Calgary where he set up a law office with James Lougheed. Bennett was a very loud and demanding man who pushed hard to get his way. He became a very successful business lawyer representing companies like the C.P.R. in the West. He was also a smart businessman and invested his money. By the 1920's, Bennett was a millionaire.

Bennett was always active in politics. In his first campaign, he supported the temperance movement which opposed the sale of alcohol. He was elected to the city council in Chatham, New Brunswick, and to the provincial assembly in Alberta before he was elected to the House of Commons as a MP for Calgary in 1911. After the Conservative Party was defeated by the Liberals in 1926, the Conservatives decided to replace Arthur Meighen with a new leader. They needed a leader who could appeal to voters in western Canada and who would not frighten voters in Quebec. Bennett seemed to be the perfect choice. He was from Alberta and he had not been a member of the Borden government that had forced conscription on Quebec in 1917. Bennett accepted the challenge and was elected party leader in October, 1927.

Bennett immediately started his campaign to win popular support for his policy. He campaigned for the protective tariff in all parts of the country just as John A. Macdonald had. He promised to make the tariff work for everyone—farmers, fishermen, and lumbermen, as well as manufacturers. As unemployment increased after the stockmarket crash in 1929, many people decided that a sharp businessman was needed to run the country. The Conservatives won the election of 1930 and Bennett became Canada's eleventh Prime Minister.

Unfortunately for Bennett, this was the start of the Great Depression. Bennett acted boldly. He raised the tariffs, he provided tax money to help the poor, he made trade agreements with the Commonwealth, he introduced the New Deal. But the Great Depression, the drought, the unemployment, and the poverty did not end. In 1935, the voters defeated Bennett and the Conservatives. In 1938, Bennett retired as leader of the Conservative Party.

Many people blamed Bennett for the Great Depression and the defeat of the Conservative Party. Bennett retired to England and, in 1941, he was made a noble, and was named Viscount Bennett by King George VI. Bennett died in his bath tub on June 27, 1947 in England, forgotten by many Canadians.



**Richard B. Bennett**





## The Splash of Hopper Juice

I was travelling C.P.R. towards Napinka, that's down southeast of here, and we ran into a plague of grasshoppers. Those in the Bible never had it worse. Millions of them, smashing and splashing against the coach. The train only had one coach, the rest was box-cars. They were small in those days. Soon you couldn't see out, with the grease and muck from those grasshoppers splattering the window, and then the train began to slow down and soon it was just making it ahead, less than a man's walking pace.

I was wearing glasses and I noticed they were fogging up, I couldn't see, and I took them off and there was oil on them. Now this is the funny part. I didn't catch on right off, but what that oil was, was mist from the juices of thousands of grasshoppers which the wheels was crushing and sending mist, penetrating right into the car, and it was over everything, ruining the ladies' dresses, well, everything. But soon the plague had flown on, they only lasted a few minutes anyway and the train began inching forward. It had stopped, by the way, just no traction. It got going. Quite an experience.

## How Did Canadians Live During the Great Depression?

21. Many Canadians suffered terribly during the 1930's. Dust storms in the West, brought about by the drought, prevented many farmers from growing crops. Those who managed to grow wheat often saw it eaten by millions of grasshoppers. Others received very low prices and many did not even bother to harvest their crops. Many Canadians went hungry while farmers let their crops rot in the fields. → *questionable*

22. Young people leaving school found it very difficult to find jobs. By 1936, nearly two-thirds of these young Canadians could not find work. Those who were able to find jobs were considered very lucky. Thousands of people travelled from city to city by hopping on freight cars and this was called "riding the rods". They could not afford the bus or train fares. Both men and women travelled this way in the hope of finding a job.

23. Those Canadians who did not have jobs had to go on **relief** (government aid or welfare) and this was very humiliating. They were given **vouchers** by the government which they traded in at the stores for the food they needed. To be on welfare was considered almost a crime by those who were working. When people presented their vouchers to the store clerk, everyone knew they were on relief. For many people, this was a shameful experience. In some provinces, a family with two children was expected to live on food vouchers that amounted to less than \$10 a month! Many people went hungry and some people even starved. In Newfoundland, some individuals on relief received as little as .06 a day in food vouchers. Many suffered from scurvy and tuberculosis as a result of their poor diet. A great many persons were forced to line up to receive bread and soup from private charities. Bread and soup lines were ways of staying alive. People who wanted relief in Ontario had to hand in their drivers' licenses before they could receive it. Anyone on relief in Saskatchewan who was caught buying alcohol was cut off relief immediately. The shame of receiving relief seemed unbearable to many proud Canadians. But, by 1933, more than 1 500 000 Canadians needed relief to live.

24. Times were so bad during the depression that many car owners could not afford to buy fuel for their cars. They took the motors out of their cars and hitched two horses to the fronts of the cars and called them "Bennett buggies". They blamed R.B. Bennett for their situations.

25. Young, unemployed men were regarded as possible troublemakers. People feared that they might join the Communist Party and take part in riots. The federal government set up "relief camps" for those single men. Here they were paid .20 a day and given their room and board. In return, the men built roads, dug ditches, and worked very hard. Many of these unemployed men



had been forced to go to relief camps because the towns or cities where they lived, refused to give them relief. Over 17 000 Canadian men lived in these camps.

26. The life in the camps was dull and not many men were satisfied with their conditions. Their dissatisfaction exploded in 1935 when thousands of young men in British Columbia left the camps and rode the rods east. They planned to go to Ottawa to demand jobs and justice from the federal government. As they travelled east, they were joined by other dissatisfied men. The federal government in Ottawa became alarmed at this "On-to-Ottawa-Trek". Prime Minister Bennett and other Canadians regarded these men as communist troublemakers who were deliberately breaking the law. Bennett ordered the R.C.M.P. to stop these men at Regina, Saskatchewan. On July 1, 1935, 3000 demonstrators rioted when the R.C.M.P. tried to break up their meeting and arrest their leaders. During the Regina Riot, one policeman and one demonstrator were killed and many others were injured. The R.C.M.P. managed to stop the "On-to-Ottawa-Trek" and the government gave the demonstrators free transportation back to their homes. However, the government did nothing to meet their demands.

27. During the depression, many people could not afford to buy new clothes and worn-out clothes were patched and re-patched. Old flour sacks were used to make dresses and underwear. Some people tied flour sacks around their feet in winter because they had no overshoes. Some children used old socks for mittens.

LEFT: Soup kitchen line

RIGHT: Relief project, road construction, 1933

### A Letter to Prime Minister Bennett

Sidney Mines, N.S.

...I have suffered a terrible lot of poverty for the last few years, but I have tried hard to fight it out. All along I have been getting a little help from some friends of my own in the line of clothing and shoes, but for the last couple of years I haven't been able to get anything from anybody... My children and I are naked of clothing and footwear and also of bedding... When my husband has no shirt at all he gets a relief order for five dollars and sixty cent from the Town Hall. Hardly enough to keep us from starving. There are seven of us. I have been in poor health for the last two years... My doctor claims that most of my sickness is from trouble and worry.





## Fred the Hobo, 1935

I left home in 1932 and have never been back. I am now twenty years old and my parents have a farm in southern Saskatchewan. I left home because of the drought which is still going on in that part of the country. I got tired of doing nothing and was really depressed before I left home. The "farm" had turned into a desert and no amount of work would bring in a crop. Dust storms, prairie fires, hunger, and dirt were the only rewards farmers received in the Palliser Triangle.

When I left home, my family was on relief. We did not receive enough food to feed my two sisters, my parents, and myself.

Most of my time away from home has been spent riding the rods between the towns and cities of Canada. I have been looking for work and a little excitement. I have seen more of Canada and its people in three years than I ever thought possible. It has been quite an experience.

I am now living in a "jungle" outside a small town in British Columbia. There are about twenty of us living in tar paper and cardboard shacks. There is no plumbing or heating but at least it's a place to stay. We live from day to day and never know when we will eat again. A big pot in the middle of the jungle is constantly boiling and whenever food is found, it is thrown into the pot. Two days ago, I caught two chickens wandering in a field. I guess they had escaped from someone's farm but I didn't try to find their owner—I was too hungry. When I came back to the camp we all helped to clean and cut up the chickens. We could hardly wait for them to cook. I can't remember when anything tasted so good. Most of us hadn't eaten anything for several days.

The people from the town avoid us. Anything that goes wrong in the town is our fault. But the police don't come into the jungle because they're afraid. We are living in tough times and the needy people have become desperate.

In a few days, I'll hop on a freight train and move east. Spring is nearly here and there is less chance of freezing on the open railway cars. Just thinking of moving again brings fear and hope. Riding the rods is dangerous. The most dangerous part is actually jumping onto a moving train car. I have learned to run beside the moving train at the right speed and to grab onto the ladder on the side of the car at the right moment. But I have seen terrible accidents. I have seen men fall under the wheels of the train when they lost their grip. There is also the chance that a railroad "bull" (guard) will be on top of the freight car waiting to push you off the train while it's moving. Some of them are mean and don't hesitate to hit you and push you over the side.

I wear several layers of clothing to protect myself from the cold. In my pockets, I carry some salt, a knife, and a spoon. One

never knows when a free meal will be available! No one carries anything extra because it becomes impossible to run quickly and to jump onto the moving train. Everyone on the train talks about their experiences and their hopes for the future. At first, I was surprised to find women riding the rods, but after a while I got used to the idea.

The best thing that could happen would be for all of us to find jobs and settle down. But there are no jobs available, except at the relief camps. Somehow the idea of going to a camp never appealed to me. I have heard from many people that the life in the camps is hard and boring. I won't go to one unless I am desperate. I would like to stay in one place and collect relief until a job came up but the people in the towns want the hoboes to keep moving. A person has to live six months in most places before qualifying for relief. The hoboes never get a chance to stay in any decent place for that length of time. The longest time I have spent in any place since I left home was in a jungle and that was for three months.

Recently I've become homesick. I want to go home and see my folks but I know that conditions at home are still bad. The drought is still going on and I would be just an extra mouth to feed. Sometimes I get the feeling that we are all being punished for something—but I don't know for what. I just hope that someday the rains will come to allow my family and myself to make a living. I want us to be together again. I want to get back my pride. The one thing I have not lost yet is hope! This drought and this depression cannot last forever.

### Questions

1. Why did Fred leave home?
2. What were some of the dangers of being a hobo?
3. Do you think that Fred could have done more to help himself? Explain.

28. Despite the terrible conditions experienced by millions of Canadians, not all people suffered during the Great Depression. Those people who managed to keep their jobs were actually well-off. Some workers had to take cuts in pay, but that did not hurt their standard of living. During the 1930's, prices for goods went down sharply. A loaf of bread could be bought for .04, a hamburger cost .05; as did a dozen eggs. A house could be purchased for \$2000 and a live-in maid only had to be paid \$10 a month. A person who earned \$200 a month was well off during the Great Depression.

29. People wanted to forget the hard times around them and they turned their attention to various types of entertainment and





ABOVE: *Grey Owl*



TOP RIGHT: *Dionne quintuplets*



BOTTOM LEFT: *Shirley Temple*



BOTTOM RIGHT: *Jeanette and Nelson  
in Rosemarie*

amusements. Children were given a great deal of attention because many Canadians could not afford to start a family of their own. Shirley Temple became an overnight child-star in American films and earned \$300 000 a year. On May 28, 1934, the Dionne quintuplets were born in the small town of Callander, Ontario. They were the first quintuplets in the world to survive and these five tiny girls became the wonder of the world. Over a million people came to Callander to see them; they were the biggest tourist attraction in Canada.

30. Canadians were fascinated with unusual people like Grey Owl, the Canadian Indian, who wrote books and gave talks about his experiences in the wilderness. When Grey Owl was proven to be an Englishman, and not a true Indian, it caused a scandal in Canada.

31. The "talkies" were watched by millions of Canadians. James Cagney and Edward G. Robinson starred in gangster films where good always won over evil. Horror pictures like *Frankenstein* and *King Kong* terrified their audiences. One popular musical was *Rose Marie*, starring Jeanette Macdonald and Nelson Eddy, and was about a Canadian Mountie in Canada's north. Whole families went to see the early Walt Disney movies like *Snow White* and the *Three Little Pigs*. These movies allowed people to escape the bad conditions around them for a few brief hours.

32. The radio was also a popular type of entertainment. People listened to the big American bands of Paul Whiteman, Benny Goodman, and Jimmy Dorsey. Some songs like "Brother, Can You Spare a Dime" and "I Can't Give You Anything But Love" reminded people of the bad times. Others like "Night and Day" and "Walking in a Winter Wonderland" allowed them to escape the depression for a moment. The "Happy Gang" was a Canadian group which sang and laughed its way into the hearts of millions of Canadians. The tremendous power of the radio over people was seen on October 30, 1938 when Orson Welles broadcast a programme called "The War of the World". As a result of this programme, millions of listeners actually believed that earth had been invaded by creatures from Mars.

### How Did The Politicians Promise To End The Great Depression?

33. People became more frustrated and desperate as the depression dragged on. The unemployed searched for work, but there were no steady jobs. Farmers and workers organized to fight for their demands, but prices and wages continued to fall. The people turned to the political leaders and political parties for answers.

34. Some people were dissatisfied with the two old political parties. They said that the Liberals and Conservatives had both failed to solve the depression. They said it was time to turn to new leaders and new ideas.

### The Communist Party of Canada

35. A small number of people joined the Communist Party. The Communist Party blamed the depression on big business which owned the factories, mills, stores, ships, railways, grain elevators, and mines. The Communists accused the rich people of running their businesses to make big profits at the expense of the workers and the poor. They urged the workers to join in a revolution to overthrow the Canadian government, just as the Russian workers had in 1917.

36. When Tim Buck and other Communist Party leaders tried to organize the unemployed workers in 1931, they were arrested. Buck and seven other leaders were sentenced to five years in Kingston Penitentiary. Communist Party members continued to organize workers into unions during the 1930's. However, the Communist Party never recovered from the arrest of its leaders and it received little support from the voters.

### The Co-operative Commonwealth Federation

37. In 1932, a group of farmers, workers, and university teachers met in Regina to create a new political party. They called

### Reports in a Canadian Communist Newspaper

#### MORE BULL IN BENNETT'S BUDGET

Bennett's recent budget is a one hundred per cent "Hunger Budget"... Let's take a look at what he has taxed. From postage stamps to tea, magazines and coal; from bacon to garden seeds, syrup and rice; from macaroni to gramophones, gloves and meat; everything in fact, that is used in a worker's home has been taxed...

WIND-BAG BENNETT NEVER HAD... ANY INTENTION OF GIVING UNEMPLOYMENT INSURANCE OF ANY KIND UNLESS COMPELLED (FORCED) TO. WE ARE THE ONES WHO MUST COMPEL HIM TO. WE UNEMPLOYED WORKERS MUST DEMONSTRATE ON THE STREETS... LET US FIGHT FOR — ... UNEMPLOYMENT INSURANCE—MINIMUM WAGE \$25.00 WEEKLY.



their party the Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (CCF). The party members blamed big business for the depression. They argued that the government should own businesses and the people should control these businesses for the benefit of all Canadians. This is called **socialism** and the CCF was a socialist party.

38. According to the CCF, the government would run the economy for the benefit of everyone, not just for the rich. Everyone would be paid as much as they needed to live instead of some people becoming rich while others were unemployed or hungry. Manufacturers, lawyers, doctors, plumbers, and everyone else would be paid what they needed instead of being allowed to charge as much as they could get.

39. James S. Woodsworth was elected as the first leader of the CCF. Woodsworth was an excellent choice. He was a former leader of the Winnipeg General Strike and the workers of Winnipeg had elected him as their MP in the House of Commons in every election since 1921. Woodsworth had also worked closely with some of the farmers' representatives in the House of Commons in the 1920's. During the depression, these groups had joined together to try and create a better world. In the 1935 federal election, the CCF urged Canadians to change the government and the economy peacefully by electing a socialist party.

40. Most Canadians were still afraid of socialism and the CCF in 1935. It was not until 1944 that the CCF won its first provincial election in Saskatchewan. Although the CCF elected a few MPs to the House of Commons, it was never very successful federally. In 1961, the CCF joined with the Canadian labour unions in the Canadian Labour Congress to form a new party, the New Democratic Party. The NDP has won provincial elections in Manitoba and British Columbia as well as Saskatchewan, but it still has not been very successful in federal elections.

*William Aberhart*



### The Social Credit Party

41. The people of Alberta created another new political party. William 'Bible Bill' Aberhart was a popular teacher and radio minister in Calgary. As the depression continued to hurt the farmers of Alberta, he became very concerned. Aberhart blamed big business in eastern Canada—the banks, trust companies, and railways—for the farmers' problems. The farmers who were able to raise cattle or harvest their grain received very low prices and could not pay their bills. Everyone was afraid they would lose their farms when they failed to make their bank payments.

42. In 1934, Aberhart thought that he had found a solution to the farmers' money problems. He started to preach the ideas of Social Credit along with his Bible lessons on his Sunday radio programme. Aberhart said the economy was just like the human

body. Just as blood must circulate through the body to keep it alive, so must money circulate through the economy. But all the money was held by the eastern banks and they would not lend it or circulate it to western farmers. Aberhart said that this was wrong in a wealthy country like Canada. The answer was for the government to provide everyone with money to spend and get the blood of the economy flowing again.

43. Aberhart made it sound so easy. In the 1935 provincial election in Alberta, over half the voters supported Social Credit candidates. Of the 63 MLAs elected, 56 were Social Credit Party members. Aberhart became the Premier of Alberta. Once in power, however, Aberhart was slow to introduce the Social Credit policies he had promised. When Alberta did pass these laws, the federal government **vetoed** (rejected) them and the courts declared them illegal. Aberhart was able to blame the federal government in eastern Canada for his failure to pay the \$25 a month.

44. The Social Credit Party governed the province of Alberta from 1935 to 1971. In the 1950's, Social Credit spread to British Columbia provincial politics and, in the 1960's, Social Credit ideas became popular in parts of rural Quebec. However, the Social Credit Party has never won the support of a majority of Canadians.

### The Union Nationale Party

45. In Quebec, the depression hit the small farmers as well. In the towns and cities, the English owned most of the businesses and kept the best jobs. Unemployment hit the French-speaking workers much harder. When the provincial Liberal government failed to help the unemployed, a group of young Liberals joined with Maurice Duplessis and the provincial Conservatives. They created a new political party, the Union Nationale.

46. The Union Nationale promised to introduce laws to control big business, to tax the rich, and to share the wealth of the province. Duplessis and the Union Nationale did win the Quebec provincial election of 1936. Once in power, however, Duplessis did not attack big business. He looked after the French Canadian farmers and ignored the problems of the French-speaking workers. Instead of keeping his election promises, Duplessis blamed the federal government in Ottawa for Quebec's problems. He told French Canadians to be proud of their language and their religion. Duplessis defended Quebec's provincial rights until his death in 1959. The Union Nationale remained an important political party in Quebec provincial politics until the late 1970's.

### Other Provincial Elections

47. In the other provinces of Canada, the voters did not create new political parties during the depression. However, in most

### William Aberhart:

What is the remedy? ... Social Credit with its basic dividend to every man and woman of \$25.00 per month starts out these corrective measures at once. It places purchasing power in the hands of the consumer ... Where does all the money come from? We don't use money. Then where does all the credit come from? Why out of the end of a fountain pen ...!

### Social Credit Voter

*A farmer in central Alberta*

You can strip down the appeal of Social Credit to the \$25 a month. All of us farmers were in desperate straits. Here was William Aberhart promising \$25 a month, and he was a minister of the gospel. I asked about that \$25 after one of his meetings, and he told me I must have faith.

*Maurice Duplessis*





## PROVINCIAL ELECTIONS DURING THE DEPRESSION

Province	Election Year	Government Party	
		Before Election	After Election
Alberta	1935	United Farmers of Alberta	Social Credit
B.C.	1933	Conservative	Liberal
Manitoba	1936	Progressive Coalition	Progressive Coalition
N.B.	1935	Conservative	Liberal
*Newfoundland	1932	Liberal	United Nfld. Party
N.S.	1933	Liberal	Liberal
Ontario	1934	Conservative	Liberal
P.E.I.	1935	Conservative	Liberal
Quebec	1936	Liberal	Union Nationale
Saskatchewan	1934	Conservative Coalition	Liberal

\*Newfoundland was a British colony and not a province of Canada during the depression.

provinces, the people voted against the party in power and for the party which had been in Opposition. The people were determined to vote out the government and let someone else try to solve the depression.

### Bennett's New Deal

48. As the depression continued, Bennett knew that his government and party were in trouble. Millions of Canadians were still unemployed, on the dole, or living in relief camps. New parties like the CCF were gaining support with their promises of greater government action to end the depression. Bennett's most popular minister, H.H. Stevens, attacked the high profits of the big stores and companies and resigned from the Cabinet. How could the Conservatives win the next election? Something new and exciting was needed to capture the imagination of Canadians.

*this is bad statement*

49. In 1934, Bennett had introduced two new laws to help farmers sell their products and reduce their debts. Then in December, 1934, Bennett decided to carry his reforms much further. With the help of his brother-in-law, William Herridge, and a few assistants, Bennett prepared a new programme to bring Canada out of the depression. He followed the example of the American President, Franklin D. Roosevelt, and called his new programme the "New Deal". Like Roosevelt, Bennett also decided to announce his programme over the radio. Bennett did not discuss his plans with his Cabinet or the Conservative Party.

"In the past five years, great changes have taken place in the world. The old order is gone. It will not return. We are living (in) conditions which are new and strange to us. Your prosperity demands corrections in the old system ... Reform means government intervention (action). It means the end of (free enterprise) ... Who will oppose our plan of progress? ...

Selfish men, and this country is not without them—men whose mounting bank rolls loom larger than your happiness, corporations (big business) without souls ... will whisper against us. They will say that this is the first step on the road to socialism. We fear them not ... We invite their co-operation. We want the co-operation of all ...

Our success depends upon our unity. And so all together, we will drive forward, confident that the might of the Canadian people will reclaim this land from trouble and sorrow, and bring back happiness and security."

## Prime Minister Bennett Announces His "New Deal"



50. In a series of radio broadcasts on January 2, 4, 7, 9, and 11, 1935, Bennett announced his New Deal to the country. He promised laws to control big business, to increase income and business taxes, to reduce farm debts, and to introduce minimum wages, the eight-hour day, unemployment insurance, health insurance, and better old age pensions. It sounded like Bennett, the millionaire lawyer and businessman, was attacking **free enterprise**. Did the Prime Minister no longer believe that businessmen should be free to run their companies with as little government control as possible?

7 why ask this question

51. Canadians were shocked by Bennett's New Deal radio speeches. Some people were horrified. Had Bennett become a socialist? Others were suspicious. Was Bennett just trying to win the election by making wild promises? Perhaps Bennett was really trying to save the free enterprise economy rather than destroy it. But would the people believe and trust Bennett?

### The 1935 Federal Election

52. Bennett did not call an election immediately after his New Deal speeches. Instead, he decided to introduce his bills in Parliament. This took time since his promises had to be written up as bills. Then Bennett suffered a mild heart attack and more time was lost. When the New Deal bills were introduced, H.H. Stevens attacked them as too weak. Stevens left the Conservative Party and set up a new party, the Reconstruction Party.

53. Stevens wanted to protect the small businesses and shopkeepers from the competition of big companies. He also wanted farmers and other producers to receive higher prices for



their products. The CCF also attacked the New Deal as too weak. The Liberals asked whether it was legal for the federal government to pass all these new laws. Bennett still waited to call the election.

54. Finally, the election date was set for October 14, 1935. By this time, many people had decided that Bennett was not very serious about his New Deal. During the election, Bennett campaigned hard on his record, but he said little about the New Deal. The Canadian people looked at the Conservative record from 1930 to 1935 and all they remembered was the depression, unemployment, and poverty. The Liberals did not offer any new policies, but the people were determined to vote against the party in power. Bennett and the Conservatives were crushed.

55. The Liberals won the election of 1935 and William Lyon Mackenzie King once again became Prime Minister of Canada. He served as Prime Minister for thirteen more years until he retired in 1948. King and the Liberals won in 1935 without promising any new policies to solve the depression. Instead, they attacked Bennett and the new parties as being dangerous. 'King or Chaos' was their election cry. The Liberals won because the people were tired of Bennett and the Conservatives and they were not ready to trust the new parties.

56. Once in power, King sent Bennett's New Deal laws to the courts to see if they were legal. The courts said that most of these laws were outside the powers of the federal government and, therefore, illegal. Then King set up a Royal Commission on Dominion-Provincial Relations called the Rowell-Sirois Commission. This group studied the country's economic problems and the powers of the federal and provincial governments. The Rowell-Sirois Commission suggested that the federal government take over some provincial powers to prevent terrible depressions in the future. Many provinces opposed these suggestions. However, in 1940, they did agree to give the federal government control over unemployment insurance.

57. King also signed two agreements with the U.S.A. to increase trade. The government provided more aid to farmers and more money for relief and government work projects. These cautious steps by King and the Liberals did not end the Great Depression. By 1939, almost 12 per cent of Canadian workers were still looking for jobs. Only Germany's attack on Poland in 1939 and the start of World War II changed the situation. The war and its demand for more food, guns, bullets, uniforms, planes, ships, and lives finally brought an end to the 'dirty thirties'. The blood of the young men from many countries washed away the Great Depression. They paid the highest price.

#### 1935 ELECTION RESULTS

	<i>Seats</i>	<i>Percentage of Total Votes</i>
Liberal	173	44.8%
Conservative	40	29.6
CCF	7	8.8
Reconstruction	1	8.7
Social Credit	17	4.1
Other	7	3.9
Total	245	99.9

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—13

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. People bought shares in the 1920's because
  - (a) they wanted to gain control of these companies
  - (b) they wanted to sell them later and make a profit
  - (c) they thought they might lose money in another type of investment
  - (d) they had too much money in their bank accounts
2. The collapse of the stockmarket in the U.S.A. affected Canada because
  - (a) Canadian shareholders had a huge investment in American companies
  - (b) the U.S.A. depended on Canada
  - (c) the U.S.A. was Canada's biggest customer
  - (d) all of the above

#### Questions

3. Why was the drought so severe in the Palliser Triangle?
4. During the depression, goods were repossessed by companies. Why?

### Paragraphs 14—20

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Mackenzie King lost the election of 1930 because
  - (a) the people wanted to give the Liberals a chance
  - (b) he gave too much money to the provincial governments
  - (c) Bennett promised to end unemployment
2. Bennett's first idea for ending the depression was
  - (a) to cut tariffs and increase trade with the U.S.A.
  - (b) to raise tariffs to protect the Canadian market for Canadian producers
  - (c) to call a Commonwealth trade conference

#### Questions

3. Why did Bennett's policies to end the depression not work?
4. How did Bennett use the police and army in the early 1930's?

### Paragraphs 21—32

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Relief is
  - (a) a means of cutting down on the pain
  - (b) government aid or welfare
  - (c) a place where men are sent to work
  - (d) unemployment insurance
2. Vouchers are
  - (a) given by stores to customers who buy a certain amount of merchandise
  - (b) pieces of paper given to farmers as payment for their crops
  - (c) people who accept welfare
  - (d) pieces of paper that are given by the government to people who are on relief

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The "On-To-Ottawa Trek" occurred in 1935 because
  - (a) the relief camps had such poor conditions
  - (b) it was the beginning of a communist revolution
  - (c) people were tired of riding "Bennett buggies"
  - (d) all of the above

#### Questions

4. Did everyone suffer during the 1930's? Why?
5. Why were the movies so popular during the depression?

### Paragraphs 33—47

#### Knowing the People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. Tim Buck           | —first leader of the Co-operative Commonwealth Federation Party |
| James S. Woodsworth   | —started the Union Nationale Party                              |
| 'Bible Bill' Aberhart | —promised the voters \$25 a month                               |
| Maurice Duplessis     | —was thrown in jail for his political beliefs                   |



## Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Socialism means
  - (a) people are very friendly
  - (b) government control with no freedoms
  - (c) government control for the benefit of the rich
  - (d) government control of the economy for everyone's benefit
3. Vetoed means
  - (a) a bill is passed in the House of Commons
  - (b) an idea or suggestion is rejected by someone else
  - (c) a bill is defeated in the House of Commons
  - (d) the people vote for an idea or suggestion

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. The CCF was founded because
  - (a) some farmers, workers, and teachers wanted to use force to overthrow the government
  - (b) the Liberal Party had disappeared during the depression
  - (c) some farmers, workers, and teachers thought socialism was the way to end the depression
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

5. Why did few Canadians join the Communist Party?
6. Why was the Union Nationale Party created?

## Paragraphs 48—57

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Mackenzie King —left Bennett's Cabinet and the Conservative Party and then formed the Reconstruction Party
- R.B. Bennett —became Prime Minister again in 1935
- H.H. Stevens —helped Bennett write his New Deal speeches
- William Herridge —felt that reform meant government intervention

## Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook

2. Free enterprise means
  - (a) free public transportation
  - (b) running businesses without government control
  - (c) government control of businesses that make large profits
  - (d) government ownership of businesses

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Bennett introduced his New Deal because
  - (a) he wanted to do something about the depression and win the election
  - (b) he did not want to be defeated like President Roosevelt had been
  - (c) he decided that socialism was better than free enterprise
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

4. Why did King and the Liberals not solve the Great Depression?
5. What suggestions did the Rowell-Sirois Commission make?

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

1. You are running for Prime Minister of Canada in 1930. Prepare a speech to be broadcast on radio in which you tell the voters how you plan to solve the depression. Be specific.
2. Review paragraphs 35 to 46. Make a chart of the new political parties that were formed in Canada. On the chart, include the name of the party, the name of the leader, the plans for solving the depression, and the success of the party in elections.

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

3. The date is October 1, 1935. You are an adult living in Canada with a family to support. Choose a province in which to live. Then write a letter to R.B. Bennett, with a paragraph on each of the following topics. End the letter with a concluding paragraph.
  - your ideas on the causes of the depression
  - the effect of the depression on you and your family
  - how you plan to vote in the 1935 election and why

# CHAPTER ELEVEN

## World War II

AIM: What Caused World War II and How Did Canada Participate?

### Why Was There A Second World War?

#### The Treaty of Versailles

1. On June 28, 1919, most of the countries which had fought in World War I signed the Treaty of Versailles. Many people thought that this peace treaty would prevent future wars. They believed that people and countries would learn from their past mistakes and avoid the horrors of another world war. Unfortunately, the Treaty of Versailles was an important cause of World War II.

2. The countries which had won the war, especially France, wanted revenge on Germany. They wanted to teach Germany a

EUROPE IN 1914





lesson. They thought that Germany should be forced to take all the blame for World War I. They insisted that Germany agree to pay back all the money which the winners had spent on the war—a total of \$35 000 000 000! Germany was also forced to give up all its colonies and some of its own lands. Belgium, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Denmark, and France all received German territory with about 6 500 000 German citizens.

3. The Austro-Hungarian Empire was divided up by the winners of the war and Communist Russia was punished for withdrawing from the war in 1917. Several new countries like Poland and Czechoslovakia were created from the lands taken away from Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Russia.

4. The Treaty of Versailles humiliated the losers. When Germany protested against the conditions of the treaty, the winners of World War I threatened to invade Germany. Germany was forced to sign the treaty but the shame Germany felt was not forgotten by the German people.

### Certain Countries Threaten World Peace

Italy

5. Italy was very unhappy with the Treaty of Versailles in 1919. Although Italy had fought with the Allies during World War

EUROPE IN 1924



I, it had received very little new territory as a reward at the peace conference. After the war, many Italians were unemployed and unhappy with their democratic government. In 1922, they turned to a new leader who promised action—Benito Mussolini. Mussolini, the son of a blacksmith, had fought in World War I. After the war, he became a newspaper reporter. He was a colourful public speaker who could excite and entertain his audience.

6. Mussolini and his “black shirts”, called **Fascists**, promised the Italian people jobs, security, law and order, and a return to the great days of the Roman Empire! Fascists believed that individuals must support one political party and one leader who would control the government, the army, the economy, and the lives of the people. Other political parties and leaders who opposed the Fascists were destroyed. Freedom of speech and freedom of the press were taken away. The Fascists used propaganda to brainwash the people into accepting the government. Mussolini had made himself a **dictator** and his word was law.

7. Once Mussolini and his Fascist Party had gained power, they did improve some services like the railways. They spent more money on new roads and bridges to create jobs. Mussolini was a powerful speaker and he made wonderful promises for the future. However, with the coming of the Great Depression, unemployment grew worse. “Il Duce” (the leader) looked for ways to take the people’s minds off their poverty. In 1935, Mussolini decided that a war to conquer new lands in Africa was the best answer.

#### Japan

8. Japan had also supported the Allies in World War I. In return, Japan had received the German colonies in China and the Pacific. The Japanese had copied western science and built modern factories since the 1850’s. They had also built a powerful navy and a strong army. However, Japan did not have many natural resources like oil, coal, or iron ore. The population was growing rapidly and the land was becoming crowded. These were real problems for the Japanese. In the late 1920’s, military officers held the most important positions in the Japanese government. They wanted to conquer land with rich resources to make Japan the greatest power in Asia. In 1931, they decided to invade the wealthy province of Manchuria in northern China. Japan was determined to build a great empire and become a world power.

#### Germany

9. The loss of World War I and the harsh terms of the Treaty of Versailles left Germany very weak. The war debts and payments to the Allies were very heavy. Many workers were unemployed and could not find jobs after the war. The value of



*Mussolini*



MANCHURIA, CENTRE OF  
CONFLICT, 1932



German money fell and by 1923, their money was worthless. People's savings were destroyed. For a few years, from 1925 to 1929, economic conditions did improve, but with the start of the Great Depression in 1929, these gains were wiped out.

10. The German people had never felt very loyal to the new democratic government which had signed the shameful Treaty of Versailles. When the government failed to provide jobs and security, many people were ready to turn away from democracy. Adolf Hitler promised them a better life.

11. Adolf Hitler was born in the German-speaking country of Austria in 1889. He was an unsuccessful artist and house painter in Vienna before World War I. Hitler was very proud of the German people. When Germany and Austria-Hungary went to war against the Allies in 1914, he joined the army. Hitler became a corporal in the army and fought bravely in the trenches until he was wounded. He received a medal, the Iron Cross, for his bravery.

12. Hitler organized the Nazi Party in Germany after World War I. For years, no one took Hitler seriously. They thought he was a "crackpot". When he led a small revolt in Munich in 1923, it

was easily defeated and he was thrown in jail. While he was in jail, Hitler wrote a book, *Mein Kampf* (My Struggle), which glorified Germany and attacked other peoples and races. He encouraged racial discrimination against Jews and others by blaming them for Germany's problems. After his release, Hitler returned to politics. He organized his followers, called "brown shirts", to parade through the streets and to break up meetings of other political parties. The Nazi Party also believed in fascism. The members called for a strong leader, the use of armed force, and blind loyalty to Germany. They attacked democracy, peace, and other peoples such as the Jews, the Slavs, and the Blacks. ✓

13. The Nazi Party did poorly in the 1928 elections but, as the Great Depression set in, their support grew. In the elections of 1932 and 1933, the Nazi Party won the most seats in the German Parliament. Hitler was legally appointed Chancellor of Germany in 1933. Then Parliament voted Hitler complete control of the government. Adolf Hitler had become the "Führer" of Germany.

Führer means leader

14. Why did so many Germans vote for the Nazi Party and support Hitler? There were many reasons. Hitler hated the communists and so he was supported by some rich people who wanted to prevent a communist revolution in Germany. He promised the workers jobs. He appealed to German pride and nationalism at a time when the people felt "down and out". He attacked the Jews and the Treaty of Versailles and promised to make Germany a strong country again. Hitler was a very powerful speaker and the Nazis held huge public rallies where Hitler preached his message. The Nazis used propaganda to shape the thoughts of the people. Radio, movies, and newspapers were used to send out the Nazi message.

15. Hitler was successful in many areas. His government created jobs and reduced unemployment. Workers built highways and worked in factories producing everything from aeroplanes to



Hitler youth burning "Jewish-Marxist" books, 1938



the newly designed "Volkswagen" or people's car. Life for many Germans in the 1930's improved under Hitler. Hitler was even more successful in restoring Germany's honour by 1938. He boldly broke the Treaty of Versailles, while Britain, France, and their allies stood by. The armed forces were expanded and much of the German land lost in World War I was regained. All this was done before 1939 without firing a shot.

### The League of Nations

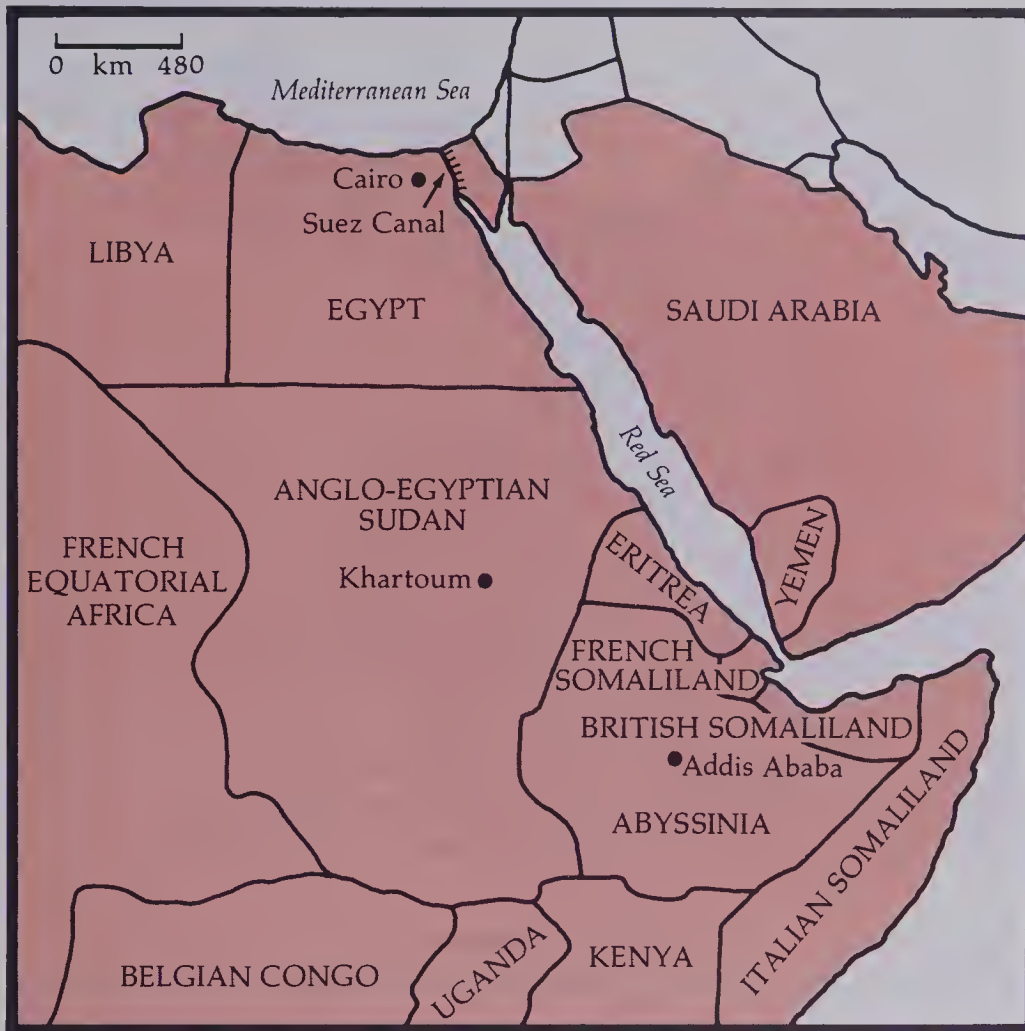
16. The Treaty of Versailles created the League of Nations in 1919. The main purpose of the League was to keep peace and to prevent future wars. It was an organization made up of countries which promised to solve their problems with each other peacefully. Members of the League of Nations also promised to help each other if they were attacked by another country (Article X). All the members agreed to stop trading with an **aggressor** which attacked another country. If the invading country did not stop, the members of the League promised to use force (Article XVI). President Woodrow Wilson of the U.S.A. was largely responsible for the creation of the League of Nations. Most people hoped that the League would help to prevent another world war.

17. Unfortunately for President Wilson and for the world, the U.S.A. did not join the League of Nations. The American people and their government did not want to become involved in the affairs of other countries. They wanted to remain in **isolation** from other countries. But the failure of the most powerful country in the world to join the League, seriously weakened it. Dictators, like Adolf Hitler and Benito Mussolini, had less to fear if they attacked weaker countries. The success of the League now depended upon the strength of countries like Britain and France, and the support of smaller countries, like Canada.

18. The first serious test for the League came in Manchuria, a province of China. In 1931, Japan attacked and conquered Manchuria and China asked the members of the League for help against Japan. However, the League did nothing to help China and showed itself to be weak. The members of the League were not prepared to risk another world war. They thought that the war between Japan and China was far away and no threat to them.

19. In 1935, Italy was the next country to test the League of Nations. Benito Mussolini, dictator of Italy, ordered the Italian armies to invade Abyssinia (Ethiopia), a country in northern Africa. The Abyssinian spears and shields were no match for the Italian tanks, planes, and bombs. Emperor Haile Selassie of Abyssinia appealed to the League of Nations in Geneva, Switzerland, for help.

20. The League condemned the invasion and stated that Italy was in the wrong. W.A. Riddell, the Canadian representative at



the League, suggested that the League members stop sending oil, coal, and iron to Italy. Italy did not produce these materials and needed them for her factories. But Mussolini threatened to go to war with any country that threatened to cut off trade in these goods with Italy. Prime Minister W.L. Mackenzie King did not support Riddell's recommendation and Canada backed down. The members of the League did not stand up to Mussolini's threats and very little was done to stop the invasion. By 1936, Italy had completely taken over Abyssinia and Mussolini became more popular in Italy.

21. Adolf Hitler, dictator of Germany, was now convinced that the League would do nothing to stop him. If the League of Nations had stopped the first aggressors, a second world war might have been avoided.

### The Policy of Appeasement

22. In 1935, Hitler announced his plans to rebuild the German armed forces. The army grew rapidly in numbers and plans were made for a large airforce and a navy. In 1936, Hitler directed his small army to march into the Rhineland with orders to retreat if France attacked. The British refused to join the French in an attack against Germany and the French decided not to drive the small

*King and Riddell, Geneva Conference, 1936*







## GERMAN ACQUISITIONS

*Hitler and Mussolini, 1941*



German army out of the Rhineland. It was easier for the French to sit safely behind their giant defences along the German border. Hitler had successfully broken the Treaty of Versailles. The German people were delighted and the German generals were impressed.

23. Germany, Italy, and Japan now had similar experiences and interests. They had all successfully ignored Britain, France, and the League of Nations. In 1937, these three countries agreed to support each others' plans to conquer new lands and create new empires. The aggressors had decided to change the world.

24. With the encouragement of these friends, Hitler felt confident to make more demands in Europe. His next opportunity came in Austria in 1938. The Nazi Party in Austria wanted a union of Germany and Austria against the terms of the Treaty of Versailles. Hitler agreed. German troops met little opposition when they marched into Austria. Britain and France did nothing.

25. Then Hitler turned against the new country of Czechoslovakia which had been created by the Treaty of Versailles. Hitler demanded that the 3 000 000 German people who lived in the Sudetenland of Czechoslovakia should be allowed to separate and join Germany. However, Czechoslovakia had an alliance with France and Russia in case of a German attack. Then,

Hitler demanded changes to protect the Germans in Czechoslovakia. In September, 1938, he invited Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain of Britain and the leaders of France and Italy to the Munich Conference to discuss the Czechoslovakian situation. The leaders of Czechoslovakia and Russia were not invited. At Munich, Britain and France agreed to let Germany take over the Sudetenland of Czechoslovakia. Hitler said that he was satisfied, and he promised to keep the peace and make no more demands. Prime Minister Chamberlain promised the British people: "Peace in our time". The British and French forced Czechoslovakia to accept these terms and Czechoslovakia was divided. This British and French policy of giving in to Germany's demands was called **appeasement**.

26. Why did Britain and France allow Hitler to break the Treaty of Versailles, occupy the Rhineland, annex Austria, and take over the Sudetenland, without firing a shot? Britain's navy was much stronger than the navies of Italy and Germany together. France's army outnumbered the German army, at least until 1938. Why did they not join together to stop Nazi Germany before it could build up a powerful army and take over so much territory?

27. There were many reasons why Britain, France, and other countries including Canada, supported a policy of appeasement. The first World War had killed so many people that these countries wanted to avoid another war at almost any cost. The Great Depression had created serious economic problems like high unemployment which made everyone less interested in world events. These countries wanted to spend their tax dollars to create jobs and help the poor rather than to build ships, planes, or



*Chamberlain waves document after Munich Conference*

*Driving through town of Asch, Sudetenland*





tanks for war. Britain and France also hoped that Nazi Germany would attack Communist Russia and that these two enemies would destroy each other without attacking the western countries. Finally, some countries like Britain and Canada thought that Germany had been treated too harshly in the Treaty of Versailles. They believed that Germans had the right to live together in one country and that some of its lost territory should be returned to Germany.

28. Prime Minister Mackenzie King and most Canadians supported the British and French policy of appeasement. Canadians did not want another war. King was also afraid that another world war would lead to conscription again and further divide English and French Canadians. The Prime Minister believed that keeping Canada united was the most important issue.

29. However, Hitler was not satisfied with Austria and the Sudetenland of Czechoslovakia. In March, 1939, he broke the Munich agreement and took over the rest of Czechoslovakia by force. Britain and France were shocked. They finally realized that Hitler's promises were worthless and that he could not be trusted. They decided to try to stop him from taking over any more territory. They promised to defend Poland if it was attacked by Nazi Germany.

### How Was the War Fought?

#### The Invasion of Poland

30. On September 1, 1939, Germany invaded Poland. Germany used a new type of warfare called the **blitzkrieg** or "lightning war". Heavily armed German tanks rolled into Poland and behind them marched the German army, the Wehrmacht. From the air, the German airforce, the Luftwaffe, bombed and machine-gunned the Polish defences and cities. Although the Polish army and cavalry fought bravely, they were no match for the modern German army and airforce. On September 17, 1939, Russia attacked Poland from the east and within two weeks Poland was completely taken over. Germany and Russia had made a deal to divide Poland between them. Hitler believed that Britain and France would not declare war over Poland; they would give in as they had done over Czechoslovakia. However, when Germany invaded Poland, Britain demanded that German troops leave Poland immediately. When Germany failed to answer, both Britain and France declared war on Germany on September 3, 1939. World War II had begun.



*Polish cavalry*

31. Canada had obtained control of its foreign affairs in 1931 when a law called the Statute of Westminster was passed by the British Parliament. This gave Canada the power to make treaties with other countries and to declare war on its own. On September 10, 1939, Canada declared war on Germany.

## The Fall of Europe

32. After Poland was conquered, there was very little fighting until the spring of 1940. The two opposing sides were busy arming themselves for the terrible struggle ahead. This was the calm before the storm and is sometimes called the “Phoney War” or Sitzkrieg. However, in April and May of 1940, Hitler used the blitzkrieg to attack and capture Norway, Denmark, Holland, Belgium, and Luxembourg. As the German armies and tanks drove into France, British and French troops retreated toward Dunkirk. Trenches were no protection against German tanks, artillery, and planes. France was conquered by Germany but not before a great effort was made by the British navy, airforce, and citizens to rescue the trapped troops at Dunkirk. The Royal Airforce successfully fought the Luftwaffe in the air, while the British navy and private boats made a daring and heroic rescue. Over 300 000 British and French troops were rescued in just four days. These troops would fight Hitler again.

33. Britain and the Allies were fortunate to have a brilliant war leader named Winston Churchill who became Prime Minister of Britain in 1940. In the 1930’s, Churchill had warned both Britain and France to stand up against Hitler and he had opposed appeasement.

## The Battle of Britain

34. Once Hitler conquered France, he went ahead with his plans to attack Britain. Before he could invade Britain, he had to







*Fighter pilot climbs into his Spitfire*



*Winston Churchill*

destroy the Royal Air Force, the RAF. The Germans needed control of the air to be able to destroy the powerful Royal Navy which guarded Britain. During the months of July and August of 1940, an air battle took place between the Luftwaffe and the RAF which was called the Battle of Britain. The British fighters were outnumbered two to one but with the invention of **radar**, a machine that detects approaching metal objects, they were able to overcome these odds and defeat the enemy. Many brave Canadian pilots were members of the RAF and helped to win this important battle. Prime Minister Churchill praised the efforts of the RAF by stating, "Never ... was so much owed by so many to so few".

### **The Invasion of Russia**

35. After the Battle of Britain, Hitler realized that he could not easily invade Britain and he turned his attention to Russia. Russia had a communist government which Hitler hated. He had only made friends with the Russian leader, Joseph Stalin, in August, 1939 to avoid fighting on two fronts. Russia had huge amounts of oil, coal, and other natural resources which Hitler wanted. On June 22, 1941, Hitler turned his blitzkrieg against Russia. He expected a quick victory but the invasion of Russia was his greatest mistake in the war.

### **Japan Attacks the Allies**

36. Japan was an ally of Germany and Italy and wanted control of the Far East and the Pacific Ocean. The only country which could stop Japan was the U.S.A. Britain was too busy fighting Hitler to stop Japan. The Japanese admired Hitler's blitzkrieg. They knew that this type of surprise attack would have to be used against the much larger U.S.A. in order to win any war.

On December 7, 1941, Japanese planes suddenly attacked the American Navy at Pearl Harbour in Hawaii. The attack was successful and nearly half of the American ships were sunk or severely damaged. The next day, President Roosevelt declared war on Japan and three days later, Germany and Italy declared war on the U.S.A. The most powerful country in the world was now fighting against Hitler.

37. When Japan made the surprise attack on Pearl Harbour, it made several other surprise attacks in the Pacific Ocean. There were 2000 Canadian troops helping to defend Hong Kong. It took Japan seventeen days to capture this island. Nearly 300 Canadians died in battle and as many died in Japanese prisoner-of-war camps before the war ended.

### The Dieppe Raid

38. As the Russians retreated before the German armies, Joseph Stalin demanded that Britain and the U.S.A. attack the Germans in western Europe. Stalin believed that such an attack would slow down the German attack in Russia. However, both Britain and the U.S.A. wanted to test the German defences of France before they started a major attack. On August 19, 1942, the Dieppe Raid took place. About 5000 Canadian troops took part in the attack in Dieppe, France but only 2211 returned to Britain. The rest were either killed or captured in the attack.

39. The attack itself was poorly planned by the British. The troops had no chance to capture the town of Dieppe, blow up the German defence, and retreat safely by sea. The Allies had learned that Germany was well prepared for any attack. The mistakes made in landing troops and tanks at Dieppe would not be repeated in a future invasion by the Allies.

### German Defeats

40. The year, 1942, had been a bad one for Britain, Canada, and the U.S.A. However, by the end of the year, the tide of battle began to change. Russia finally stopped the advancing German armies at a Russian city named Stalingrad. On January 31, 1943, the starving German army in Stalingrad was forced to surrender. After this great victory, Russia began to push Germany out of Russian territory. On May 13, 1943, the German general, Rommel, was defeated by the British general, Montgomery, in North Africa and over 300 000 German and Italian troops surrendered. In the same year, Sicily and southern Italy were invaded by Canadian, British, and American troops.

41. By 1944, the Allies were ready to attack Germany in France. Under the leadership of General Eisenhower of the U.S.A., the Allied navies, armies, and airforces invaded Normandy, France on June 6, 1944. This day is called D-Day. Nearly 5000 ships, 11 000

*Canadian soldiers taken prisoner during Dieppe raid*



### A Canadian Soldier Describes The Fighting

"The thing I hated was when they'd call up a carrier with a flame-thrower to burn out one of their pillboxes (small fortresses). I can still turn sort of green when I think of it.

I remember once there was this pillbox and we could hear the guys inside yelling. We didn't know what they were yelling and I told the sergeant maybe they wanted to surrender but the door was jammed. I said it might have taken a hit and buckled and they couldn't get out. He said ... them and yelled to the guy with the flame-thrower to turn on the heat, and you should have heard those Germans in that pillbox screaming. God, it was awful."





*American Marines digging in at Iwo Jima*

planes and thousands of troops took part in this successful invasion. The Germans were taken by surprise and within six days there were over 300 000 Allied troops in France. The Germans fought fiercely but were forced to retreat. Hitler was now fighting on two major fronts and there was no chance for Germany to win the war. Allied armies advanced on Germany from the West and Russian armies advanced from the East.

42. On April 17, 1945, Benito Mussolini was caught escaping from Italy and was killed by other Italians. On April 30, 1945, Hitler committed suicide by shooting himself. On May 7, 1945, V-E Day, Germany surrendered.

### Japan Surrenders

43. Germany and Italy had surrendered but Japan was still fighting the war. Between 1943 and 1945, General Douglas MacArthur, an American general, had driven the Japanese from island after island in the Pacific Ocean. Fighting was heavy and few Japanese troops surrendered. Japan itself was bombed but the Japanese people refused to give up. They were prepared to fight to the bitter end for the honour of their country. The American leaders realized that hundreds of thousands of troops would be lost if they invaded Japan. During World War II, the British and the Americans had developed a new secret weapon. It was the most powerful weapon ever invented—it was called the atomic bomb. The Japanese were warned by Harry Truman, the new American President, to surrender or be destroyed. The Japanese did not surrender and President Truman decided to drop the atomic bomb on Japan. On August 6, 1945, an atomic bomb was dropped on the Japanese city of Hiroshima and over 70 000 Japanese died instantly and many thousands were injured. The Japanese did not surrender. On August 9, 1945, a second atomic bomb was dropped on Nagasaki with the same terrible results. On August 14, 1945, V-J Day, the Japanese surrendered. World War II had finally ended.

*RIGHT: Nagasaki after atomic explosion*

*LEFT: Test explosion of atomic bomb*



**Anti-semitism**, which is hatred for people who are Jewish, has existed in the world for thousands of years. The Jews have lived as a minority in most countries of the world. Throughout their history, the Jews have been victims of discrimination. The Jews were blamed for floods, sickness, war, poor harvests, and bad times. Some people were jealous of their wealth, importance, and knowledge. Adolf Hitler used this hatred of the Jews to round up millions of Jews and to kill them.

Jews had been living in Germany for hundreds of years. They spoke German and many regarded themselves as Germans first and Jews second. Many were successful businessmen, teachers, lawyers, artists, and scientists.

Hitler hated the Jews and blamed them for Germany's problems. When Hitler became the leader of Germany, he started to persecute the Jews. He took away their rights to own property, to have an education, and to associate with other Germans. Hitler believed that the German people belonged to a Super-Race. Other races like the Jews had to be sent from Germany. By 1941, he had decided that the Jews in Germany and in the world would have to be killed. Some Jews managed to escape to other countries but most countries, including Canada, did not want them.

At first, the Jews were marched into the countryside and were forced to dig their own graves. They were ordered to take off their clothes and were then killed by machine guns. Hitler and his helpers found this method too slow. A more efficient method was found when special extermination camps were built. Millions of Jews from all over Europe were taken to these camps in box cars and were gassed to death in gas chambers. Their bodies were later burned in special ovens. No one but survivors will ever understand the horrors of these camps. The names of such concentration camps as Dachau, Auschwitz, and Treblinka will always be remembered as an example of what people can do to other people. Will this memory stop situations like this from happening again?

### Questions

1. What is anti-semitism and why has it existed in the world?
2. Why did the Jews not leave Germany when Hitler began to persecute them?

## Hitler Kills the Jews

We jumped to attention as some SS (Hitler's personal guards) women entered our block. There was complete silence. The head of our block called for volunteers to pick potatoes in the fields...

There were four SS women and two men. We were marched for half an hour to an open field, but we saw no potatoes. They forced us to run quickly while the women stood at a distance and shot at us. Hearing the shots and lacking the strength to run any further, I dropped to the ground and lay still. Looking around I saw one girl after another get hit and fall. This lasted about ten minutes. I lay motionless, pretending I was dead. When the shooting ceased and the girls who had not been hit began to walk in another direction, I got up and ran up to them. We stood in line and I heard snatches of the Nazis' conversation, punctuated by sadistic (cruel) laughter. From this I learned that they had taken us out for sport. These women loved hunting, and we served as targets in today's hunt! They were competing to see who could hit the most moving targets and kill them.

*This is an excerpt from "I'm Still Living" by Chava Kwinta, a Canadian Jew, who was a prisoner in a concentration camp*



## Japanese Canadians

Japan's entry into the war gave racists (individuals who dislike and mistreat people of a different race) in Canada a chance to attack Japanese Canadians living in British Columbia. Thousands of Japanese Canadians were rounded up and put in camps across Canada. Most of their property was taken away and they were never paid for it. No Japanese Canadians were ever found guilty of spying for Japan. Nevertheless, their rights were taken away by the federal government under the War Measures Act.

### ORIGIN OF THE JAPANESE IN CANADA

1941	
Canadian Born	14 119
Naturalized Canadians	3 159
Japanese Nationals	5 924
American Citizens	22
<hr/>	
Total	23 224

### "Why Us"

I lie in my bunk and the rest of the family would be sleeping and I'd lie there and lie there and watch the light of morning start to come into the room and I'd ask myself the question: "Why us? Why us? What did we do?"

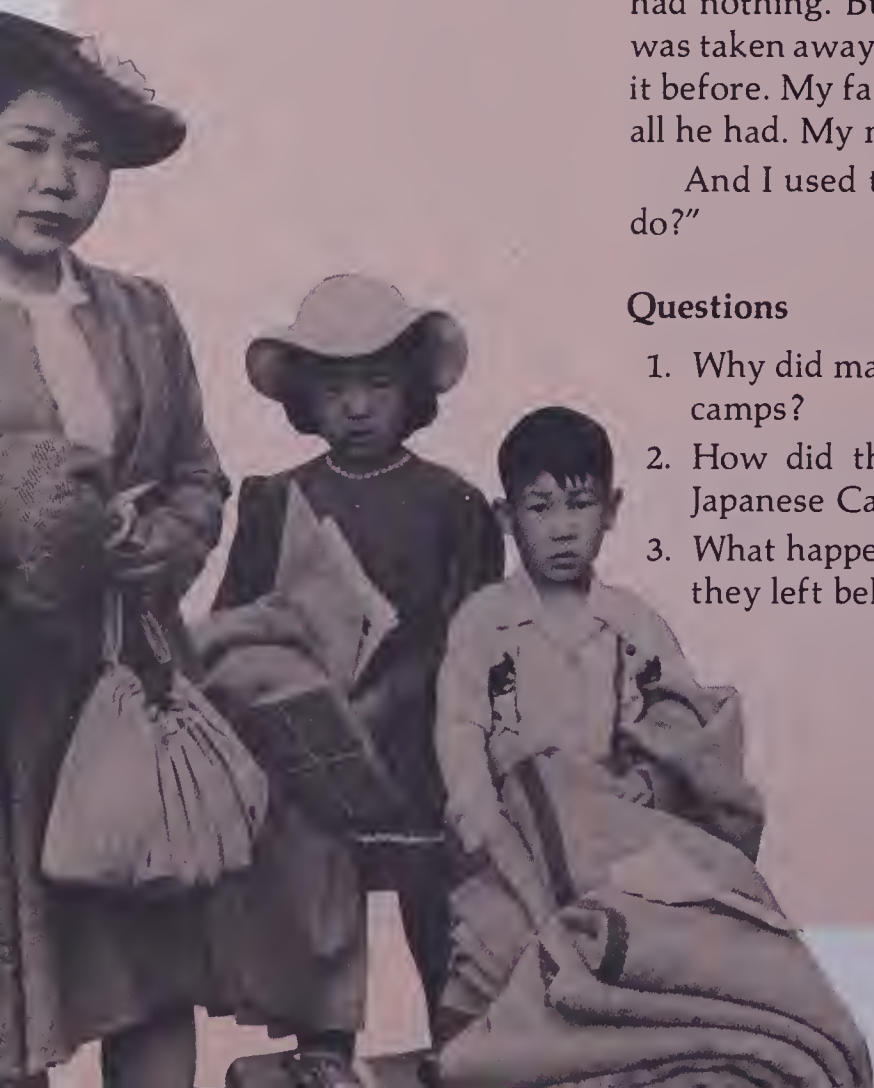
I could never get an answer because there was no answer for me. The politicians in British Columbia and the politicians in Ottawa might have had an answer, or they might have made up the question and then put their own answers to it, but I couldn't. We couldn't.

We hadn't done anything wrong. No sabotage. No loving Japan. No fighting the English. And yet here we were, there we were in this awful camp in the mountains with nothing. We didn't have nothing. For the young people like me that didn't mean too much because we were just starting out in life anyway and nobody had nothing. But my parents, everybody's parents, all they had was taken away. Seized. Sold. Stolen. Just as if they had never had it before. My father's store. My uncle's job in the mill, which was all he had. My mother's dining room set. All gone.

And I used to lie there and say, "Why us? What did we ever do?"

### Questions

1. Why did many Canadians want Japanese Canadians put into camps?
2. How did the federal government have the power to put Japanese Canadians in camps?
3. What happened to the property of Japanese Canadians which they left behind? Do you think this was fair?



## How Did Canadians At Home Help Win the War?

### Government Controls

44. In 1914, the War Measures Act had been passed by Parliament to give the Canadian government the extra powers it needed to fight the war. In 1939, the federal government used this law again to make Canada more effective in fighting the war. In 1941, Canada became the first free country to bring in wage and price controls. As more goods were shipped overseas, goods in Canada became less available. Price controls were needed to stop companies from raising the prices of their goods. Wage controls were also needed because workers were needed in the war factories. If there were no controls on the workers' wages, companies would have to pay workers more money and the companies would have to raise prices. Rent controls were also brought in to stop landlords from taking advantage of the lack of housing in Canada. No new homes were built. All Canada's efforts were put into winning the war. The government controls on prices and wages were very successful in slowing down inflation in Canada.

45. In 1942, the government introduced **rationing** in Canada to control the sale of certain types of goods to Canadians. The federal government gave ration coupons or stamps to each Canadian. Every time such goods as butter, tea, coffee, meat, or gasoline were purchased, the buyer would have to give the proper coupon to the store. On the coupon, there was the amount of the product the buyer could purchase each week. Rationing was needed to cut down on the amount of goods Canadians used at home, so that more goods could be sent overseas.

46. By 1942, the government had stopped the production of luxury goods such as cars. The steel that made cars was needed to produce trucks, tanks, and armoured cars. The government also increased income and sales taxes in Canada to raise money to spend on the war. Farmers, fishermen, and factory owners had to be paid for goods bought by the government.

### Canada Supplies the Allies

47. In 1940, the Canadian economy was still suffering from the Great Depression of the 1930's. There were still 612 000 of 11 000 000 Canadians who were on relief. They could not find jobs. By 1941, there were enough jobs for all who wanted to work. The war factories were booming.

48. During World War II, Canadians at home did not seem to mind the sacrifices they were forced to make because of the war. However, the government did promise to bring in unemployment insurance, baby bonuses, and higher old age pensions when the war was won. Most Canadians were very patriotic. They knew that their sacrifices would bring the war to an end sooner.





### Canada's Production Record 1939-1945

Aircraft	16 000
Rifles	900 000
Military vehicles	815 000
Merchant ships	410
Landing craft	3 302
Navy tugs	254
Tanks	6 500
Escort ships	487
Machine guns	244 000

49. The government encouraged, but did not force, Canadians to buy Victory Bonds to help the government pay for the war. Workers were expected to buy one \$5 government bond each week. The bond cost \$4, the extra dollar was paid when the bond was cashed. During World War II, Canadians bought \$12 000 000 000 worth of bonds from the government. The total cost of the war for Canada was \$18 000 000 000.

50. In 1939, Canada was not ready to fight a war. The Canadian armed forces had only 10 000 men and the country produced practically no war materials. During the war, Canadians were aware of only one thing—the war had to be won. Their efforts and enthusiasm are seen in the growth of the armed forces to over 1 000 000 members. Men and women in Canadian war factories produced thousands of tanks, machine guns, war ships, and planes. Canadian farmers, fishermen, lumbermen, and miners produced huge quantities of materials. Canada's allies were amazed at the huge amounts of natural resources and goods that they received from Canada. Canada even gave Britain \$3 500 000 000 as a gift during World War II. Canada's contributions to the war effort were needed to help win the war.

### Canadian Women

51. More workers were needed as war factories opened all over Canada. Just as they had done in World War I, Canadian women came to the help of their country. Women willingly took up jobs in the factories which were producing the weapons of war. By 1945, over 1 000 000 Canadian women were in the work force outside the home. Women were being paid the same wages as men. They could earn up to forty-five dollars a week. It took a second war to improve the position of Canadian women.

52. Over 50 000 Canadian women joined the armed forces. Although they did not actually fight, they worked at the front where the fighting was taking place. Hundreds of Canadian women came to the aid of wounded soldiers under fire. Women also took on other important jobs. Elsie MacGill of Vancouver was in charge of a company that produced 1650 war planes. Women also made many personal sacrifices during the war. Silk stockings were very rare in Canada because the silk was needed to make parachutes. Many women showed their spirit of fun when they painted their legs the colour of the stockings. They even painted seams on the backs of their legs!

### Canadian Culture During World War II

53. During World War II, Canadians did not have television sets. They went to the movies to see the news of the war. In 1939, the Canadian government set up the National Film Board (NFB) to produce government films. The NFB produced many short films which showed Canadians how other Canadians were contributing



to the war. These films helped to bring Canadians together. They made many people realize that there were millions of Canadians like themselves who were making sacrifices to win the war.

54. Radio was still the main method of hearing the news of the war. On January 1, 1941, the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC) brought in the first National News on radio. The first radio broadcaster for the National News was Lorne Greene, a famous Canadian actor. Actors John Wayne and Frank Shuster entertained Canadian troops overseas and were a great success. The songs and jokes of the Happy Gang were enjoyed daily on the radio. Movie stars, singers, and bands also helped to make Canadians forget the horrors of war for a few moments.

### **Why Was There A Conscription Crisis in Canada During World War II?**

55. During the 1930's, most Canadians had supported the policy of appeasement and hoped that there would never be another world war. Prime Minister Mackenzie King feared that another war would divide Canadians and destroy the country. In the Abyssinian and Czechoslovakian crises, King had followed a policy of appeasement. However, when Hitler broke the Munich agreement and conquered the rest of Czechoslovakia, King knew that war would likely follow. He was determined to keep Canada united.

56. This was a real challenge. English Canadians were deeply loyal to Britain and remembered Canada's glorious role in World War I. French Canadians were suspicious of all European wars. They remembered how the English majority in Canada had used its power to force conscription on them in World War I. How could King reduce these feelings and bring the two sides together?

57. When World War II began in 1939, Prime Minister King promised that the Canadian Parliament would decide if Canada should declare war. If the Canadian Parliament did vote for war, Prime Minister King promised that a Liberal government would not introduce conscription for overseas fighting. King promised to fight the war in a limited way.

58. Premier Duplessis of Quebec called a provincial election saying that the federal government's war powers were a threat to provincial rights. He did not think that the War Measures Act was necessary. He feared that conscription would be introduced. Duplessis threatened to destroy Canadian unity. The federal Liberals fought back. The Minister of Justice, Ernest Lapointe, urged Quebecers to defeat Duplessis and the Union Nationale. He promised that conscription to fight overseas would not be introduced by the Liberal government in Ottawa. The Quebec voters listened to Lapointe and defeated Duplessis in Quebec. Canadian unity was maintained.

### **Prime Minister Mackenzie King House of Commons, September 8, 1939**

"I wish now to repeat the (promise) I gave in Parliament on behalf of the government on March 30 (1939). The present government believes that conscription of men for overseas service will not be a necessary or an effective step. No such (law) will be introduced by the present (government). We have full faith in the readiness of Canadian men and women to put forward every effort in their power to defend free institutions, and... to resist aggression... which aims at the domination of the world by force."



**Prime Minister Mackenzie  
King's Diary on the fall of  
France, June 16, 1940**

"My heart aches for the people in the British Isles. However, I see... that there is a real possibility of invasion of our (Canadian) shores. An effort will be made to (take) this country as a prize of war.... Defence of this land becomes our most important duty."

*Students in Vancouver public school wear gas masks as a precaution, 1942*



59. The next challenge to the federal government came from Ontario. Premier Hepburn accused the federal government of not doing enough to help Britain fight the war. This showed the deep split between Ontario and Quebec on World War II.

60. Prime Minister King asked the Canadian people to support his war plans in the federal election on March 26, 1940. During the election campaign, King and the Liberals promised to carry on a strong war effort, but they repeated their promise of no conscription for overseas fighting. The Conservatives called for a National or Union Government and for conscription as they had in World War I. The CCF was split over the war. The people overwhelmingly supported King and the Liberals, giving them 51.5 per cent of the total votes and 181 of the 245 seats in the House of Commons.

61. At the start of the war, the Allies wanted Canada to contribute food and weapons for the war. On the military side, Canada agreed to train the pilots and crews for the other countries of the British Commonwealth. The British Commonwealth Air Training Plan was a very important and expensive programme. The pilots became members of the Royal Air Force and the Royal Canadian Air Force (RCAF). They defended the skies of Britain, watched over Allied ships, bombed enemy targets, and carried paratroopers in the invasion of France.

62. The Royal Canadian Navy patrolled the Pacific Coast and the North Atlantic with the American and British navies. The Royal Canadian Navy also helped guard Allied ships which crossed the Atlantic in large groups called **convoys**. These convoys carried food, weapons, and soldiers to Britain. The navy had to protect these ships from German U-boats which tried to torpedo them in the hopes of starving Britain into defeat.

63. With all these responsibilities, the government decided to raise a small Canadian army of volunteers. The army's main responsibility would be to defend Canada. These plans pleased Prime Minister King because there would be few casualties and not many additional soldiers required. Conscription would certainly not be necessary. Unfortunately, Canadians did not understand the blitzkrieg and the strength of the German army.

64. With the fall of France in 1940, the situation became desperate. Suddenly, Canada was the second largest country at war with Germany! Britain was under attack and defeat was a real possibility. A total war effort was necessary.

65. The Canadian government decided to introduce conscription for the defence of Canada. These conscripts were soldiers who would have to fight inside Canada but would not be sent overseas. French Canadians had always said that they were willing to fight to defend Canada. Conscription for the defence of Canada was accepted across the country.

66. As the military situation grew worse for the Allies, the government decided to more than double the size of the Canadian army. The Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour meant that more troops were also needed to defend Canada's Pacific coast.

67. Some people were still not satisfied with Canada's war effort in 1942. They demanded the conscription of all able-bodied men so that the sacrifice would be shared equally in all parts of Canada. Some Ministers in King's Cabinet supported conscription because they believed that reinforcements would be needed for the Canadian army during the invasion of Europe. Prime Minister King still did not think that conscription for overseas service was necessary. With the United States in the war, he believed that the Allies would have enough soldiers. King looked for a compromise to keep the Liberal Party, the government, and the country united.

68. Prime Minister King decided to ask the Canadian people to release him from his promises of no conscription for overseas service. A **plebiscite** or a vote on the question was held on April 27, 1942. English and French Canadians were clearly divided on the question of overseas conscription.

69. Prime Minister King told Parliament that the government would change the law to allow people conscripted for Canadian defence to be sent overseas. However, he said that no conscripts would be sent overseas, unless there was a real emergency and, unless no volunteers were available. The first half of this promise was designed to please Quebec. The second half was designed to please English Canada. In the end, it pleased neither and the conscription crisis returned two and a half years later.

70. In the fall of 1944, the Canadian army suffered heavy casualties in Europe. The Minister of Defence, Ralston, announced that there were not enough volunteers and demanded that conscripts be sent overseas. Prime Minister King and many other Cabinet Ministers were still opposed to conscription. Germany was being crushed between the Allied armies of Russia, United States, Britain, and Canada. Prime Minister King fired Ralston and appointed General McNaughton as the new Minister of Defence. King hoped that McNaughton could convince enough conscripts to volunteer to go overseas. When this failed, King finally agreed to send overseas up to 16 000 men who had been conscripted for the defence of Canada. Many Canadians looked down on the conscripted soldiers because they had not volunteered to fight overseas. They called these people "Zombies". Although some of the conscripts resisted going overseas, almost 2500 were sent into battle where they fought and died bravely beside their fellow soldiers.

71. King had finally broken his promise not to send conscripts to fight overseas. However, French Canadians did not resign from the government or riot in the streets as they had in World War I.

### Canadian Plebiscite, 1942

Are you in favour of releasing the government from any obligation arising out of any past commitments restricting the methods of raising men for military service?

YES ☐

NO ☐

Results	Yes	No
Quebec	27%	73%
Rest of Canada	79%	21%

**Prime Minister Mackenzie King, House of Commons, June 10, 1942**

"Not necessarily conscription, but conscription if necessary..."

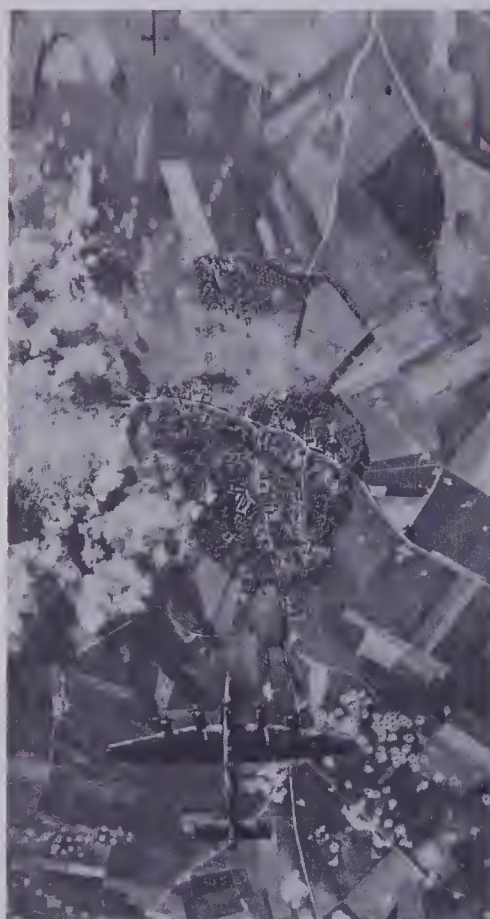




### St. Laurent, 1944

"...believing as I do that whenever the majority...reaches a conclusion...it is proper the minority should accept it and loyally assist in carrying it out..."

TOP: RCAF bomber over France  
BOTTOM: Cemetery at Dieppe



Louis St. Laurent, the leading French Canadian minister, accepted the need for conscription in 1944. Prime Minister King had done his best to avoid conscription. Although most French Canadians did not like this decision, they accepted it.

72. The conscription crisis in World War II had threatened to divide English and French Canadians as it had in World War I, but King's cautious policy prevented violence between the two groups. French Canadians held important positions in the government and helped direct the war effort. Many more French Canadians participated in the Second World War than had joined the First World War. The Liberal government led the country in a great effort and they received their reward when the Canadian people re-elected them in the 1945 federal election.

### How Was Peace Restored?

73. The world had been torn apart by the second World War. The world had survived, but 33 000 000 people had been killed. The countries had fought over land, resources, people, and power. Men, women, and children on all sides had suffered heartbreak, pain, hunger, fear, injury, and death. New and horrible methods of killing had been invented to try and win the war at any cost. Gas chambers, rockets, fire bombing, and the atomic bomb killed millions of innocent people. How could another horrible world war be prevented? Or would the human race destroy itself?

74. During the war, the Allied powers led by the U.S.A., the U.S.S.R., and Britain had agreed to destroy the Axis powers of Germany, Japan, and Italy. The Allies did not agree on the best way to keep the peace after their victory.

75. President Roosevelt wanted to set up an organization of all the countries of the world called the United Nations (U.N.). He hoped that the U.N. would be able to settle disagreements between countries peacefully and avoid another war. The U.N. also planned to help the poorer countries of the world in providing better food, health care, and jobs for their people. President Roosevelt knew that the League of Nations, set up after World War I, had failed to prevent the second world war. He believed that the strongest countries in the world must all be members of the United Nations for it to succeed.

76. The strongest countries among the Allied Powers were given permanent seats on the Security Council of the United Nations. They would have the power to veto any actions suggested by the other members. The U.S.A., U.S.S.R., Britain, France, and China were given permanent seats with veto power.

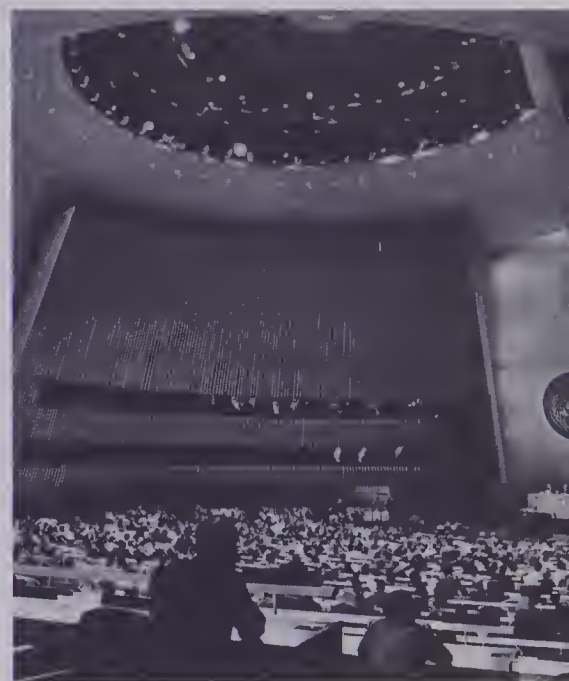
77. All member countries were represented in the General Assembly of the United Nations. The General Assembly could discuss major issues of concern to different countries. However, the Security Council had to agree on any action which the U.N.

would take. Countries were elected by the General Assembly to also sit on the Security Council, but the elected members did not have a veto. Only the five great powers had the right to veto and prevent U.N. actions.

78. The United Nations was Roosevelt's dream for the future. Canadians, led by King and St. Laurent, strongly supported the creation of the United Nations in 1945. They dreamed of a world at peace.

79. The U.S.S.R. also agreed to join the United Nations in 1945. However, relations between the U.S.S.R. and the other Allies rapidly grew worse. The U.S.S.R. was very suspicious of other countries; it had had the most people killed during World War II.

80. Stalin was determined to keep Germany and the other countries of eastern Europe very weak so that it would be difficult to invade the U.S.S.R. again. As the U.S.S.R. drove the Germans out of eastern Europe, they took over these countries. Then the U.S.S.R. set up communist governments in these countries, with tight military, political, and economic ties to the U.S.S.R. The people in these countries lost the freedom to select whatever



*General Assembly, United Nations*

#### DEATHS IN THE SECOND WORLD WAR (1939-1945)

Estimated  
Number of Dead

Jews murdered in Nazi concentration camps	7 000 000
Russian soldiers killed in battle	5 500 000
German soldiers killed in battle	3 500 000
Polish civilians murdered by the Nazis	3 000 000
Chinese military and civilian deaths	2 500 000
Russian prisoners-of-war murdered by the Nazis	2 500 000
Russian civilians murdered by the Nazis	2 000 000
European soldiers other than Germans or Russians killed in battle	2 000 000
Japanese soldiers killed in battle	1 500 000
Yugoslav civilians murdered by the Nazis	1 300 000
Russian civilians dead of starvation and bombardment in the siege of Leningrad	800 000
Austrian, Italian, Hungarian, Rumanian, Dutch, Belgian, Bulgarian, and Finnish civilian dead	600 000
Japanese civilians killed in American bombing raids	550 000
German civilians killed in Anglo-American bombing raids	550 000
British and British Empire soldiers killed in battle (of these, 42 000 were Canadians)	500 000
American soldiers killed in battle	300 000
Czech civilians murdered by the Nazis	250 000
Greek civilians murdered by the Nazis	140 000
British civilians killed in German air raids	60 000

(Approximately) 33 500 000





leaders they wanted or to make alliances with any country other than the U.S.S.R. This made the U.S.S.R. feel much safer. However, it made France, Britain, and the U.S.A. very nervous. They were worried that the U.S.S.R. might try to take over the rest of western Europe.

81. Britain and France supported the creation of the United Nations. The French, led by General De Gaulle, wanted to make certain that Germany would never again invade France as it had in 1870, 1914, and 1940. The Allies decided to keep armies in Germany after the war. The U.S.A., U.S.S.R., Britain, and later, France divided Germany into zones or areas of occupation which were run by armies. The Allies could not agree on a final peace treaty which would re-unite Germany. As relations between the U.S.S.R. and the other Allies grew worse, Germany was left divided. East Germany became a communist country under the control and protection of the U.S.S.R. The American, British, and French zones were united to create West Germany. There are still two Germanies today.



82. In the Pacific, the U.S.A. sent an army to occupy Japan. General MacArthur was given the job of rebuilding Japan with a democratic government like the American government. The American government also invested billions of dollars to rebuild the Japanese economy and to make certain that Japan would remain friendly to the Americans. The American army remained in Japan until 1955 when Japan signed a final peace treaty.

83. Canada had supported the policies of the U.S.A. and Britain in the United Nations, in Europe, and in the Pacific. Canadians had fought bravely and worked hard to help the Allies win the final victory. Canada was not as strong as the other world powers but it was not weak either. About 1 000 000 Canadians had served in the armed forces, and thousands of planes, rifles, and machine guns had been produced. Canadians began to think of their country as a **middle power** with a great deal to offer the rest of the world. Canadians were sure that they could help make the world a safer, healthier, and happier place.

84. World War II had changed Canada's relations with both the U.S.A. and Britain. Britain was weakened by the war. Britain had depended on billions of dollars in loans and gifts from the U.S.A., Canada, and other countries to help pay for its war effort. By the end of the war, Britain had become much closer to the U.S.A., but Britain was no longer equal to the U.S.A. in power, wealth, or influence.

85. During World War II, Canada had also become much closer to the U.S.A. Canada and the U.S.A. set up the Permanent Joint Board of Defence to defend the two countries during the war. They still work together today.

*Churchill, Roosevelt, and Stalin at Yalta, 1945*





86. Even closer ties were created in trading and industrial areas during the war. Canada and the U.S.A. shared contracts to produce weapons, planes, ships, tanks, trucks, and many other war materials. This meant that Canadian companies produced parts for American weapons and the American companies produced parts for Canadian weapons. This allowed the two countries to produce more war materials faster. Many Canadian businesses became closely tied to American businesses and many Canadian workers depended on sales to the U.S.A. for their jobs. These close ties seemed natural and necessary while they were fighting to defeat Germany, Italy, and Japan. But the ties created during the war could not be cut easily after the war.

---

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—21

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| 1. Benito Mussolini | —went to the League of Nations for help against the invasion of his country |
| Adolf Hitler        | —was the Canadian representative at the League of Nations in 1935           |
| W.A. Riddell        | —wrote a book called <i>Mein Kampf</i>                                      |
| Haile Selassie      | —was the leader of the Fascists in Italy                                    |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Fascists
  - (a) were types of weapons used by the enemy against Allied soldiers
  - (b) believed that people should be controlled by one political party and one leader
  - (c) were people who wore brown shirts
  - (d) were Japanese imperialists

3. A dictator
  - (a) must be obeyed by the people
  - (b) is a person who believes in democracy
  - (c) believes in freedom of speech and freedom of the press
  - (d) is someone who betrays his country
4. An aggressor is
  - (a) a country which gives into another country without a struggle
  - (b) a country which attacks another country
  - (c) the type of country admired by the League of Nations
  - (d) a term which is frequently used to describe Canada
5. Isolation
  - (a) is a policy of taking land away from countries against their will
  - (b) is clearly seen in Article X of the League of Nations policy
  - (c) was strongly supported by President Woodrow Wilson
  - (d) means that a country does not become involved with other countries

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

6. The Treaty of Versailles was an important cause of World War II because
  - (a) Germany did not obtain all the land that had been promised
  - (b) it humiliated the losers of World War I
  - (c) it did not stop the communists
  - (d) France lost too much territory

7. Hitler received the support of many German people during the 1930's because
  - (a) he hated communists and some rich people supported him
  - (b) Hitler was a powerful speaker and persuaded people to support him
  - (c) the Nazi government created jobs
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

8. What evidence is there to support the idea that the Allies treated Germany very badly when World War I ended?
9. What methods did Mussolini use to become dictator of Italy?
10. What could the League of Nations do to try and stop an aggressor country?
11. (a) Why did the U.S.A. fail to join the League of Nations?  
(b) What happened when the U.S.A. did not join the League?
12. (a) Why did the members of the League fail to help China in 1931?  
(b) What happened when the League failed to help China?

### Paragraphs 22—29

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Neville Chamberlain — Prime Minister of Canada during World War II
- W.L. Mackenzie King — went to Munich in 1938 and agreed to give Germany part of Czechoslovakia

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Appeasement
  - (a) means to give up something in the hope nothing else will be demanded
  - (b) is the word which is used to describe the takeover of Austria by Germany
  - (c) is an arms race
  - (d) was an idea which Winston Churchill supported

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Several countries supported a policy of appeasement toward Germany because
  - (a) they wanted to avoid another world war at any cost
  - (b) they were busy looking after their own weak economies
  - (c) they thought Germany had a right to some of the territory it had lost in World War I
  - (d) all of the above

#### Question

4. What did Hitler do to break the Treaty of Versailles?

### Paragraphs 30—43

#### Knowing the People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Winston Churchill — was the leader of Russia during World War II
- Joseph Stalin — was Prime Minister of Britain during World War II
- Franklin D. Roosevelt — was the American President who declared war on Japan in 1941
- Dwight Eisenhower — led the American attack against the Japanese during World War II
- General Rommel — was the British general who defeated the Germans in North Africa in 1943
- General Montgomery — was in command of the Allied invasion of Europe in 1944
- General MacArthur — was the American President who decided to drop the atomic bomb on Japan
- Harry Truman — was the German general who was defeated in North Africa



## Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A blitzkrieg
  - (a) is a slow method used by Germany to fight a war
  - (b) was a battle that was fought in the air over Britain in 1940
  - (c) is another term to describe the "Phoney War" of 1940
  - (d) was a fast attack by Germany using tanks and aeroplanes
3. Radar is
  - (a) a machine that detects approaching metal objects
  - (b) the name given to the attack on Russia by Germany
  - (c) the word used to describe communists who live in Russia
4. Anti-semitism
  - (a) is a form of discrimination
  - (b) was used by the Nazis
  - (c) is a hatred of Jewish people
  - (d) all of the above

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

5. After Hitler invaded Poland in 1939 there was very little fighting until 1940 because
  - (a) the Luftwaffe was experiencing mechanical difficulties
  - (b) Hitler was trying to persuade Britain and France not to fight Germany
  - (c) the opposing sides were preparing themselves for the fighting
  - (d) none of the above
6. Dunkirk was important because
  - (a) it proved that the German blitzkrieg was not a good method of fighting a war
  - (b) 300 000 troops were rescued who would fight Hitler again
  - (c) it showed that Churchill was a stronger leader than Hitler
  - (d) it permitted Germany to defeat and capture the French and British armies
7. In 1941, Hitler invaded Russia because
  - (a) he hated communist governments
  - (b) he expected a quick victory
  - (c) he wanted Russia's rich resources
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

8. Why was Poland conquered so quickly?
9. Why was Canada able to declare war on its own in 1939?
10. Why was the Battle of Britain so important?
11. Why had Hitler made an alliance with Stalin in 1939?
12. Why did the Japanese attack Pearl Harbour?
13. What did the Allies learn from the Dieppe Raid?
14. How did "D-Day" show that Germany could not win the war?
15. Why did the Japanese people refuse to surrender before the atomic bombs were dropped on their country?
16. Why did the U.S.A. decide to drop two atomic bombs on Japan?

## Paragraphs 44-54

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Rationing
  - (a) takes place when storeowners give out coupons to their customers when goods are purchased
  - (b) takes place when there are too many goods
  - (c) takes place when the government controls the sale of goods
  - (d) is a form of entertainment

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Canada brought in wage and price controls in 1941 to
  - (a) raise the taxes on workers' wages
  - (b) take advantage of people during the emergency
  - (c) control inflation
  - (d) none of the above

## Questions

3. How did the government control inflation in Canada during World War II?
4. How did rationing help the Allies win the war?
5.
  - (a) What is a Victory bond?
  - (b) How did the sale of Victory bonds help Canada win the war?
6. How did women contribute to the war effort?

## Paragraphs 55—72

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. Mackenzie King | —Quebec premier who worried that the federal government had too much power during the war        |
| Duplessis         | —was a Canadian Army general who became Minister of Defence                                      |
| Lapointe          | —promised Quebecers no conscription for overseas service if they defeated Premier Duplessis      |
| Hepburn           | —was the French Canadian Cabinet Minister who accepted conscription for overseas service in 1944 |
| Ralston           | —decided to hold a plebiscite to get out of his promise of no overseas conscription              |
| McNaughton        | —was the Premier of Ontario who attacked P.M. King for his limited war policy                    |
| St. Laurent       | —was fired as Minister of Defence because he demanded overseas conscription in 1944              |

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A convoy is a
  - (a) large group of trucks travelling down the highway together
  - (b) pack of German U-boats
  - (c) large group of ships travelling together for protection
3. A plebiscite is
  - (a) an election to see who will make the best Prime Minister
  - (b) a vote to see who will become the next Member of Parliament in your riding
  - (c) a vote on a question to which people must answer yes or no
  - (d) a place where people relax and have a good time

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. P.M. King and the Liberals won the federal election of 1940 because
  - (a) the CCF was opposed to the war
  - (b) they promised a strong effort, but no overseas conscription
  - (c) the Conservatives opposed conscription
  - (d) they promised a strong effort and conscription for fighting overseas
5. The Allies' military position became desperate in 1940 because
  - (a) Germany captured France
  - (b) Japan bombed Pearl Harbour
  - (c) Russia joined Germany and invaded Britain
  - (d) the Italian navy defeated the British navy
6. P.M. King opposed conscription for overseas fighting in 1942 because
  - (a) he had promised not to introduce conscription for overseas fighting in 1939 and 1940
  - (b) the U.S.A. had entered the war and could supply lots of soldiers
  - (c) he was afraid that it would divide English and French Canadians, split the country, and weaken the war effort
  - (d) all of the above
7. Prime Minister King introduced conscription in 1944 because
  - (a) Ralston resigned as Minister of Defence
  - (b) the Allies were losing the war in Europe
  - (c) General McNaughton could not find 16 000 volunteers
  - (d) 50 000 Canadian soldiers had been killed fighting against the German army

### Questions

8. Why did Prime Minister King promise no conscription for overseas fighting in 1939 and 1940?
9. How were Duplessis' and Hepburn's attitudes to World War II different?
10. Why did P.M. King introduce conscription for home defence?
11. Why did the Canadian government decide to double the size of the Canadian army?
12. Why did P.M. King call a plebiscite on conscription in 1942?
13. What did the results of the plebiscite tell P.M. King and all Canadians?
14. How did French Canadians respond when P.M. King brought in conscription in 1944?



## Paragraphs 73—86

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| 1. Roosevelt | —was asked to rebuild Japan with a democratic government                  |
| De Gaulle    | —Russian leader who wanted to prevent any future invasions of his country |
| Stalin       | —American President who suggested the United Nations                      |
| MacArthur    | —French general who did not want Germany to invade France ever again      |

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A middle power is a country that is
- (a) surrounded by enemies
  - (b) strong, but not a world power
  - (c) fairly weak
  - (d) allied with a world power

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The U.S.A., Britain, and Canada wanted a United Nations to
- (a) stop Russia from taking over eastern Europe
  - (b) keep the poorer countries from stealing from the rich countries
  - (c) settle disagreements between countries peacefully
  - (d) punish the losing countries of Germany, Italy, and Japan
4. Canada had become much closer to the U.S.A. during World War II because
- (a) the Americans had promised to protect Canada if it was attacked
  - (b) together they had created the Permanent Joint Defence Board
  - (c) they shared the production of many war materials
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

- 5. Why was the second World War so horrible?
- 6. What was the United Nations set up to do?
- 7. What does the General Assembly of the U.N. do and what does the Security Council do?
- 8. Why did the U.S.S.R. want to prevent another invasion of its territory?
- 9. Why are there two German countries today?
- 10. Why did the Americans keep an army in Japan until 1955?
- 11. Why was Canada considered a middle power?

### USING SOURCES

The following statement was taught to members of the Nazi Party and German citizens.

#### THE NATIONAL SOCIALIST COMMANDMENTS, 1940

The National Socialist commandments:

The Führer is always right!  
Never go against discipline!  
Don't waste your time in idle chatter or in self-satisfying criticism, take hold and do your work!  
Be proud but not arrogant!  
Let the program be your dogma (belief). It demands of you the greatest devotion to the movement.  
You are a representative of the party; control your bearing and your manner accordingly!  
Let loyalty and unselfishness be your highest precepts!  
Practice true comradeship and you will be a true socialist!  
Treat your racial comrades as you wish to be treated by them!  
In battle be hard and silent!  
Spirit is not unruliness!  
That which promotes the movement, Germany, and your people, is right!  
If you act according to these commandments, you are a true soldier of your Führer.

### Questions

- 1. Who was the most important official in Germany?
- 2. What was his name in 1940?
- 3. How should a good National Socialist (Nazi) act?
- 4. What should a Nazi not do?
- 5. (a) Who would be a Nazi's "racial comrade"?  
(b) Who would be a Nazi's "racial enemy"?
- 6. What effect would these "commandments" have on the minds of members of the Nazi Party?

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

You are a Canadian soldier, captured at Dieppe on August 19, 1942. You are now a prisoner of war (POW) living in a prisoner of war camp, Stalag 13, in Germany. Read about the experiences of several Canadian POWs below.

"I just had no contact with German officers—or I should say, any contact was usually a bad one for me. They weren't the nicest guys in the world. But the average (German) guard, yeah. He was okay. ..."

"They had the guns and the dogs and the barbed wire, of course, but we were all hungry. ... Food. They were hungry too. ..."

"A lot of them (guards) spoke English. Some of us learned German. We exchanged notes. ... The German might tell the Canadian ... what his son and daughter were doing and from that the Canadian would have some idea of how his own children were growing up. ..."

"The whole exercise was to break out. The Germans expected it, ... All we had to do was get to Switzerland or get to Spain. ... One of the things most difficult to decide was how to get rid of dirt when a tunnel was being built. ..."

"And they understood, and we did, too, that if they caught us escaping, they would shoot us."

"And what's funny about ... guards clubbing a guy just because they don't like the way he looked, or maybe the guard just happened to get up on the wrong side of bed that morning? Holding up the mail? Stealing our rations ... Clubbing our guys with their rifle butts? I got a broken nose out of it, ... a lot of guys worse. ..."

"If your son was in a German prison camp you could send him parcels. I think it was one every three months. These parcels were great ... for the boys because they knew people at home, their families, were thinking of them. The families would buy food that would keep, and they'd send jams and jellies and hard candies too. There wasn't all that much you could send. ... Tinned butter. And love, lots of love."

"... The parcels, every parcel that went over was checked."

1. Now write a letter to your family back in Canada. Include the following topics in your letter:
  - what happened on the beaches at Dieppe
  - how you were captured
  - how you were taken to Germany
  - what you do in the camp
  - what things you would like your family to send you through the Red Cross
  - how you are treated by the guards
  - how well the German people are standing up to Allied bombing
  - how the Russian attack on the Eastern front is affecting Germany
2. You are now a German officer in a prisoner of war camp. You must read the prisoners' mail before sending it on to their families in Canada. Your job is to take out or censor any references which would give away useful information to the enemy. Using the letter you wrote as a POW, censor all items that deal with the following:
  - the location of the camp
  - harsh treatment of prisoners
  - war conditions in Germany
  - criticisms of Adolf Hitler
  - criticisms of German government and Nazi Party
  - criticisms of the German army

The wife of a Canadian POW describes the type of letter she used to receive. Her comments will give you some idea of how the letter should read after you have censored it.

"The cards and letters couldn't say much. Just a few words. Feeling fine. Thanks for the socks, the parcel, the candy, the photograph. Things like that. You treasured them, I guess, they didn't actually mean that much. Only that he was alive. The words themselves didn't seem to mean too much. And then the censor would cut them, cutting out words and you never knew why. For instance, in one camp there was a censor who cut off the signature. Kenny would sign it "Kenny" and this censor would cut off everything but the "K". Oh, it was the little things like that that used to irritate me."



## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### Reading the Time Line

Review the time line and then answer these questions.

1. In what year did Japan invade China?
2. What country did Italy attack in 1935?
3. What country did Germany take over in 1938?
4. What event took place just before Britain, France, and Canada declared war on Germany?

5. In what year did Germany invade Russia?
6. In what year did Germany begin to lose the war?
7. What event brought the U.S.A. into the war?
8. When was a plebiscite on conscription held in Canada?
9. In what year did V-E Day and V-J Day occur?
10. When was the United Nations created?

## TIME LINE

### World War II

	1919	—The Treaty of Versailles ends World War I —The League of Nations is created
	1922	—Benito Mussolini becomes leader of Italy
	1931	—Japan invades China
	1933	—Adolf Hitler becomes leader of Germany
	1935	—Italy invades Abyssinia
	1936	—German troops march into the Rhineland
	1938	—Germany occupies Austria —Germany takes over Sudetenland, Czechoslovakia
	1939	—Hitler takes over the rest of Czechoslovakia —Germany invades Poland —Britain and France declare war on Germany —Canada declares war on Germany —Prime Minister King promises no conscription for Canadians —The War Measures Act is brought in by Parliament
	1940	—King and his Liberals win the election —France is invaded by Germany —The evacuation of Dunkirk —France surrenders to Germany —The Battle of Britain
	1941	—The first CBC National News broadcast is given —Germany invades Russia —Japan attacks Pearl Harbour —The U.S.A. declares war on Japan —300 Canadian troops are killed by the Japanese troops before Hong Kong surrenders to Japan —Price and wage controls are brought in by the Canadian government

	1942	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Plebiscite is held on conscription in Canada</li> <li>—Rationing is brought in by the Canadian government</li> <li>—The Dieppe Raid takes place</li> <li>—The last car is produced in Canada until the war ends</li> </ul>
	1943	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—German army surrenders to the Russians at Stalingrad</li> <li>—German and Italian armies are defeated in North Africa</li> <li>—Allied invasion of Sicily and southern Italy takes place</li> </ul>
	1944	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Limited conscription is brought in by the Canadian government</li> <li>—D-Day—the invasion of Europe begins</li> </ul>
	1945	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>—Mussolini is killed</li> <li>—Hitler commits suicide</li> <li>—V-E Day—Germany surrenders</li> <li>—The U.S.A. drops atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki</li> <li>—V-J Day—Japan surrenders</li> <li>—King and his Liberals win another federal election</li> <li>—United Nations is created</li> </ul>



# UNIT THREE

## Modern Canadian Concerns 1945-Present



## CHAPTER TWELVE

# Canada and the World

AIM: What Was Canada's Place In The World After World War II?

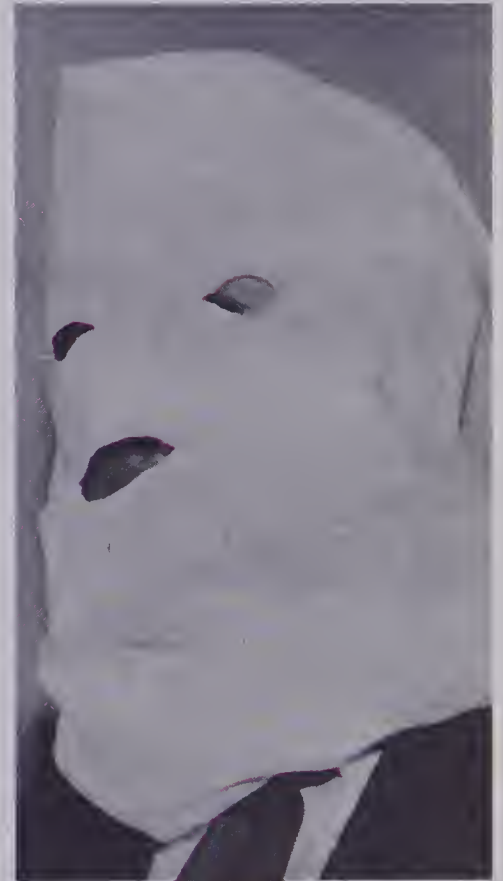
### The Cold War

1. As World War II came to an end, the Soviet armies took over the countries of eastern Europe. The Russians did not allow the people in these countries to choose the type of governments they wanted. Communist governments were set up in these countries. Canada and the U.S.A. were afraid that the communists would take over the rest of Germany and Europe.

2. The fear of communists was greatly increased when a spy case took place in Canada in September, 1945. This case involved a Russian named Igor Gouzenko who worked for the Russian government in Ottawa. He liked Canada and did not want to return to Russia. He decided to **defect** (desert his country). He asked the Canadian government to protect him and his family. In return for its protection, he gave the Canadian government secret files which he had stolen from the Russians. These files showed that there were Soviet spies in the Canadian, American, and British governments. They were stealing important information and handing it over to the Russian government. The Russians did not have the atomic bomb and were using spies to steal the plans to make one. A Montreal MP, Fred Rose, was one of those who was found guilty of spying. He was sentenced to six years in jail. Even though many Russian spies were caught, many more escaped. By 1949, Russia had the atomic bomb.

3. Russia had been Canada's ally during World War II and had helped to defeat Hitler and the Nazis. However, when people in North America and in western Europe saw Russia using spies and taking over other countries, they no longer trusted Russia. This distrust between the western countries and the U.S.S.R. was the beginning of the **Cold War**. No war was actually fought, but the two sides did not like or trust each other.

4. Right after World War II, the U.S.A. was the most powerful country in the world. Until 1949, it was the only country with atomic bombs. The U.S.A. was called a **super-power**. The U.S.S.R. was the second most powerful country and was also a super-power. It had the largest army in the world. Many countries were allies or under the influence of these two strong countries.



*Igor Gouzenko*





President Harry S. Truman



Some poor countries were not under the control of either of the super-powers and they were called the **Third World** countries.

5. Many people thought that war would soon break out between the U.S.A. and the U.S.S.R. In 1947, communists tried to take over Greece and Turkey. President Truman of the U.S.A. gave help to these countries in their fight against the communists. President Truman also brought in the Marshall Plan to strengthen the European countries. Billions of dollars, in money and equipment, were sent by the U.S.A. and Canada to help rebuild Europe. They gave help, not only to their allies, but to Italy and West Germany.

### NATO

6. The United Nations which had been set up in 1945 did not have armies and weapons to defend its members against attack. As the Cold War deepened, the free countries in the West felt that

they needed a military alliance. In 1949, the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) was formed. Prime Minister Louis St. Laurent encouraged the creation of NATO. The members of this alliance promised to help each other if they were attacked. Canada and the U.S.A. showed their support by placing troops and planes in European countries. They are still there.

#### MEMBERS OF NATO

U.S.A.	France	Holland
Canada	Iceland	Norway
Belgium	Italy	Portugal
Denmark	Luxembourg	Great Britain
Greece (1952)	Turkey (1952)	West Germany (1955)

#### MEMBERS OF THE WARSAW PACT

U.S.S.R.	Rumania	Hungary
East Germany	Czechoslovakia	Bulgaria
Poland	Albania	



Louis St. Laurent

7. The U.S.S.R. set up its military alliance in 1955 called the Warsaw Pact. It was made up of countries that Russia had taken over at the end of World War II.

### The Korean War

8. In 1950, a war broke out which many people thought was the start of World War III. Korea had been owned by Japan until the end of World War II. Then, Russia occupied North Korea and set up a communist government. The U.S.A. set up a democratic government in South Korea. In 1950, the communists from North Korea invaded South Korea and the U.S.A. asked the United Nations to have its members send troops to stop the communists. When the American request was made, the Russian representative on the Security Council was absent. He was **boycotting** the meetings. He had stopped attending the meetings because the United Nations would not recognize communist China (Red China). The United Nations did order the North Koreans to withdraw their troops from South Korea and asked its members to send troops to defend South Korea. If the Russian representative had been at the Security Council, he would have vetoed this request.

9. General Douglas MacArthur, the American general, led the troops of sixteen U.N. member countries against the North Korean invaders. By 1953, nearly 25 000 Canadians had been sent to Korea. However, neither side won the war. There was a deadlock. In 1953, the Korean War came to an end and the borders between North and South Korea were nearly the same as they had been before the war. The communists had been stopped but Korea remained a divided country.

#### KOREAN WAR





## The Suez Crisis

10. In 1956, Colonel Nasser, the leader of Egypt, **nationalized** the Suez Canal in Egypt. The government took over the canal from the British company. Britain had owned the canal and both Britain and France were angry that Egypt had taken it over. They wanted control of the canal to be certain that their ships would be able to pass through the canal to trade with the East. However, Nasser wanted the canal because it went through Egypt and he felt it belonged to Egypt.

11. In 1948, Israel had been made into a country by the United Nations. It was to be a home for the Jews who had escaped the Nazis during World War II. However, the land that was used to make Israel a country had been occupied by Arabs for hundreds of years. The Arabs were upset because their lands had been taken away. When Israel was created, war broke out between the Arabs and the Jews. The Arab countries surrounding Israel saw it as an enemy country.

12. Britain, France, and Israel made a secret agreement to invade Egypt. In 1956, Israel attacked Egypt while British and French troops took over the Suez Canal. The invasion was criticized by most countries, including Canada, the U.S.A., and the U.S.S.R. The U.S.S.R. threatened to help Egypt if the British and French troops did not leave Egypt. A very dangerous situation existed.

13. Something had to be done. Lester B. Pearson was Minister of External Affairs in St. Laurent's government. He went to the U.N. headquarters in New York City, and suggested



THE SUEZ CANAL

that Britain, France, and Israel withdraw their troops from Egypt. He also suggested that the members of the United Nations send a small peace-keeping army to Egypt. It would stay between the armies of Israel and Egypt on their borders and try to keep the peace. The United Nations accepted Pearson's ideas and Britain, France, and Israel agreed to withdraw their troops. A small army was created, called the United Nations Emergency Force (UNEF), and it was sent to Egypt. Canadian troops were members of UNEF. The United Nations had been successful in ending a war and it brought peace to the Middle East for a short time. In 1957, L.B. Pearson won an important award called the Nobel Prize For Peace for his suggestions to the United Nations. Since 1956, Canada has contributed troops many times to the UNEF which still tries to keep peace in the world.

#### AID BY CANADA IN UNITED NATIONS PEACE-KEEPING OPERATIONS

Date	Area	Operation
1949-	KASHMIR	U.N. Military Observer Group, India/Pakistan
1950-54	KOREA	U.N. Command, Korea
1954-	PALESTINE	U.N. Truce Supervisory Organization
1956-67	EGYPT	U.N. Emergency Force I
1958-59	LEBANON	U.N. Observer Group in Lebanon
1960-64	CONGO	U.N. Operation in the Congo
1962-63	WEST NEW GUINEA	U.N. Temporary Executive Administration
1963-64	YEMEN	U.N. Observer Mission Yemen
1964-	CYPRUS	U.N. Force in Cyprus
1965-66	INDIA/PAKISTAN	U.N. India/Pakistan Observer Mission
1973-	MIDDLE EAST	U.N. Emergency Force II
1974-	MIDDLE EAST	U.N. Disengagement Observer Force



*Lester and Maryon Pearson admire Nobel Prize for Peace*

### The British Commonwealth of Nations

14. In 1931, the British government passed a law called the Statute of Westminster. This law stated that Britain no longer had control over countries like Canada. British colonies which had become countries were now independent of Britain. However, countries like Canada, Australia, New Zealand, and South Africa wanted to keep some ties with each other and with Great Britain.



Together these countries formed the British Commonwealth of Nations. These countries co-operated and traded with each other.

15. After World War II, most of Britain's colonies in Asia, Africa, and the Caribbean became independent countries. Most of them joined the British Commonwealth and recognized the British monarch, George VI, as the head of the Commonwealth. Today, Commonwealth countries still co-operate and trade with each other. They also hold meetings to exchange ideas and make long-term plans. The Colombo Plan was made in 1950 to help poor and under-developed countries in the Commonwealth. The richer countries, like Canada, promised to help poorer members. Money, equipment, and experts are sent to these countries. For example, a cement factory and a hydro-electric plant were built in Pakistan and a nuclear power plant was built in India. By 1973, Canada had given these countries \$2 000 000 000 through the Colombo Plan.

16. Political decisions are also made by the British Commonwealth which influence other countries. In 1961, Prime Minister John Diefenbaker led other countries in dismissing South Africa from the Commonwealth. South Africa is an **apartheid** country which discriminates against black and "coloured" people. Canada is against countries in which a small part of the population, in this case white, does not treat members of all races equally.

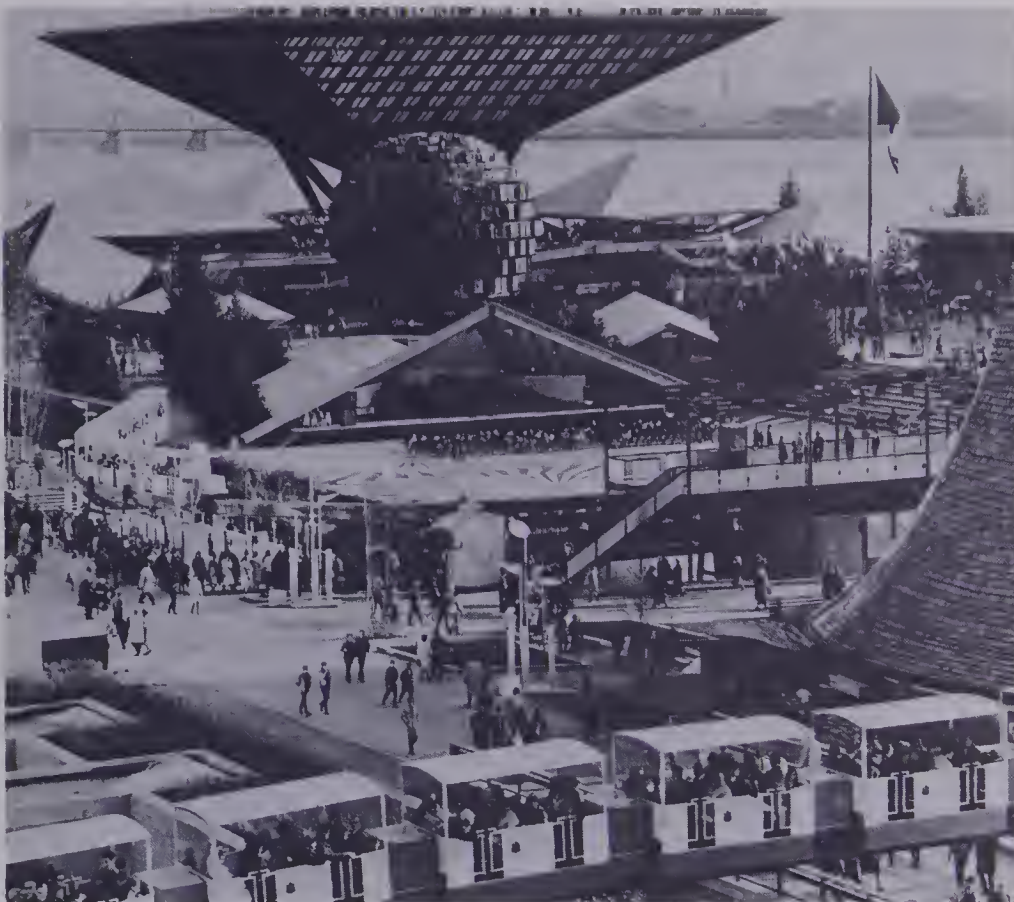
17. The Commonwealth countries hold events which increase their understanding and friendship for each other. In 1978, the Commonwealth Games took place in Edmonton, Alberta, and most of the Commonwealth countries sent their athletes to compete. However, some members boycotted the Games because they wanted the Commonwealth to take stronger actions against apartheid countries. Today, Canada is an important member of the Commonwealth. It will be interesting for Canadians to see how the Commonwealth countries work together in the future.

### Canada Greets the World

18. Canadians have played a very active part in the world since 1940. In 1967, Canada had the chance to show off to the world. Expo '67 was held to celebrate Canada's hundredth birthday, its centennial. This was a world fair held in Montreal to celebrate the achievements of men and women throughout the world. The countries of the world were invited to help Canadians celebrate. The theme of the fair was "Man and His World".

19. Montreal built a beautiful park on two islands in the St. Lawrence River. Altogether, 62 countries came to show the achievements of their artists, architects, designers, engineers, and scientists. Many national leaders came to Canada to open their country's display and 50 306 648 visitors came to Expo. Canadians were proud to see the displays of the federal and provincial governments beside the displays of other countries.





20. The great success of Expo '67 encouraged Mayor Jean Drapeau to hold the 1976 Olympics in Montreal. The facilities for the Olympics were excellent, but extremely expensive. A beautiful 70 000 seat stadium, 3 swimming pools, and an Olympic Village for the athletes were built as part of the project. Costs ran out of control and were the most expensive in the history of the Olympics. The Games cost \$1 500 000 000. The citizens of Montreal were left with a \$200 000 000 debt. Nevertheless, the Olympic Games were a great success. For the competition, 10 000 athletes and coaches came from 130 countries. The teams from the U.S.S.R., U.S.A., and East Germany won the most medals and finished first, second, and third. Canadian athletes won five silver and six bronze medals and finished thirteenth. Over 1 000 000 000 people around the world heard the games on radio or watched them on television.

21. Fortunately, the games were peaceful. At the 1972 Olympics in Munich, West Germany, **terrorists** attacked and killed eleven Israeli athletes. Terrorists are people who believe in using violence and murder to gain changes in governments. Heavy security helped to prevent terrorist attacks at Montreal. Twenty-seven African countries boycotted the Montreal Olympics because New Zealand athletes had visited apartheid South Africa. The 1976 Olympic Games were still a great success and gave millions of people around the world a brief look at Canada.

TOP LEFT: Expo '67

TOP RIGHT: Jean Drapeau

BOTTOM: Olympic village



## China

22. In 1949, Mao Tse Tung had won a long civil war against General Chiang Kai-shek and set up a communist government in China. A Canadian doctor and communist, Norman Bethune, had fought with Mao in the 1930's. Dr. Bethune trained Chinese doctors and paramedics. His training methods were very successful and he is honoured today as a great hero in China. However, most Canadians saw the communist victory in China as part of a communist plan to take over the world. The Canadian government joined with the U.S.A. in supporting Chiang Kai-shek and his army on the island of Formosa (Taiwan).

23. However, in the late 1950's, the Canadian government decided to sell grain to the communist Chinese government. Prime Minister Diefenbaker agreed to the first sales and they have continued ever since. The Chinese communists had broken their friendly relations with the Russians by 1963, but they were still very suspicious of the U.S.A. and the West. The Vietnam War increased China's suspicion of the U.S.A. in the 1960's. Prime Minister Pearson thought about recognizing communist China but the Vietnam War, American opposition, and Canadian fear of communism delayed this decision. In 1970, Prime Minister Trudeau and the Canadian government did recognize communist China. The United States recognized communist China two years later. Canadians have tried to increase trade with communist China in the 1970's and 1980's. Canadian companies want to sell manufactured products to the one billion people in China. However, they must now compete against businessmen from Japan, South Korea, U.S.A., and Europe.



*Mao Tse Tung and P.M. Trudeau,  
1973*

## The Middle East

24. Canada recognized the new country of Israel in 1948. This new country became a homeland for Jews who had been discriminated against around the world. Israel's Arab neighbours refused to recognize this new country. Many wars followed in 1948-49, 1956, 1967, and 1973, all of which Israel won. At first, Canadian opinion strongly supported Israel as a small country surrounded by angry neighbours. More recently, some Canadians have also recognized the rights of the Palestinian Arabs who lost their land when Israel was created. The problems of the Palestinian Arabs who live in refugee camps in the Gaza strip, Jordan, and Lebanon must be solved. Both the Israelis and the Palestinians have the right to a homeland and to live in peace. The violence and terrorism on both sides disturb Canadians.

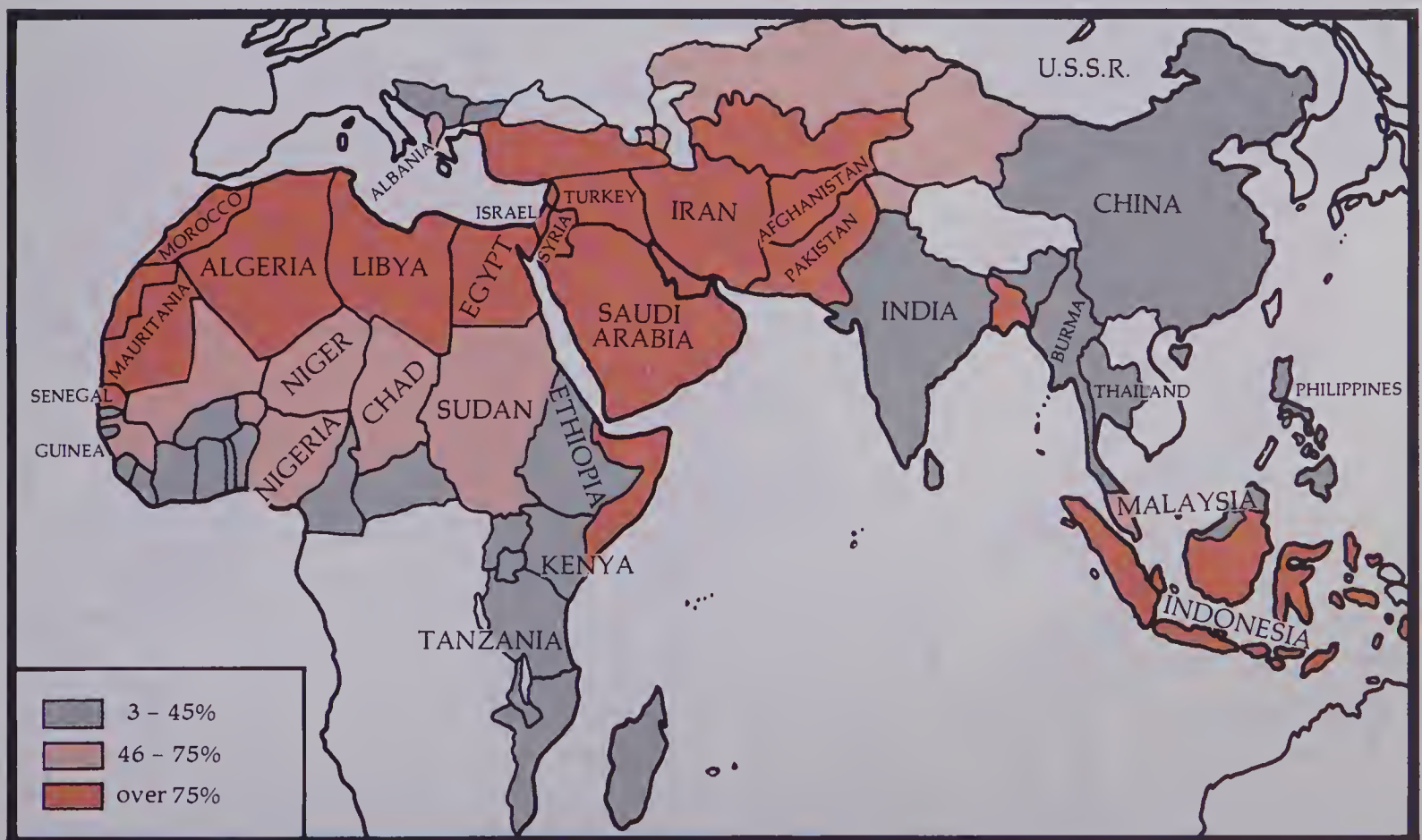
25. The Camp David Agreement of 1979 signed by Egypt, Israel, and the U.S.A. was the first peace settlement between Israel and a neighbouring Arab country. Hopefully, peace treaties can be negotiated with Jordan, Syria, Lebanon, and even the

Palestinian Liberation Organization (PLO). Until a general peace is negotiated, the danger of war in the area will remain. There is always a danger that a local war could spread into a world war.

26. The politics of the Middle East has had a direct effect on Canada. In 1973, the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) suddenly raised the price of oil. Most of the OPEC countries like Saudi Arabia, Iraq, Iran, Algeria, Libya, and the Persian gulf states are Arab countries. The Arabs are members of the Moslem religion and believe in the teachings of the prophet Mohammed. Most of these Arab countries united in 1973 to raise the price of oil and put pressure on the allies of Israel. They brought in an oil **embargo** and cut back the flow of oil to the U.S.A. The Arabs hoped that the economic problems would make the U.S.A. force Israel to give up the lands captured in the 1967 war. The embargo did not succeed in this respect, but the high gasoline and oil prices stayed.

27. The eastern provinces of Canada import oil from OPEC countries and are faced with very high prices. The other provinces buy their oil from Alberta and Saskatchewan. Alberta produces most of the oil in Canada and wants to charge about 85 per cent of the world price. In the 1970's, the federal government did not allow Alberta to charge this much. This angered the oil-producing provinces in Canada. They felt that the federal government was

DISTRIBUTION OF MOSLEMS





## PRICES OF OIL, 1972-1980

Year	World Oil Price	Canadian Oil Price
1972	\$ 2.08	\$ 2.85
1973	3.00	3.50
1974	11.00	5.80
1975	11.20	7.25
1976	11.35	8.50
1977	13.60	10.25
1978	14.80	12.25
1979	20.80	13.25
1980	35.50	14.75

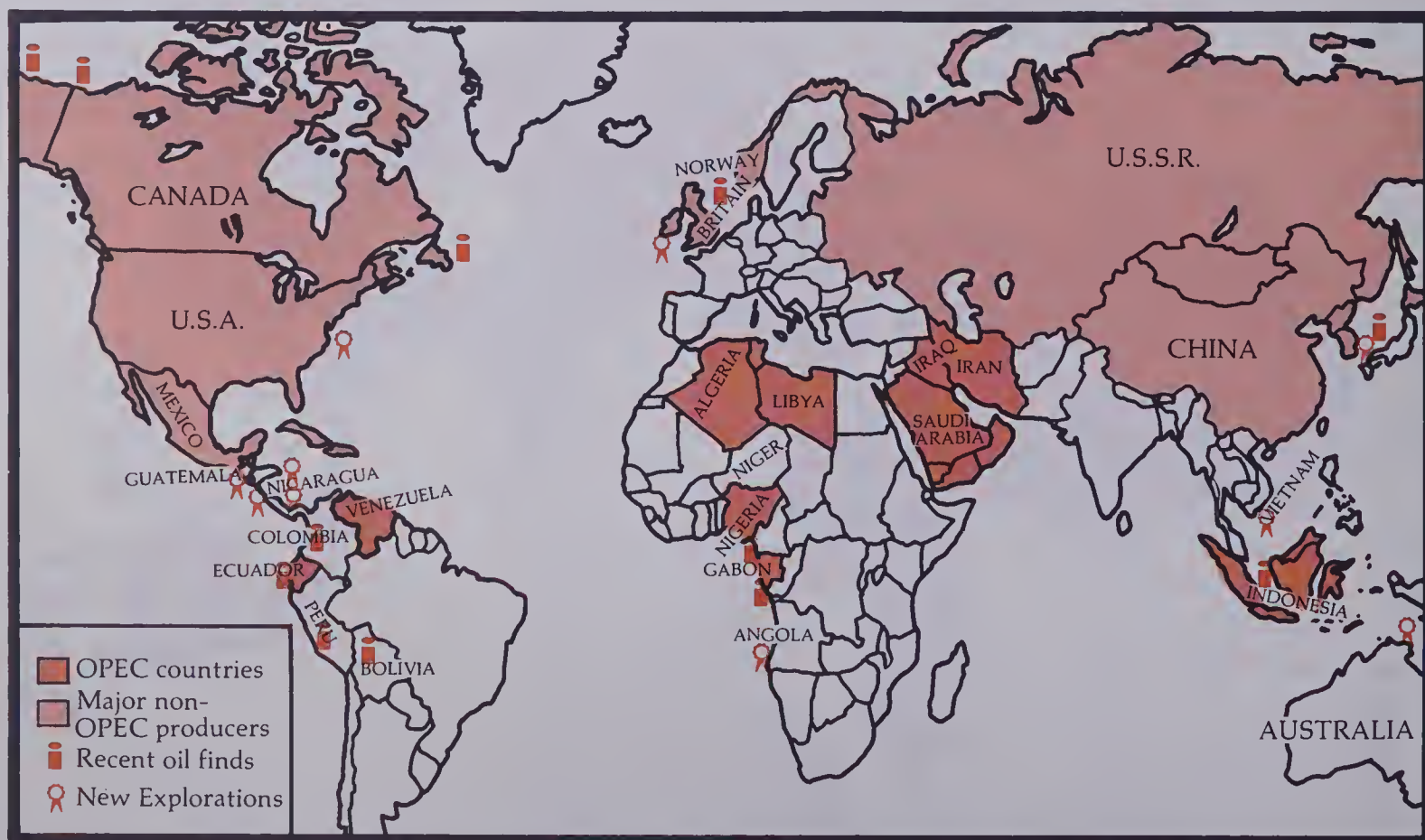
Prices in American dollars. *Toronto Star*, 80/4/11-D10

discriminating against them. Problems in the Middle East have led to divisions among Canadians at home. Canadians cannot ignore world problems in the 1980's.

### Iran

28. The unrest in the Middle East spread to Iran in the 1970's. The Shah or King of Iran had been a loyal ally of the U.S.A. Iran was the second largest exporter of oil in the Middle East. However, the Shah was a harsh ruler. His 30 000 secret police arrested anyone who criticized the government. Thousands of Iranians were tortured and killed.

### MAJOR OIL PRODUCING COUNTRIES



29. The Moslem religious leaders led the opposition to the Shah. In 1978, the Iranian people rioted against the Shah. The U.S.A. forced the Shah to leave Iran. The Americans hoped to bring in a new government, but they could not control the Iranian revolution. Led by Ayatollah Khomeini, a religious leader, the people rejected the new government, shot supporters of the Shah, and set up a Moslem constitution and government. Great anger was directed against the Americans because they had supported the Shah as a dictator. The Moslem leaders rejected American ideas and way of life. After the revolution, Iran cut the export of oil to western countries and raised the price. This added to inflation. Many foreign companies, including some Canadian ones, had to leave Iran.

30. On November 4, 1979, some young revolutionaries attacked and captured the American embassy in Tehran. They released a few Americans but they held 53 American citizens against their will as **hostages**. Under international law, this type of attack is illegal. Every embassy in every country is seen as a part of the land of the mother-country. An attack on an embassy is like an attack on the mother-country.

31. Some American citizens were not captured in the embassy. After a few days, six Americans came to the Canadian embassy where they were given protection. After several months, the Canadian government and Ambassador Ken Taylor decided to risk leading the Americans out of Iran in the face of some danger. This was a brave and generous action on the part of the Canadians. The Iranian government was very angry and other extreme Moslem countries criticized Canada. However, most countries supported Canada's actions and criticized Iran for continuing to break international law. President Carter sent an American military mission into Iran on May 1, 1980 to try and rescue the hostages, but the mission failed. The situation in Iran increased the tensions in the Middle East and the economic and political pressure on the U.S.A. These situations are a threat to world peace.

## Afghanistan

32. Afghanistan is a very mountainous country between Pakistan, U.S.S.R., China, and Iran. In December, 1979, the U.S.S.R. supported a communist takeover of the government of Afghanistan. However, the Soviet actions in this Moslem country were deeply resented by the people. To support the new Afghanistan government, the U.S.S.R. sent in troops. However, many Afghan soldiers retreated into the mountains. They fought a guerrilla war against the Russian invaders. Guerrilla war takes place when a weak group fights a stronger enemy using hit and run attacks.



*Shah of Iran*

*Ambassador Ken Taylor receives the Order of Canada from Governor-General Schreyer*







33. The Russians counted on the U.S.A. being too concerned about the hostages in Iran and not worrying about the situation in Afghanistan. However, the U.S.A. called the U.S.S.R. an aggressor in Afghanistan. The Americans demanded that the Russians withdraw their troops from Afghanistan. When the Russians refused, the Americans organized a boycott of the 1980 Olympic Games in Moscow. This boycott was used to embarrass the Russians and to pressure them to leave Afghanistan.

34. Many athletes in western countries objected to the boycott. They said that sports were separate from politics. Some athletes said it was unfair to ask only the athletes to boycott the U.S.S.R. They said that farmers and companies should stop trading with the U.S.S.R. They believed that everyone should share in the boycott.

35. In the end, thirty-six countries supported the boycott of the Moscow Olympic Games. Canada supported the boycott. In addition, the professional hockey players agreed to cancel the Canada Cup Hockey Series for 1980 to show their support of the boycott. Relations between the U.S.S.R. and the U.S.A. and their allies grew worse as a result of the Afghanistan invasion and the Olympic boycott. The danger to world peace increased.

## Canada and the Third World

36. Canada is one of the few wealthy countries in the world. Canadians have a high standard of living—plenty of food, pure water, good housing, medical care, schools, jobs, and money. Most people in the world are not as lucky. Most people in poor countries are hungry, sick, and **illiterate**. Illiterate means that they are unable to read and write. These poor countries are demanding that the rich countries share the world's wealth, energy, and resources. The poor countries have few industries, little money, and huge debts. The high price of oil is increasing their debts and preventing them from building new industries. In the 1970's, the rich and the poor countries began a series of meetings called the North-South Conferences to discuss ways to help the poor countries develop their economies. Canada attended and supported these meetings.

37. Much of Canada's **foreign aid** or help to poor countries is handled by the federal government's Canadian International Development Agency (CIDA). Commonwealth and United Nations projects receive strong support from CIDA—such projects as UNICEF (United Nations Children's Fund). UNICEF provides money to dig wells for water, vaccinate children against diseases, and build schools. Many talented Canadians also work overseas. They work as teachers, farmers, engineers, planners, nurses, and doctors to train and to treat people in third world countries. Perhaps one day you may decide to accept the challenge of helping people in third world countries. CUSO (Canadian University Students Overseas) is just one of the government organizations that sends Canadians to work in third world countries.

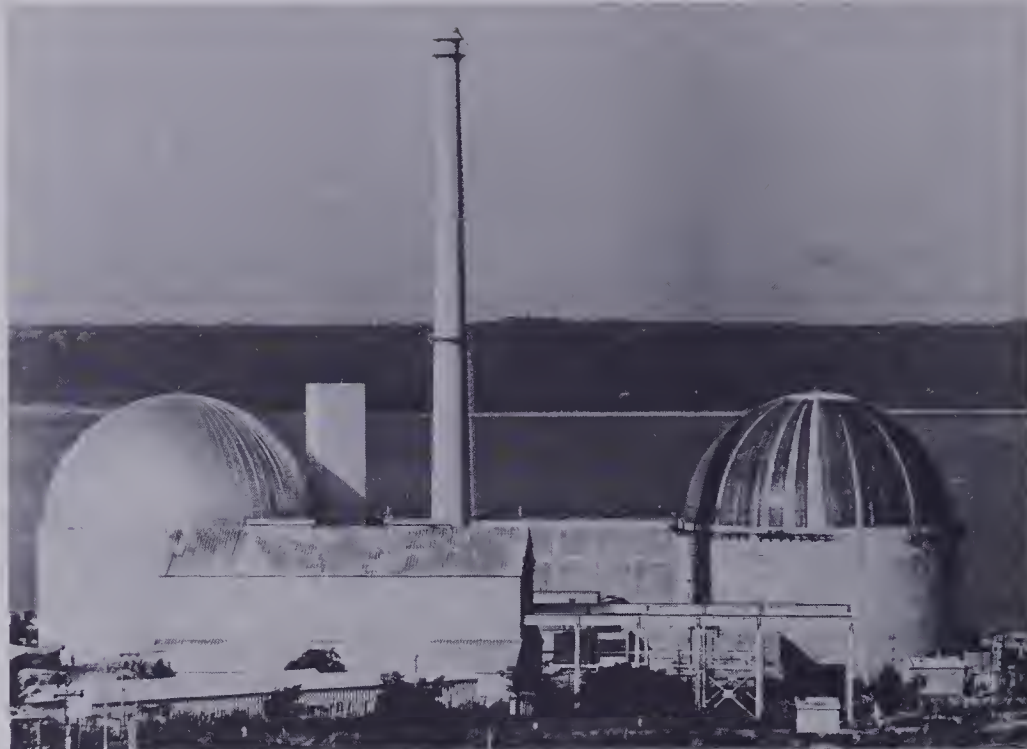
38. In 1977, Canadians contributed \$2 219 000 000 to poor countries. This money was used for loans to countries and businesses, for projects like electric plants, hospitals, and schools, and for food and medicine to help people after floods and earthquakes.







LEFT: Effects of the drought in Upper Volta



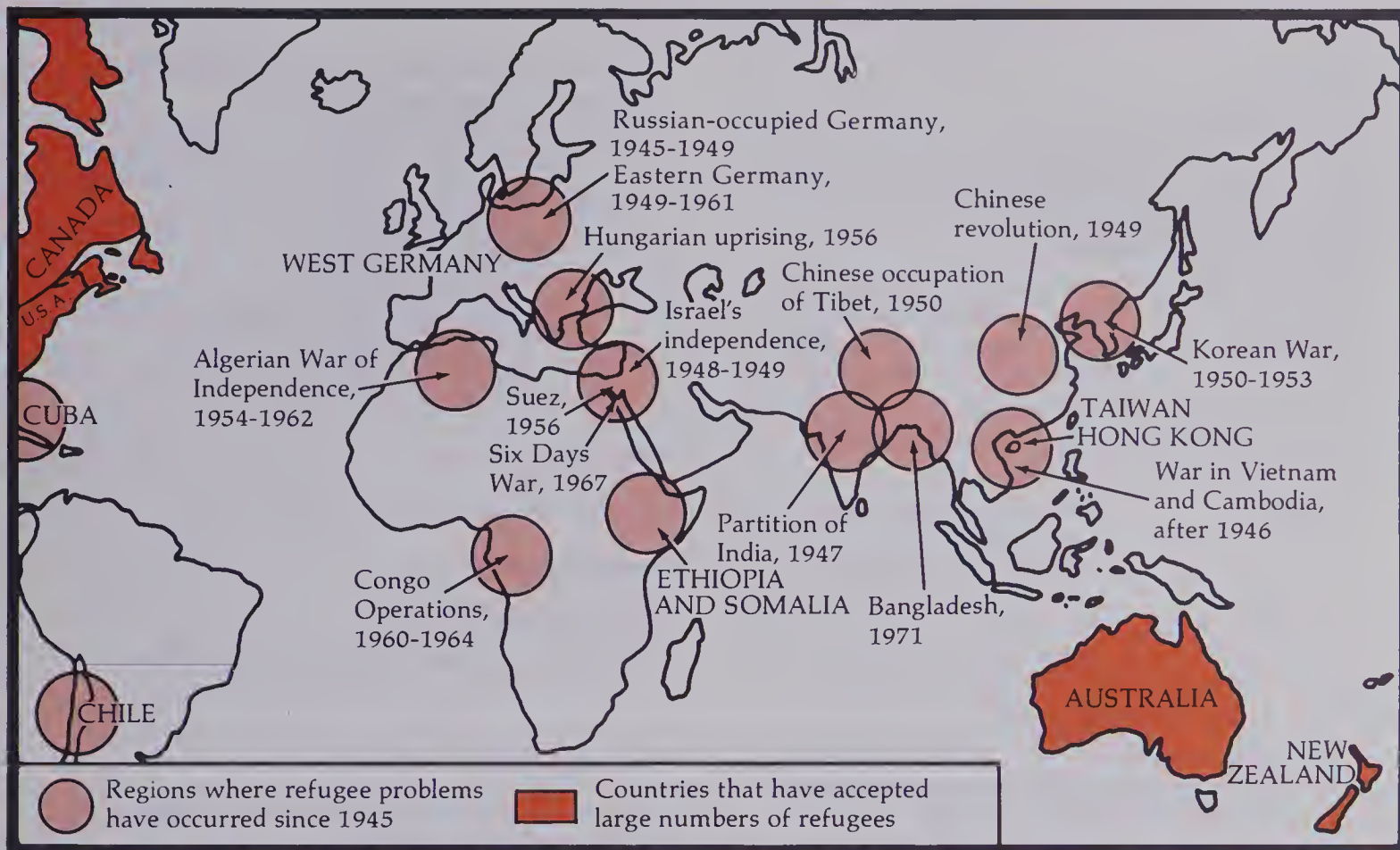
RIGHT: CANDU reactor in India

39. Sometimes Canada's aid is used in unexpected ways. For example, Canada provided a nuclear power plant to India to produce electricity. Unfortunately, Indian scientists used some of the products of the CANDU nuclear reactor to build an atomic bomb. This was a very dangerous development for world peace. Still, fortunate countries like Canada must work to help the poor people of other countries build a better life for themselves.

### Refugees

40. Millions of people around the world have been forced to leave their homes in the past. These **refugees** have fled from wars or tried to escape governments which torture and murder their citizens. Where can they go? After World War II, Canada did take in many refugees from eastern Europe who were fleeing from the Russian communists. Canada also welcomed refugees after the revolts against the communist governments in Hungary in 1956 and in Czechoslovakia in 1968. Unfortunately, Canada's record on helping refugees has not always been very good. In the 1930's and 1940's, Canada took very few Jewish refugees who were trying to escape death in Hitler's Germany. After the military overthrow of the democratic government of Chile, Canada took in only a small number of Chilean refugees.

41. Then, in 1978 and 1979, Canadians responded to the needs of the "boat people" of Vietnam. The Vietnamese government drove many people, especially those of Chinese background, out of South Vietnam. The refugees fled in small, leaky boats to crowded camps in other countries in South-East Asia. Through television, Canadians watched their fight to survive with horror.



*Vietnamese refugees adrift in the South China Sea*

About 60 000 Vietnamese refugees came to Canada. Half the families were sponsored by Canadian groups who helped them become established in Canada. The immigrants and refugees to Canada are hard workers and they have made important contributions to this country. Their presence reminds Canadians of the importance of the freedom which Canadians enjoy. Canada is a richer and better country because of all its new citizens.

## Conclusion

42. The world is a very exciting and dangerous place. Sometimes Canadians have tried to ignore the outside world. The first and second world wars proved that the world cannot be ignored. Threats of war, rising oil prices, thousands of refugees, and millions of poor people remind Canadians that they must face the world boldly and generously.



## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—7

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. Igor Gouzenko  | —was convicted of spying for the U.S.S.R.                                      |
| Fred Rose         | —gave money to European countries to rebuild their economies                   |
| Harry Truman      | —supported the creation of NATO  |
| Louis St. Laurent | —revealed that Russian spies were operating in Canada, the U.S.A., and Britain |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. To defect means
  - (a) something is wrong with a product such as a television set
  - (b) to desert one's country
  - (c) to steal secrets from the Russians
  - (d) to be a double agent
3. The Cold War means
  - (a) that no war is actually fought but the two opposing sides do not like or trust each other
  - (b) that neutron bombs are used which kill people but do not destroy property or buildings
  - (c) that two people do not speak to each other
  - (d) that war has broken out between two countries
4. A super-power refers
  - (a) to a person who has super-human abilities and is very strong
  - (b) to a complicated spy system which is operating in a country
  - (c) to Germany in 1945
  - (d) to a very powerful country which controls and influences other countries
5. The Third World refers
  - (a) to people who are believed to live in outer-space
  - (b) to countries which are not allied to or controlled by the super-powers
  - (c) to colonies which have just received their independence from the mother-country
  - (d) to people who are extremely rich and do not have to work for a living

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

6. The U.S.A. and Canada gave money, equipment, and food to European countries after World War II because
  - (a) they were afraid that the U.S.S.R. would capture western Europe
  - (b) they were afraid that the communists would extend their boundaries
  - (c) they had a surplus of goods due to high wartime production

#### Question

7. Explain two causes of the Cold War.

### Paragraphs 8—9

#### Knowing The People

1. Who was General Douglas MacArthur?

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Boycotting is
  - (a) a dating technique
  - (b) a way of fighting the Russians when they refuse to attend the meetings of the Security Council
  - (c) to stop doing something to express your opposition
  - (d) a good way of having countries recognize communist China

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. In 1950, the U.N. sent armies to Korea because
  - (a) Korea invaded China
  - (b) Japan invaded Korea
  - (c) South Korea invaded North Korea
  - (d) North Korea invaded South Korea

#### Questions

4. Why did the Russian representative not veto the U.N. decision to help South Korea?
5. What started the Korean War?
6. Why do you think there was a deadlock in the Korean War?
7. How could the Korean War be regarded as a success? As a failure?

## Paragraphs 10—13

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Colonel Nasser —won the Nobel Prize for Peace for helping to solve the Suez crisis  
Lester B. Pearson—nationalized the Suez Canal

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Nationalized means
  - (a) an act of war between two countries over property
  - (b) a word which refers to a person who is a citizen of a country or nation
  - (c) a government takeover
  - (d) all of the above

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Britain and France wanted control of the Suez Canal
  - (a) to be certain their ships would pass freely through the canal
  - (b) to give Nasser a bad reputation
  - (c) because it was in Egypt
  - (d) because the Suez had been a colony of Britain for many years
4. The Arabs were angry that the country of Israel was created because
  - (a) they were not members of the United Nations and did not respect its decisions
  - (b) they were friends of President Nasser and were against Britain and France during the Suez crisis
  - (c) Arabs lived in the lands that were used to create Israel
  - (d) they were enemies of Colonel Nasser
5. Israel was created
  - (a) by the United Nations in 1948
  - (b) as a homeland for the Jews
  - (c) from lands occupied by the Arabs
  - (d) all of the above

### Question

6. Why did a very dangerous situation exist during the Suez crisis?

## Paragraphs 14—17

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. George VI —was the Head of the British Commonwealth at the end of World War II  
John Diefenbaker—was the person who made Canada join the Colombo Plan  
—was partly responsible for throwing South Africa out

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Apartheid means
  - (a) an arrest in South Africa
  - (b) the treatment of all races equally
  - (c) an arrest for attending a protest meeting
  - (d) discrimination against black and “coloured” people

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The British Commonwealth of Nations was set up because
  - (a) the United Nations was not doing a good job of keeping peace in the world
  - (b) British colonies which had become countries wanted to co-operate and trade with each other
  - (c) the British colonies were tired of British control and wanted to become more independent
  - (d) all of the above
4. Canada joined the Colombo Plan
  - (a) to become head of the British Commonwealth
  - (b) to hold meetings to discuss methods of helping the richer countries of the world
  - (c) to help poor and underdeveloped countries in the Commonwealth
  - (d) to set up cement factories in countries which did not have them

### Question

5. What effect did the Statute of Westminster have on countries like Canada and Australia?



## Paragraphs 18—21

### Knowing The People

Answer this question in your notebook in sentence form.

1. Who was the person responsible for bringing Expo '67 and the Olympics to Montreal, and running up a big debt in doing so?

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Terrorists are people who
  - (a) go around tearing up things
  - (b) riot during elections
  - (c) try to change the government and the law by force
  - (d) like to commit violent crimes for money and fun

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The Montreal Olympic Games were very successful but created serious problems for Quebec and Montreal because
  - (a) terrorists killed some Israeli athletes
  - (b) there were many political disagreements
  - (c) very few people saw the athletes compete
  - (d) they cost \$1 500 000 000

### Question

4. Why was Expo '67 a world event?

## Paragraphs 22—23

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person

1. Mao Tse Tung —recognized the communist government of China
- Chiang Kai-shek —Canadian who trained Chinese doctors in the 1930's
- Norman Bethune—set up the communist government of China
- John Diefenbaker—Chinese leader of Taiwan who was supported by the U.S.A.
- Pierre Trudeau —Canadian leader who did not recognize China because of the Vietnam War
- Lester Pearson —Canadian leader who agreed to grain sales to communist China

### Question

2. What are the advantages to a good relationship between Canada and China?

## Paragraphs 24—27

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Embargo means
  - (a) cutting off the supply of goods
  - (b) setting off on a trip
  - (c) arriving home from a long trip
  - (d) increasing the production and supply of goods

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Some Canadians supported Israel during its wars because
  - (a) it is the weakest country in the Middle East
  - (b) it was surrounded by hostile countries
  - (c) it exported oil to Canada
  - (d) all of the above
3. Some Canadians support the Palestinians because
  - (a) Arab Palestine is the smallest country in the Middle East
  - (b) they always lost the war to Israel
  - (c) they had lost their homes and land when Israel was created
  - (d) they had no camps in which to live
4. The Camp David Agreement was very important because
  - (a) it was the first peace agreement between a Moslem country and Israel
  - (b) it brought peace to all the countries of the Middle East
  - (c) it gave the Palestinians a country of their own
  - (d) it recognized the PLO as the government of the Palestinian Arabs
5. Alberta became very angry because
  - (a) the five eastern provinces of Canada took its oil
  - (b) the five eastern provinces refused to pay for their oil supplies
  - (c) the five eastern provinces refused to pay the world price for Alberta's oil
  - (d) the federal government would not let Alberta charge 85 per cent of the world price for oil

## Questions

6. Why is the Middle East a very dangerous area of the world?
7. What is OPEC?
8. What are two ways that OPEC has created problems within Canada?

## Paragraphs 28—31

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. Kenneth Taylor  | —Prime Minister of the United States                           |
| Ayatollah Khomeini | —King of Iran who ruled like a dictator                        |
| Shah               | —ordered an unsuccessful rescue mission into Iran              |
| Jimmy Carter       | —religious leader who directed the revolution against the Shah |
|                    | —Canadian ambassador who led some Americans out of Iran        |

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Hostages are
  - (a) people who supported the Shah
  - (b) people held by someone against their wishes
  - (c) people who supported Ayatollah Khomeini
  - (d) soldiers who try to rescue people

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Many Iranians hated the United States because it
  - (a) had supported the Shah for many years
  - (b) refused to pay Iranians a good price for their oil
  - (c) was not a Moslem country
  - (d) owed them billions of dollars
4. The Canadian embassy took in six American citizens because
  - (a) the American embassy had been captured
  - (b) they were in serious danger
  - (c) they could not leave Iran on their own
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

5. Why did the American government force the Shah to leave Iran?
6. Why was the attack and capture of the American embassy illegal?
7. Why were Iran and some other Moslem countries angry with Canada?

## Paragraphs 32—35

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. The U.S.S.R. sent troops into Afghanistan
  - (a) to defend the country from an attack by Pakistan
  - (b) to defend the country from an attack by Iran
  - (c) because the U.S.A. was attacking Iran
  - (d) because they wanted to help a communist government stay in power

## Questions

2. Why did the U.S.A. call the U.S.S.R. an aggressor?
3. Give two reasons why some athletes criticized the boycott of the Olympic Games in Moscow.

## Paragraphs 36—42

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Illiterate means someone who
  - (a) is sick
  - (b) leaves paper lying around
  - (c) cannot read or write
  - (d) can write but not read
2. Foreign aid is
  - (a) a strange coin or bill
  - (b) help given by poor countries to rich countries
  - (c) help given by rich countries to poor countries
  - (d) a new soft drink that tastes great
3. Refugees are people who
  - (a) lose a war
  - (b) refuse to fight in a war
  - (c) are forced to rebuild their homes because of a flood, earthquake, or volcanic eruption
  - (d) are forced to leave their homes because of war or harsh government treatment



## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. Third World countries are poor because
  - (a) they have lots of industries but no money
  - (b) they have few industries and little money
  - (c) they have no debts
  - (d) all of the above
5. CIDA is important because it
  - (a) gives out much of Canada's foreign aid
  - (b) sends workers overseas
  - (c) helps poor countries in the Commonwealth and other countries
  - (d) all of the above
  - (e) none of the above

## Questions

6. What do the poor countries want the rich countries to do?
7. (a) What is UNICEF and what does it do?  
(b) How do Canadian school children help UNICEF?
8. Name five ways in which Canada helps poor countries.
9. (a) Which refugees did Canada not help very much?  
(b) Which refugee groups did Canada help?  
(c) Where are the large camps of refugees in the world today?

## USING SOURCES

Read the Preamble to the United Nations Charter and then answer the question that follows.

WE THE PEOPLES OF  
THE UNITED NATIONS  
DETERMINED

to save succeeding generations from the scourge of war, which twice in our lifetime has brought untold sorrow to mankind, and to reaffirm faith in fundamental human rights, in the dignity and worth of the human person, in the equal rights of men and women, of nations large and small, and to establish conditions under which justice and respect for the obligations arising from treaties and other sources of international law can be maintained, and to promote social progress and better standards of life in larger freedom.

## AND FOR THESE ENDS

to practise tolerance and live together in peace with one another as good neighbours, and to unite our strength to maintain international peace and security, and to insure, by the acceptance of principles and the institution of methods, that armed force shall not be used, save in the common interest, and to employ international machinery for the promotion of the economic and social advancement of all peoples,

HAVE RESOLVED TO  
COMBINE OUR EFFORTS  
TO ACCOMPLISH THESE AIMS.

## Question

1. In point-form, write down the goals of the United Nations. Discuss these goals with your class.

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

Divide the class into five groups. Have each group find newspaper and magazine articles to put on the bulletin board under the following headings: United Nations, U.S.A./U.S.S.R. Relations, Middle East, Refugees, Oil Prices. The student who brings in the article can briefly describe the article to the class before placing the article on the bulletin board.

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

1. (a) Are you willing to lower your standard of living to help people living in Third World countries? Support your answer with reasons for your choice.  
(b) Do you think most Canadians share your point of view and why?  
(c) Find out if your student government is doing anything to support a child living in a Third World country or a refugee family.

# CHAPTER THIRTEEN

## Canada And The United States

**AIM: How Has the United States Influenced Canada Since 1945?**

1. Canadians have lived in peace with their American neighbours since 1814. There have been some hot arguments between Canada and the United States on boundaries, fisheries, trade, and defence. These disagreements have been settled peacefully. Working with the United States has brought Canada peace and prosperity. It has also raised doubts about Canada's independence as a country.

### How Has the U.S.A. Shaped Canada's Defence Plans?

2. Between 1763 and World War I, Canadians always counted on Britain to defend them in case of a war. By the end of World War I, the U.S.A. had become stronger than Britain, and

#### CANADIAN AND AMERICAN LEADERS 1945-1980

##### Prime Ministers of Canada

William Lyon Mackenzie King  
1935-1948

Louis St. Laurent  
1948-1957

John G. Diefenbaker  
1957-1963

Lester B. Pearson  
1963-1968

Pierre E. Trudeau  
1968-1979

Joseph Clark  
1979-1980

Pierre E. Trudeau  
1980-

##### Presidents of U.S.A.

Franklin D. Roosevelt  
1932-1945

Harry S. Truman  
1945-1952

Dwight D. Eisenhower  
1952-1960

John F. Kennedy  
1960-1963

Lyndon B. Johnson  
1963-1968

Richard M. Nixon  
1968-1974

Gerald Ford  
1974-1976

James Carter  
1976-1980  
Ronald Reagan  
1980 -



**President Roosevelt,  
August 19, 1938**

"We in the Americas are no longer a far away continent... The Dominion of Canada is part of the sisterhood of the British Empire. I give to you (the) assurance (promise) that the people of the United States will not stand idly by if... Canadian soil is threatened by another Empire."



*Mackenzie King and President  
F.D. Roosevelt, Quebec City*

Canada could no longer count on Britain. During the 1920's and 1930's, Canada and the U.S.A. tried to avoid becoming involved in European affairs. The U.S.A. refused to join the League of Nations. In 1935, Prime Minister Mackenzie King backed down from Italy at the League of Nations to avoid war with Italy. As Germany and Italy became more powerful, Prime Minister King strongly supported the British policy of appeasement.

3. Although the U.S.A. was neutral during the 1930's, President Franklin Roosevelt was very worried about the growing power of Germany, Italy, and Japan. In 1938, President Roosevelt visited Canada. The President promised that the U.S.A. would help if a foreign country tried to invade Canada. No one dreamed that two years later these two countries would be preparing to defend North America. With the fall of France in 1940, Canada was the second largest country at war with Germany and Italy. German submarines were seen in Canadian waters. An Axis attack on Canada was possible!

4. On August 18, 1940, Prime Minister King and President Roosevelt met again at Ogdensburg, New York, to discuss these dangers. They decided to set up a Permanent Joint Board of Defence to plan the defence of North America together. Since this Defence Board was permanent and lasting, Canada was counting on the U.S.A. to help defend its territory in the future. The U.S.A. was a much larger and stronger country than Canada. Could Canada remain independent in an alliance with the U.S.A.?

5. World War II was a fierce and expensive war. Canada and Britain had to produce a lot of weapons quickly. They wanted to buy weapons from the U.S.A. but they did not have enough American dollars to pay for them. As a result, Canada and the U.S.A. agreed to share the production of weapons and other war materials. When the U.S.A. entered the war, Canadian and American factories worked together to produce ships, planes, tanks, trucks, rifles, and other war goods. As more factories and industries worked together, the Canadian economy became more closely tied to the American economy. Since American companies were larger and wealthier, they had more control of production than the Canadian companies. Could Canada remain an independent country in a North American economy?

6. After the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbour on December 7, 1941, the Canadians and Americans had to face a new enemy to the west. Japan might have tried to invade North America through Alaska and British Columbia. Canada agreed to let the American army build a highway through Canada to carry troops to Alaska in case of a Japanese invasion. After the war, the Alaska Highway was given to Canada. This was another example of the close co-operation between Canada and the U.S.A. during the Second World War.

7. The U.S.A. received permission from Britain to set up large military bases in Newfoundland. The Americans brought their money and men to the Island. American influence was increasing.

### The Cold War

8. Canada eagerly supported President Roosevelt's plan to create the United Nations in 1945. However, the poor relations between the U.S.S.R. and other member countries made some people question the ability of the United Nations to keep the peace. The Soviet takeover of countries in eastern Europe made the western allies very worried. The West, including Canada, joined together in 1949 to form the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO).

9. The U.S.A., Canada, and Britain were also worried about communist takeovers in France and Italy. These countries had suffered during the war. Many towns and factories had been destroyed and many people were unemployed after the war. Their new democratic governments had difficulty meeting the demands of the people. The U.S.A. decided to pour money into western Europe to help France, Italy, and West Germany rebuild their economies. Prosperity was the best defence against communism in these countries. The billions of dollars in the Marshall Plan had the advantage of pulling western Europe closer to the U.S.A. Canada also provided money to help these European countries. Much of the money given to these European countries was used to buy goods from North America. Helping Europe helped Canada and the U.S.A.

10. NATO and the Marshall Plan tied both Canada and western Europe to the U.S.A., militarily and economically. Later, western European countries were able to join together in the European Economic Community (EEC), and to build up their own economy. Canada continued to depend more and more on the American economy.

11. Canadians were also worried about the defence of Canada during the Cold War. Nuclear bombs, jet planes, and long range bombers made the defence of Canada and the U.S.A. more difficult. The U.S.S.R. had the atomic bomb in 1949 and the hydrogen bomb by 1953. The hydrogen bomb is much more powerful than the atomic bomb and is capable of destroying entire cities. The U.S.A. was afraid that Soviet bombers would fly over the North Pole, across Canada, and bomb American cities. In the 1950's, it was agreed that the Americans would build three radar lines across Canada to warn of a Soviet air attack. The U.S.A. paid for the first radar line and American soldiers operated these radar stations on Canadian soil.

12. In 1957, the U.S.S.R. launched the first Sputnik rocket

*Radar installation in the North*







"FRINGE BENEFITS"

President Kennedy, Ottawa,  
May 17, 1961

"Geography has made us neighbours. History has made us friends. Economics has made us partners. And necessity has made us allies."

NORAD Combat Operations Centre,  
Colorado Springs



into space. Rockets (missiles) travelled much higher, farther, and faster than bombers. The missiles could carry nuclear warheads or bombs. A target halfway around the world could be hit thirty minutes after launching. Even if radar spotted the rockets, they would be difficult to stop. As a result, Canada's radar stations became **obsolete** or out-of-date. By the 1970's, missiles had been developed that could fire several nuclear warheads at separate targets.

13. In 1958, Canada signed the North American Air Defence Agreement (NORAD) with the U.S.A. to meet the new nuclear threats. This agreement still exists today. To protect it against a nuclear attack, NORAD's headquarters are buried deep inside Cheyenne Mountain in Colorado Springs, U.S.A. The back-up headquarters are in North Bay, Ontario. NORAD's commander is always an American officer and the deputy-commander is a Canadian officer. The commanding officers must consult the American President and the Canadian Prime Minister in an emergency.

14. In a nuclear war, American and Soviet aeroplanes and missiles could fight in Canadian skies. Canadians could receive much of the nuclear fallout or radiation and millions of Canadians might be killed. Some Canadians think that Canada should not be involved with either the U.S.A. or the U.S.S.R., and should be neutral. Other Canadians say that Canada must be allied to the U.S.A. They believe that a strong stand against the U.S.S.R. is the best way to prevent another world war.

15. Canada is in a weak and junior position in the NORAD alliance. This position became very clear in the early 1960's. During the Cuban Missile Crisis of 1962, President Kennedy ordered the U.S.S.R. to remove its missiles from Cuba. The Soviet missiles could have hit most American and Canadian cities in minutes. President Kennedy ordered the American forces and NORAD on full alert in case the Russians refused. He was ready for nuclear war. President Kennedy asked Prime Minister Diefenbaker to place the Canadian forces on full alert. The Prime Minister did not do so immediately and this angered President Kennedy. As Commander-in-Chief of the U.S. Armed Forces, the President could order the American forces in NORAD into action without asking Canada. Canadian planes and troops would not have been involved, but war would have been declared anyway — and Canada would have been in the middle of it.

16. Canada's own airforce did not have nuclear bombs and warheads between 1958 and 1963. Prime Minister Diefenbaker did not want nuclear weapons. Some Canadians agreed with him. They wanted Canada and other countries to reduce their armed forces and to get rid of their nuclear weapons. Canada's Minister of Defence, Douglas Harkness, disagreed. He said that Canada

## RANGE OF SOVIET MISSILES FROM CUBA, 1962



had promised its allies to accept nuclear weapons. When Prime Minister Diefenbaker continued to reject nuclear weapons, Harkness resigned from the Cabinet in 1963. The Diefenbaker minority government was defeated in the House of Commons and a new election was called.

17. Nuclear weapons and defence were major issues in the 1963 federal election. Lester Pearson and the Liberals changed their position. They now argued that Canada must live up to its earlier promises to accept nuclear weapons. Prime Minister Diefenbaker criticized both the Liberals and President Kennedy. Diefenbaker and the Progressive Conservatives lost the election for a number of reasons, but one reason was the nuclear weapons issue. Lester Pearson and the Liberals won a minority government and nuclear weapons were accepted for Canada's armed forces.

### The Vietnam War

18. In the 1960's, Canadians watched with surprise and horror as the U.S.A. joined the war in Vietnam. Many Canadians opposed the communist North Vietnamese invasion of South Vietnam. But, unlike the Korean War, Canada did not send troops to help the U.S.A. Canada did serve as a member of the International Control Commission. The three countries on the ICC were supposed to watch the border that had been established in 1954 between North and South Vietnam. However, the ICC had no power to stop the fighting between North and South Vietnam. The border was ignored by both sides.

19. The government of South Vietnam was very weak. It asked the U.S.A. for more support against the North Vietnamese



*L.B. Pearson and President J.F. Kennedy, Hyannis Port*



### American Attitudes Toward Canadians—Defence

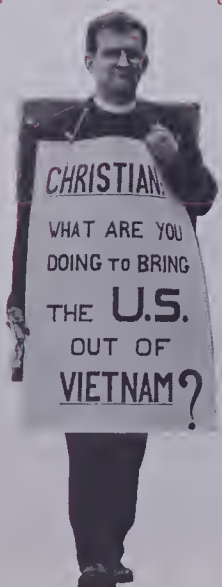
"Canada goes ahead and trades with Cuba, trades with China, trades with all these people, has everything its own way and then if we say anything, it's "Oh, the United States is a big bully," and, "Oh, the United States is being mean to us."... The fact is that the United States put up the money that defends Canada, and if it weren't for that, anybody could come in and take over the place and probably would have. And what do we get in return? A lot of bellyaching. Frankly, it makes me sick."

*small businessman,  
Wilmington, Delaware*

### American Attitudes Toward Canadians—The Draft

"My boy got his draft notice and said to hell with it and went up to Canada. He got a job up there, he's an English major, but he got a job working with crippled kids, for the government, not much money but he liked it. He couldn't come back here, of course, he's still on the indictment list as a deserter. He wasn't good enough for the US, but he was good enough for Canada, so now he's becoming a Canadian citizen. Good for him, and good for Canada, treating him right."

*pensioner, Washington, D.C.*



and their guerrilla supporters in the South, called the Viet Cong. The North Vietnamese were supported by the U.S.S.R. In 1965, the U.S.A. increased the conscription of young men to fight in their armed forces. Many young American men refused to join the armed forces. They were called **draft dodgers**. Many of these young Americans came to Canada. Their strong opposition to the Vietnam War made Canadians ask questions about the war.

20. As the Vietnam War dragged on, it divided the American people. Some Americans put loyalty to their country first and blamed the communists in Vietnam. Other Americans supported the anti-war movement. They said that the U.S.A. was supporting a dishonest government in South Vietnam and was bombing and killing innocent Vietnamese peasants.

21. Prime Minister Pearson was very worried about the Vietnam War and the threat to world peace. On April 2, 1965, he made a speech in the U.S.A. The Prime Minister suggested that the U.S.A. stop bombing North Vietnam for a while and try to negotiate a peaceful settlement. President Lyndon Johnson was very angry about Pearson's speech; he thought that Canadians should not interfere in American affairs.

22. The bombing and fighting continued, and more American soldiers died. Television news showed films of the battlefields. The sight of dead and wounded soldiers on the news each night turned more Americans against the war. President Johnson lost the support of many people and decided not to run for re-election. Richard Nixon was elected President in 1968 on the promise to end the war in Vietnam. He promised "peace with honour" but the war dragged on until 1973. More than 30 000 American draft dodgers came to Canada during the Vietnam War. Over 46 000 American soldiers were killed in the war. After the U.S.A. pulled out their troops in 1973, the South Vietnamese government collapsed. By 1976, the North Vietnamese had completely conquered the South. The country of Vietnam was reunited under a communist government.

23. Canada had not sent troops to help the U.S.A. and South Vietnam. However, Canada had helped in other ways. Canadian and American companies had worked together to produce military weapons and materials since World War II. During the Vietnam War, Canadian factories produced ammunition, chemicals, and machinery parts which were used by the American troops. This angered some Canadians who opposed the Vietnam War. However, Canada was too closely tied to the U.S.A. to stop producing military products.

### Peace in the 1970's

24. As the Vietnam War came to an end, relations with the communist countries began to improve. Canada opened relations

with China in 1970. Two years later, President Nixon and the U.S.A. recognized communist China. The Americans and Soviets also agreed to limit some nuclear weapons, to increase trade, and to let their artists and athletes travel to each other's country. This friendship between the super-powers was called **detente**.

25. Canadians welcomed better relations with the communist countries. They wanted to sell them more products. Hockey fans enjoyed watching more games against the Russian and Czechoslovakian teams. Other Canadians enjoyed the many fine performances by Russian artists, musicians, singers, and dancers. Everyone hoped that more peaceful ties could be built between eastern and western countries. The Canadian government supported American Presidents Nixon, Ford, and Carter in their attempts to improve relations with the communist countries.

### Canada's Armed Forces

26. Since 1968, Canada has gradually cut back on the number of nuclear weapons for its armed forces. Prime Minister Trudeau has opposed Canada's ownership and use of nuclear weapons. He has said that nuclear weapons are not needed to defend the country. They are also not needed for offence since Canada is not planning to attack another country. In 1980, Canada bought a new jet fighter plane. The McDonnell-Douglas F-18 will patrol Canada's air space and serve as a fighter plane with our armed forces. The Canadian F-18 will not carry nuclear weapons.

27. During the 1970's, Canada's armed forces remained very small. There were about 80 000 regular members of all ranks and about 22 000 reserves.

28. During the late 1970's and early 1980's, Canada started to experiment with the role of women in the armed forces. Women had served mainly as nurses, clerks, cooks, and in other traditional service jobs. Now, women have been given more active jobs as mechanics, technicians, and pilots. Women pilots fly supply aircraft and work on support ships at sea. They are not allowed to fly combat planes, to serve on battleships, or to fight in the front lines. These jobs may come in the future. In September, 1980, 53 women started their officer training and university education with the Canadian Armed Forces.

29. Canadians were shocked and angered by the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan in 1979. In 1980, Canada supported the boycott of the Olympic Games in Moscow and did not send its athletes to compete. Although Canada is no longer as friendly with the U.S.S.R., it has not changed the size or role of its armed forces. Canadians still count on the U.S.A. for defence help. Canada remains tied to NATO, NORAD, and the American alliance. Canada is still the junior partner.



*Munitions technician*



### Canada's Armed Forces

	<i>Regulars</i>	<i>Reserves</i>
Officers	13 268	22 000
Officers in Training	1 732	
Other Ranks	64 797	
Total	79 797	
Women in Regulars	5 567	



## How Does Canada's Economy Depend on the U.S.A.?

### Foreign Ownership in Canada

30. Many Canadians are very worried about the number of businesses in Canada that are owned by people who live in other countries. They are afraid that if Americans and others continue to buy Canadian industries, Canadians will lose control of their country. Some people think it is already too late. They believe that Canada has become an American colony and is not an independent country. They compare Canada to a landlord who is short of money but who still wants to lead a good life. Over a period of time, he sells one room of the house, and then another room, and then another. . . . In the end, he no longer owns the house and has no say in how it is run.

31. Canada lives beside one of the two most powerful countries in the world. The influence of the U.S.A. on Canada is great. Americans have at least \$55 000 000 000 invested in Canada. This is 75 per cent of all the foreign investment in Canada. Canada is the second largest country in the world but with a small population. It has huge areas of land that are rich in wood, minerals, and water. The U.S.A. has always regarded Canada as an important supplier of these natural resources.

32. One reason Canada was created in 1867 was because the British North America colonies feared an American takeover. John A. Macdonald brought in the National Policy to protect Canadian business from American competition. The high tariffs charged on American goods coming into Canada protected small Canadian business from cheaper American goods. Up until World War I, the National Policy and Canada's dependence on Britain, helped to keep down American influence in Canada. However, after World War I, Canada relied less on Britain and more on the U.S.A. to develop its resources. To escape the Canadian tariff, Americans set up their companies in Canada. These foreign-owned companies in Canada are called branch plants; the head offices are in the U.S.A.

33. Over the years, the number of branch plants has grown in Canada. They now control large parts of Canada's economy. Some of these foreign companies simply cut down the trees or dig up the minerals in Canada. They send these raw materials out of Canada to their own factories. This situation creates jobs for foreigners, not Canadians. Others produce their goods in Canada and give Canadians hundreds of thousands of jobs. Branch plants also pay taxes to the three levels of government in Canada which provide services for all Canadians. Foreign companies also help to develop Canada and make it a richer and stronger country.

34. Why are so many Canadians worried about foreign investment if it helps Canada and Canadians? They are afraid that

The 22,000 Men and Women  
who work at General Motors earn  
**\$75 Million**  
a year  
to spend in Canada

The money spent by Canadians for GM products provides the payroll for the huge family of General Motors workers, 22,000 strong.

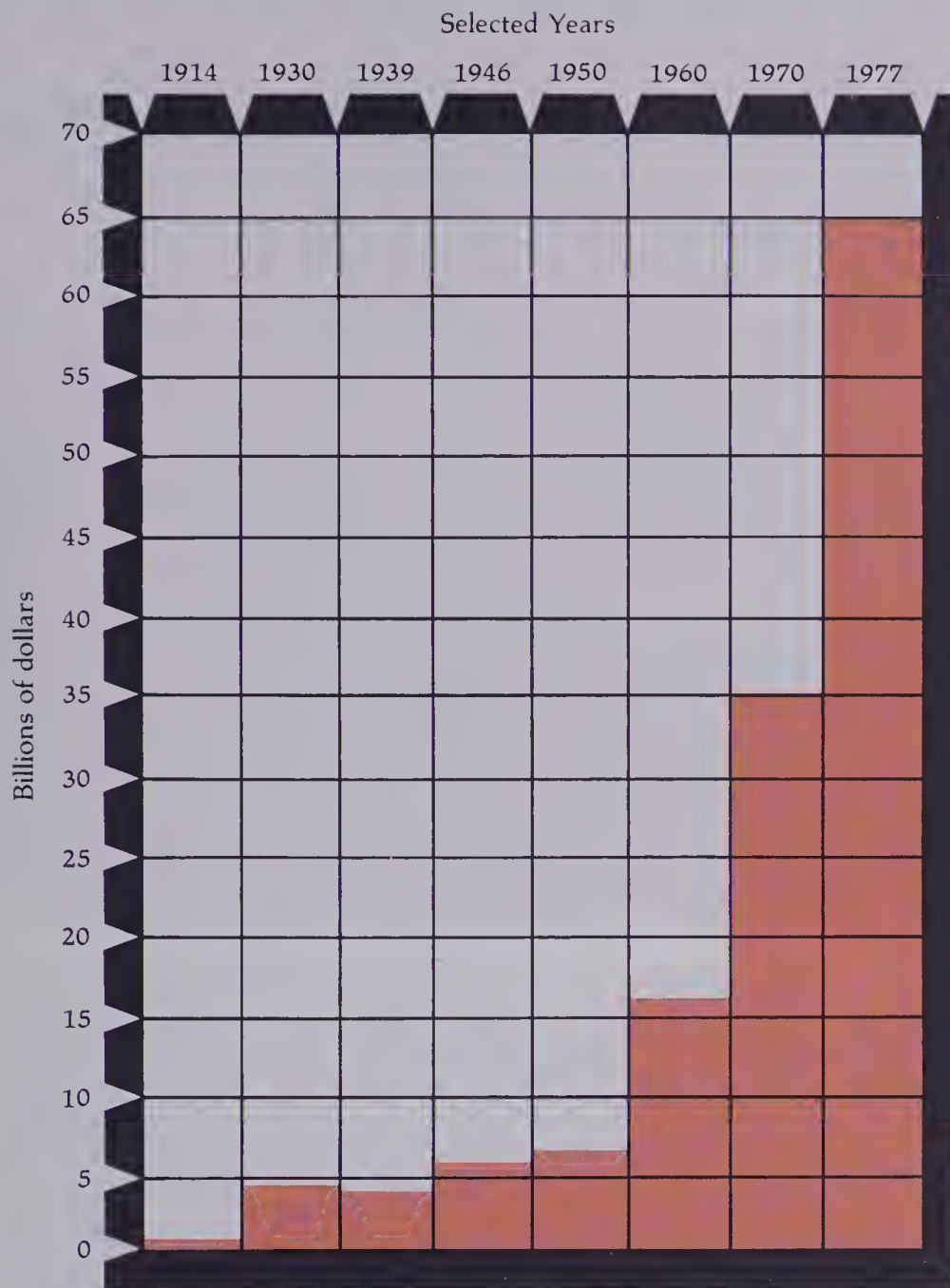
Almost all of the \$75,000,000 they earn with GM is spent in Canada. It's money that is traded for every conceivable kind of goods and service, so that as time goes by it filters back in every part of the economy, to every edge of Canada - to the Maritime fisherman, the Prairie farmer, the western logger, to factory workers in every industry, to mechanics, to entrepreneurs and, through taxes, to teachers, policemen and civil servants. In fact it helps to raise the standard of living for all Canada.

General Motors' policy is to buy Canadian and to manufacture even the smallest part, whenever possible, here at home. Thus, day by day as GM grows, it nourishes the roots of our country's whole economy and in turn draws upon Canada's strength to expand with Canada.

**GENERAL MOTORS**

GENERAL MOTORS OF CANADA  
CHRYSLER AND BUICK  
FORD AND LINCOLN  
FORD PRODUCTS OF CANADA  
LORAIN AND LINCOLN  
GENERAL MOTORS DIESEL  
LORAIN  
THE BUICK DIVISION  
ST. CATHARINES AND BRANTFORD TOWNSHIP

PRODUCING MORE AND BETTER THINGS FOR MORE PEOPLE



Canada is like the landlord who sold the rooms of his house. They fear that Canadians are selling their land and industries to foreigners and are losing control of their country. If the U.S.A. controls Canada's economy, how long will it be before Canada becomes a part of the U.S.A.?

35. Some Canadians have put pressure on the government to control foreign ownership and investment in Canada. In 1963, Walter Gordon, a Minister of Finance in Pearson's government, warned Canadians of the dangers of foreign investment. He tried unsuccessfully to put controls on foreign investment. In 1970, certain Canadians formed the Committee for an Independent Canada. The CIC wanted the government to help support Canadian-owned companies. It also wanted Canadians to buy back foreign-owned businesses in Canada.



# PERCENTAGE OF CANADIAN OWNERSHIP IN SOME INDUSTRIES

	1970	1977	Increase (or decrease)
Mining	31%	49%	18
Manufacturing	42	46	4
Primary metals	57	86	29
Wood products	67	79	12
Chemicals	20	32	12
Machinery	25	36	11
Transportation equipment	15	23	8
Furniture	79	84	5
Petroleum, coal products	4	8	4
Printing, publishing	85	89	4
Paper	57	61	4
Beverages	68	69	1
Clothing	86	86	0
Rubber products	7	6	(1)
Food	64	61	(3)
Electrical products	35	31	(4)
Textiles	48	42	(6)
Tobacco products	14	0	(14)
Agriculture, forestry, fishing	87	92	5
Services	78	82	4
Construction	84	88	4
Trade	75	78	3

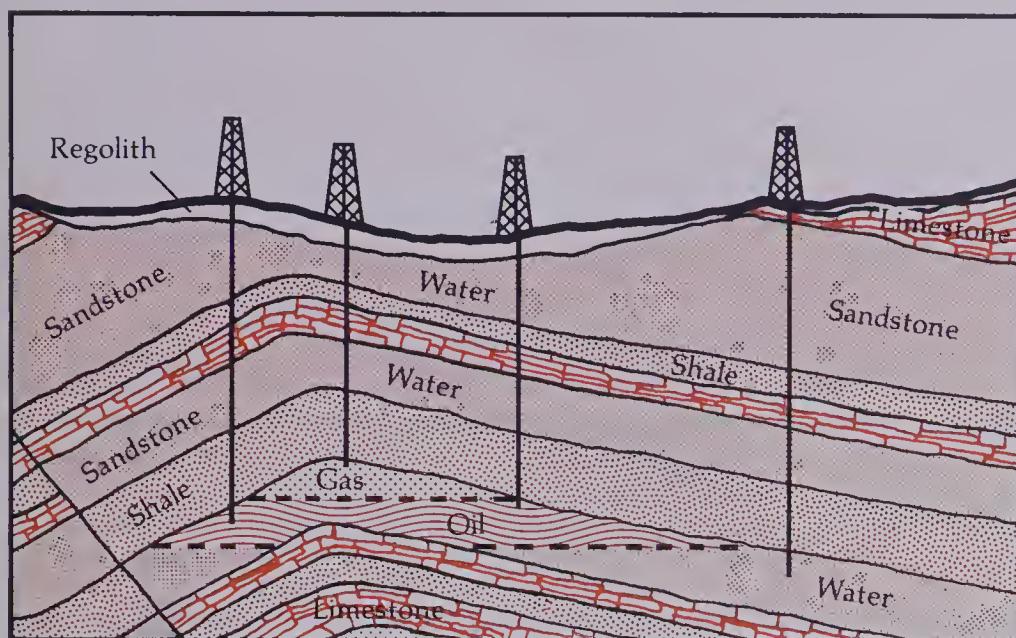
36. In 1970, the federal government did stop the sale of a Canadian company called Denison Mines to a foreign company. Denison Mines controlled 40 per cent of the uranium in Canada. If the sale had been made, 90 per cent of Canada's uranium would then have been owned by foreigners. Uranium is used to make nuclear energy. In 1971, the federal government set up the Canadian Development Corporation, the CDC. Its purpose is to develop strong Canadian companies and to make money. Today, this company has bought into mining, chemical, oil, gas, and fishing companies. The CDC is 65 per cent owned by the government and 35 per cent owned by people living in Canada. Only Canadian companies and citizens who are residents can buy shares in this company. It is worth over \$3 000 000 000.

37. In 1973, the federal government set up the Foreign Investment Review Agency (FIRA). It was set up to control foreign takeovers of Canadian companies. If a foreign company wants to buy a company in Canada which is worth over \$250 000 or has yearly sales of \$3 000 000, it must obtain the permission of the Foreign Investment Review Agency. Every year some foreign companies are refused permission to buy companies, if the sale does not benefit Canada. In addition to federal controls, some provinces have laws which forbid foreigners from buying land in that province.



"WILL IT POUNCE?"

38. Canadian citizens and their governments are concerned about foreign control of Canada's resources and companies. But how concerned are we really? Are we willing to lower our standard of living to buy back foreign-owned companies? Are we willing to risk losing jobs and money to do so? How important an issue is foreign ownership to Canadians?



### American Attitudes Toward Canadians — Natural Resources

"Canada is a rich repository of natural resources vital to our economy now and certain to be even more so in the future. How much access we have to those resources—minerals, petroleum, natural gas, wood, and perhaps most important of all, water—will determine the shape of our economy, even our standard of living."

*Richard J. Walton*

"Americans like their kissin' cousins, the Canadians, a lot better than the Canadians like them. The reason is simple. We can take the Canadians or leave them alone. They have to take us."

*Jenkin Lloyd Jones, Tulsa Tribune*

*Cross-Section of an Oil Field*

### The Energy Crisis

39. Until recently, Canadians thought that their supplies of oil, gas, and coal would last for hundreds of years. In 1973, Canada exported 60 per cent of its oil and 40 per cent of its gas to the U.S.A. The oil companies in Canada made millions of dollars from these sales. By 1979, only 19 per cent of Canadian oil and 38 per cent of the gas was being exported. Canadians have finally realized that the amounts of oil and gas under the ground are limited.

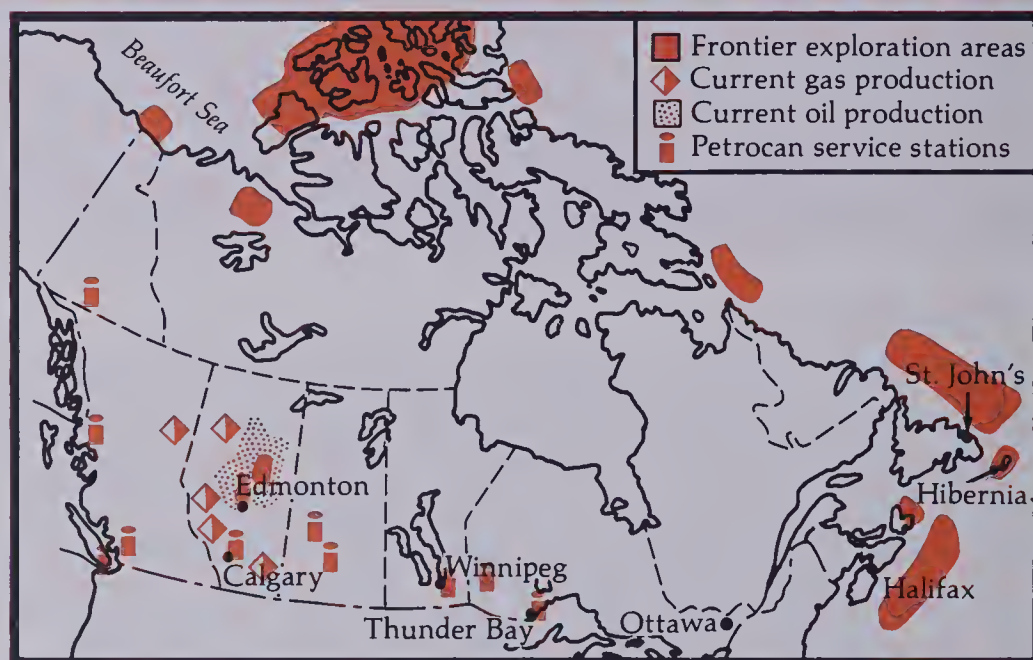
40. There is more gas than oil in Canada but experts tell us that, by 1990, there may not be enough gas in Canada to supply Canadians. Many Canadians are angry that Canada is exporting any gas or oil to the U.S.A. They want the government to stop selling energy that Canadians will need in the future. Even today, Canada does not have enough to supply Canadians in the East. Other Canadians support the sale of energy because it gives Canada many millions of dollars each year. This money helps Canada to explore for new oil and gas and gives Canadians a high standard of living.

41. Alberta is the province that supplies the largest amounts of oil and gas to Canada and the U.S.A. Pipelines carry oil and gas from the West to Ontario and Quebec. Pipelines also carry oil and gas south to the American border where it is shipped to many





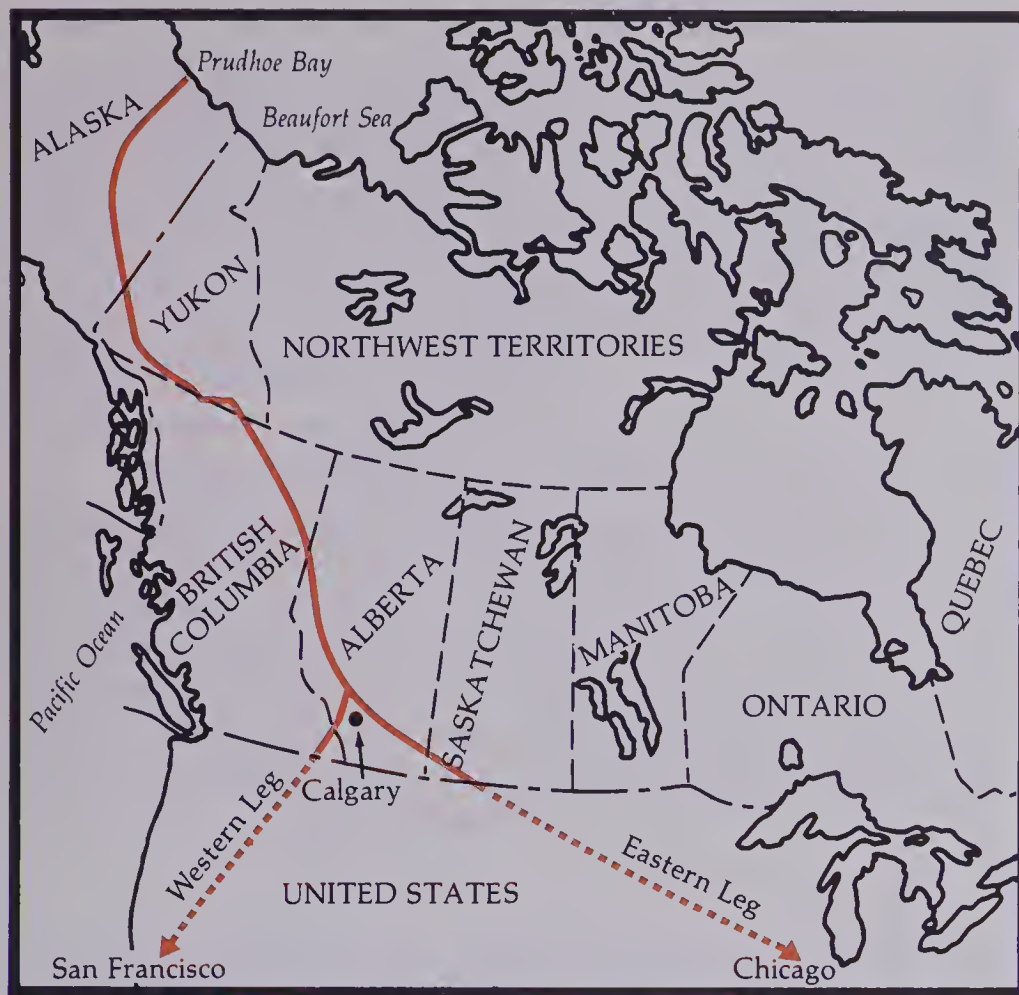
Pipeline construction



parts of the U.S.A. Recently, large discoveries of oil and gas were made in Alaska, the Canadian Arctic, and off the shores of Newfoundland and the Maritime provinces.

42. In 1977, Canada and the U.S.A. agreed to build a gas pipeline from Alaska, through Canada, to the U.S.A. A company called Foothills Pipelines Limited will build the pipeline in Canada. It will cost about \$20 000 000 000 to build. Canadians are still divided on the building of the pipeline. Some are concerned about the **environment** through which the pipeline will be built. There is a chance that the land, water, wildlife, and native people could be damaged or destroyed. Other Canadians are anxious to build the pipeline because it will provide thousands of jobs and a great deal of money to the Canadian economy.

## PIPELINE ROUTE

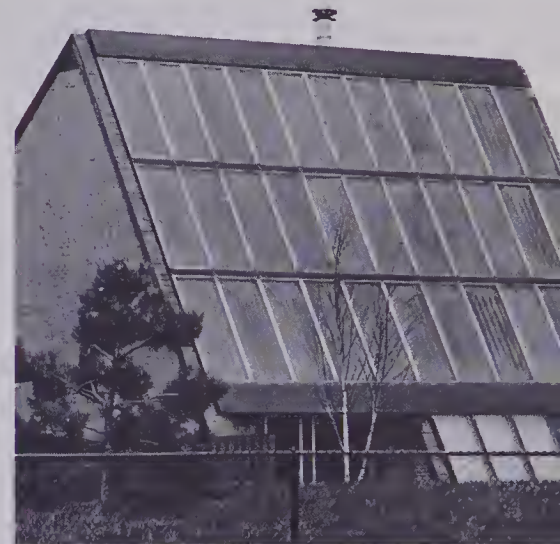


TOP: House heated by solar collectors

BOTTOM: Electric car

43. Before 1975, all the major oil companies in Canada were owned by foreigners. Canadian oil was controlled by non-Canadian companies. In 1975, the federal government set up a company called Petro-Canada. It was a **crown corporation** (a government-owned company). Its purpose was to compete with other oil companies and to give Canada more control over its oil and gas. Today, Petro-Canada is exploring for and producing oil and gas in Canada. It has even set up its own gas stations. This Canadian company is worth about \$6 000 000 000.

44. Energy is a major concern to all peoples of the world. But people in North America use more energy than any other people in the world. Energy which is produced by wood, water, or the sun is **renewable** and can be replaced. Experts are now trying to make more use of this type of energy. They are developing and building electric cars and solar heated houses. Nuclear power is also being used to produce energy but many people are worried about the dangers of using this type of energy. However, energy that is produced by oil, gas, or coal is not renewable. Once it is used up, there is no more of it. Canadians are greatly concerned about the loss of this type of energy. We have a choice. We can sell our oil, gas, and coal now and receive badly needed money. We can decide to slow down and even stop their export and save the energy for the future. What will Canadians do?







TRADING TOGETHER

The "Wisteria" pauses along the St. Lawrence Seaway



## Co-operation Between the U.S.A. and Canada

45. Most Canadians understand that Canada depends on the U.S.A. in many ways. If Canada were not a neighbour of the U.S.A., it is likely that Canadians would not enjoy such a high standard of living. Over 60 per cent of Canada's exports are sold to the U.S.A. and the jobs of thousands of Canadians depend on this trade. But the U.S.A. also depends on Canada. Over 70 per cent of all the goods that are imported into Canada come from the U.S.A. Canada and the U.S.A. are each other's most important customer. About 70 per cent of the trade between the two countries has no tariffs. But tariffs still protect certain Canadian industries.

46. In 1979, a poll showed that two of every three Canadians were in favour of free trade between the U.S.A. and Canada. These Canadians believe that without tariffs, the prices of goods would go down. They also believe that competition between Canadian and American businesses will make Canadian companies more efficient. Other Canadians are against free trade. They believe that Canada will lose its industries and become simply a supplier of raw materials for American industry.

### The Auto Pact

47. In 1965, an important trade agreement began between Canada and the U.S.A. It was called the Auto Trade Pact. This agreement removed tariffs on cars and car parts traded between the two countries. At first, this agreement helped the Canadian economy because it lowered the price of cars in Canada and created more jobs for Canadian workers. More cars and parts were exported from Canada, than were imported from the U.S.A. However, in 1973, this situation changed. Canada began importing more cars and parts from the U.S.A. than it exported to the U.S.A. In the early 1980's, the Auto Pact continues to hurt the Canadian economy.

### The St. Lawrence Seaway

48. In 1954, Canada and the U.S.A. made an agreement to build the St. Lawrence Seaway. In 1959, the St. Lawrence Seaway was finished. It allowed ocean ships to go right up the St. Lawrence River, past the rapids, and into the Great Lakes. The Seaway has been a great help to Canada because goods can now be brought directly into and out of the central part of Canada. Canada spent \$500 000 000 to build the Seaway and the U.S.A. spent \$1 100 000 000.

### Pollution

49. In 1972, an agreement was made between Canada and the U.S.A. to clean up the Great Lakes which had become dangerously

**polluted.** For years, Canadians and Americans had dumped their wastes into the rivers and lakes. This had made the water unhealthy for fish and for people. Both countries agreed to spend billions of dollars to help the companies and cities cut down their air and water pollution. Today, a great worry to Canadians is the acid rain that is slowly killing many Canadian lakes. Acid rain comes from pollution going into the air and falling as rain into rivers and lakes. Both Canadian and American companies are responsible for this type of pollution.

### International Joint Commission

50. In 1909, the International Joint Commission was set up by Canada and the U.S.A. to settle differences along their borders. When one country wants to do something that affects the other, both countries can discuss their plans at the International Joint Commission. Often these discussions lead to the making of treaties such as the Columbia River Treaty of 1964. Canada agreed to build dams on the Columbia River and sell its hydro-electric power to the U.S.A. The price of the energy produced for thirty years was \$273 300 000.

51. In the 1980's, Canada is concerned about the Garrison Dam which is being built in the American mid-west. They are worried that this dam will pollute Canadian waters and hurt Canada's fishing industry.

### How Does American Culture Affect Canadians?

52. Canada shares many things with the U.S.A. — they have a long border, the same language, and a belief in democracy. However, Canada is also different from the U.S.A. Canada has a separate history and its people have different attitudes to many subjects. Today, many Canadians are concerned about the American influence on Canada and Canadian culture. A culture is a way of life that includes what we do, think, and accomplish.

53. Most Canadian families had a radio by the 1920's. American songs, bands, comedy shows, and adventures became very popular in Canada. Many Canadians became worried about the effects of these American programmes on Canadian culture. In 1933, Prime Minister Bennett established the Canadian Radio Broadcasting Commission (CRBC) to produce Canadian radio programmes. In 1936, the CBC went on the air and Canadians were able to hear Canadian news and programmes. Today, the CBC has its own television channel but Canadians continue to watch American news and programmes.

54. The U.S.A. has ten times more people than Canada. The Americans can afford to produce shows that are enjoyed by people all over the world. Nine of the top ten television programmes on the CBC are usually American. "Hockey Night in Canada" is the



*Crude oil slick is result of collision between two tankers in Vancouver's Narrows*

### American Attitudes Toward Canadians — Culture

"God bless the CBC, which is what Canadian culture is all about. We have our antenna turned to Canada all the time, and we listen to radio, too. You get nothing in this country like the Canadian documentaries, you get nothing like Barbara Frum or Peter Gzowski. You would think Americans would learn from that, and support public broadcasting here, but it is still the poor relation. Canada's great."

*student, University of Buffalo, New York*

"Canada produced Anne Murray, what more can I say? Fantastic!"

*insurance salesman, Richmond, Virginia*





only Canadian show that is regularly in the top ten. Of the television programmes watched by Canadians, 75 per cent are American. Through television, the average Canadian has viewed American values and way of life for 9 000 to 12 000 hours by the time she is old enough to vote. Often a Canadian knows more about the American government and law than her own. Television and radio ads influence Canadians to buy American products such as blue jeans, perfumes, soap, and cars. Many Canadians also prefer to see American movies and to read American magazines and books. Are some Canadians becoming so similar to Americans that they would not oppose Canada's joining the U.S.A.?

55. The government has tried to force Canadians to watch and listen to Canadian programmes by controlling the types of programmes that can be put on the air. In 1968, the Canadian Radio-Television Commission, the CRTC, was created by the government to control radio and television broadcasting in Canada. Half the programmes shown on Canadian television between 1800 and 2400 hours must be Canadian; 30 per cent of AM radio programmes must be Canadian. If stations do not follow these rules, they may lose their licenses and be forced out of business. American stations are not controlled by the CRTC. Many Canadian television viewers use aërials, receivers, and cable to bring American shows into their homes.

56. American culture continues to influence millions of Canadians. Should the government introduce more controls or should Canadians be allowed to watch the programmes they prefer? Perhaps the government could give more money to help improve Canadian programmes. More government control or more money? What do you think?

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—7

#### Knowing The People

- Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.  
 Mackenzie King —promised to defend Canada if it was attacked  
 Franklin Roosevelt —wanted to stop Italy's invasion of Ethiopia in 1935 by any means  
 —supported the British policy of appeasement

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

- Canada welcomed the American promise of protection in 1938 because
  - Britain was not as strong as it used to be
  - Canada was at war with Germany
  - Canada was not willing to go to war herself
  - Canada was being attacked by Russia

## Questions

- What is important about the name of the Permanent Joint Board of Defence?
- How did World War II affect Canada's economy?

## Paragraphs 8—17

### Knowing The People

1. Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

Franklin Roosevelt	—did not immediately place Canadian armed forces on the alert in 1962
John Kennedy	—decided Canada should live up to the promises to accept nuclear weapons
John Diefenbaker	—led in the creation of the United Nations in 1945
Douglas Harkness	—resigned from Diefenbaker's Cabinet over nuclear weapons
Lester Pearson	—ordered the Soviets to remove their missiles from Cuba in 1962

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Obsolete means that
  - (a) something is out-of-date
  - (b) someone is going out on a date
  - (c) someone turns you down when you ask for a date
  - (d) something is old

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Canada and the U.S.A. supported NATO and the Marshall Plan because
  - (a) they wanted to stop the takeover of countries by the U.S.S.R.
  - (b) they wanted to prevent communist takeovers in South America
  - (c) they wanted to be able to trade with the countries in western Europe
  - (d) some of the above
4. President Kennedy ordered the U.S.S.R. to remove its missiles from Cuba because
  - (a) he wanted to prove that the U.S.A. was stronger than the U.S.S.R.
  - (b) he wanted to invade Cuba
  - (c) he hated the U.S.S.R.
  - (d) the Soviet nuclear missiles could easily destroy American and Canadian cities

### Questions

5. Why did Canada and the U.S.A. build radar stations in northern Canada?

6. Why do some Canadians think that Canada should be a neutral country?

## Paragraphs 18—23

### Knowing the People

1. Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

Lester Pearson	—promised to end the war in Vietnam with honour
Lyndon Johnson	—suggested that the U.S.A. stop bombing North Vietnam and try and negotiate
Richard Nixon	—told a Canadian Prime Minister to mind his own business and not talk about the Vietnam War

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Draft dodgers are
  - (a) baseball players who are signed to play in Los Angeles
  - (b) Canadians who escape to the U.S.A. to avoid being arrested by the R.C.M.P.
  - (c) people who refuse to serve in the armed forces when they are called up
  - (d) all of the above

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The U.S.A. introduced conscription during the Vietnam War because
  - (a) they were fighting against Soviet troops
  - (b) they needed more soldiers to fight in Vietnam
  - (c) they were winning the war
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

4.
  - (a) Why did some Americans support the war in Vietnam?
  - (b) Why did some Americans oppose the war in Vietnam?
5. How did Canada help the U.S.A. and South Vietnam during the War?
6. Do you think that a country should have the power to conscript some of its citizens? Remember what Canada did during World Wars I and II, as well as what the U.S.A. did during the Vietnam War.



## Paragraphs 24—29

### Knowing The People

1. Who was the American President who opened relations between the U.S.A. and communist China?

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Detente means that
  - (a) new exploding material is used in battle
  - (b) two or more countries are opposed to each other
  - (c) two or more countries are allies
  - (d) two or more countries are becoming friendlier with each other

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Detente broke down in 1980 because
  - (a) Canada caught American spies operating in our country
  - (b) the Americans and their allies were angered by the Soviet invasion of Afghanistan
  - (c) the Soviets were angered by the Olympic boycott led by the Americans and their allies
  - (d) some of the above
  - (e) all of the above

### Questions

4. Why do you think women are not assigned to fighting positions in the armed forces?
5. Why do you think Canada's armed forces are so small?
6. Why do Canada's armed forces not have nuclear weapons?
7. Why is Canada called a "junior partner" to the U.S.A.?

## Paragraphs 30—38

### Knowing The People

1. Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

John A. Macdonald	—tried to put controls on foreign investment in Canada
Walter Gordon	—wanted to protect Canadian goods from the cheaper American goods

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Many Canadians are afraid of the large amount of foreign investment in Canada because
  - (a) they believe Canada has once again become a British colony
  - (b) they think Canadians will lose control of their country
  - (c) they fear that Canada is short of money
  - (d) it has reduced the standard of living for all Canadians
3. Branch plants help Canada and Canadians because they
  - (a) provide jobs to Canadians
  - (b) supply taxes to Canadian governments
  - (c) help to develop Canada
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

4. Do you agree with the idea that Canada is like the landlord who has sold off the rooms of his house for a high standard of living? Explain.
5. Which foreign companies create more jobs for foreigners and fewer jobs for Canadians?
6. Why was the CIC set up?
7. Why did the Canadian government stop the sale of Denison Mines to a foreign company?
8. Who can buy shares in the CDC? Why is this important?
9. Would you accept a lower standard of living to reduce the number of foreign-owned companies in Canada? Explain.

## Paragraphs 39—44

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. The environment
  - (a) is a certain place in Canada where the pipelines are built
  - (b) is another name for Foothills Pipelines Company
  - (c) provides thousands of jobs to Canadians
  - (d) is land, water, wildlife, and people
2. A crown corporation is
  - (a) owned by a foreign government
  - (b) a company that is owned by the government
  - (c) the name of a new government oil company in Canada
  - (d) all of the above

3. Renewable energy is
  - (a) oil and solar energy
  - (b) solar energy, wood, and water
  - (c) gas, solar energy, and wood
  - (d) oil, coal, and wood

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. Petro-Canada was created to
  - (a) compete with foreign-owned oil and gas companies in Canada
  - (b) give Canadians more control over the uranium industry in Canada
  - (c) give the government something to do
  - (d) none of the above

### Questions

5. What evidence is there to show that Canadians are concerned about the limited amounts of oil and gas in Canada?
6. What can Canadians do to make sure that there is enough energy for the future?
7. Where have recent discoveries of oil and gas been made in Canada?

### Paragraphs 45—51

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Polluted means
  - (a) the agreement to clean up the Great Lakes by both Canada and the U.S.A.
  - (b) the acid that helps Canadian lakes
  - (c) the effect of the wastes that are dumped into the air and water
  - (d) all of the above

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Canada depends on its trade with the U.S.A. because
  - (a) over 90 per cent of its exports are sold in the U.S.A.
  - (b) 70 per cent of the trade between the two countries has no tariffs
  - (c) over 60 per cent of Canada's exports are sold in the U.S.A.
  - (d) Japan is trying to replace Canada as the most important customer of the U.S.A.

3. The St. Lawrence Seaway helped Canada because
  - (a) it allows ocean ships to go down the St. Lawrence river and into the Great Lakes
  - (b) it allows goods on ocean ships to be brought directly into and out of the central part of Canada
  - (c) it was completed in 1959
  - (d) all of the above
4. The International Joint Commission was set up to
  - (a) build dams on the Columbia River
  - (b) sell hydro-electric power to the U.S.A.
  - (c) settle differences between Canada and the U.S.A. over their boundaries
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

5. (a) Why are some Canadians in favour of free trade between Canada and the U.S.A.?  
(b) Why are some against?
6. (a) How has the Auto Trade Pact helped Canada?  
(b) How has it hurt Canada?
7. (a) What are the dangers of pollution?  
(b) What have the U.S.A. and Canada done to control pollution?

### Paragraphs 52—56

#### Knowing The People

1. Who set up the CRBC in 1933 to produce Canadian radio programmes?

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The CRTC was set up in 1968 to
  - (a) control the number of American programmes on Canadian television and radio
  - (b) develop more exciting television programmes
  - (c) encourage Canadians to watch more television
  - (d) make Canadians watch only those programmes that the government thinks are good for them

### Questions

3. Are the government controls working to encourage Canadians to watch more Canadian programmes? Explain.
4. How do you think the government could encourage Canadians to watch more Canadian television?



## USING SOURCES

Read these two news stories and then answer the questions that follow.

### Toronto Star

April 10, 1978

*New Political Party Established To Fight Foreign Influence*

Ottawa (CP) — Canada's newest political party came into being here during the weekend, but it won't take part in any election called for this spring.

Robin Mathews, a Carleton University English professor, was named national leader of the National Party of Canada by 25 delegates at its founding convention.

Although most of the party's 103 members are from Ottawa and Toronto, there are representatives from all provinces.

Main aim of the organization — is national independence for the country.

At a news conference Sunday, Mathews said the first priority (goal) of the party is to free the country from international control — to take back control of business, culture, unions and the economy from outside influences. ...

### Globe and Mail

July 1980

*Annexing Canada is Platform of US Expansionist Party*

Washington — Canada "assuredly" will be annexed by the United States in the next 20 years, and perhaps in 10, according to the founder of a new organization, the New York-based Expansionist Party.

Suggesting a name for the combined territory, Craig Schoonmaker said breezily: "Why not the United States of Canada? We've clearly outgrown the name American because of our associations with Hawaii and Guam. And the name Canada only means a collection of huts, or a village." ...

"I've been interested in expansion since I read history as a child. If we don't expand, we probably won't be able to meet the challenges of the future. It would be to the mutual benefit of Canada and the United States to become one state," said Mr. Schoonmaker, a 32-year-old political science graduate from City University in New York whose job is revising legal documents.

Among the advantages to Canada would be that consumer prices would fall into line with lower US prices. "It's a scandal that some Canadian prices are so much higher. There have been lots of stories about people going on shopping sprees to Seattle. (U.S.A.) The Atlantic provinces would benefit in that they would become subject to larger economic development programs. The United States would be a beneficiary by having access to hydroelectric power from Quebec and Labrador and would share resources that would "enhance those of the US."

Also, Canadian "liberals and moderates" would help to break the deadlock in Congress held by conservatives and would "help our social reform".

Quebec, too, would be invited to join the United States of Canada. "If Quebec decides that geography and economics are as important as language, they would be welcome. But it would be their choice." — After the party was formed ("We decided we wanted to do things in politics that were not being done"), the Expansionists shot off letters to newspapers in each of Canada's provinces outlining their plans to readers. So far, there has been one inquiry from Manitoba about starting an Expansionist chapter there, while mail received from Canada is running 4 to 1 in favor of the party's platform, Mr. Schoonmaker said ...

"The United States has consistently expanded through the course of its history," Mr. Schoonmaker said ... "Had we not expanded in the past, we could not be a great power today." On the annexation of Canada, Mr. Schoonmaker said that Canada is not a strong central union. "There's resentment in the West of Canada that Eastern Canada — including Quebec — exploits them, that they have to protect Eastern Canadian industries with high freight rates, making it costly for them to trade east and west against north-south to the United States. "So there is some separatism there, too."

Mr. Schoonmaker cited polls that show almost 75% of Americans believe it would be in the interests of the United States to annex Canada. "You have this rather odd situation where almost  $\frac{3}{4}$  of the people in the United States favor vaguely the idea of annexing Canada and nobody's doing anything about it. The Expansionist Party wants to rally that kind of latency into the political movement."

The Canadian provinces from Quebec west are large enough "to be states in their own right", Mr. Schoonmaker said ... "Probably the best relationship (in the Maritimes), which makes good economic sense for them, too, would be to form one state of the United Provinces."

1. What was the name of the new political party in Canada and who was elected as the first leader?
2. What is the main goal of this new political party in Canada?
3. How much support has this Canadian party received?

4. What was the name of the new political party in the U.S.A.?
5. What advantages did Mr. Schoonmaker think Canadians would have if they joined the U.S.A.?
6. What would be the advantages for the U.S.A.?
7. Which country would get the best of this deal?
8. Why do you think so many Americans (75%) favour the U.S.A. annexing Canada?
9. How do you think that Mr. Mathews would look at these American proposals?
10. How do you think Canadians would vote on a referendum to join the U.S.A.?

#### KEY POINTS IN CANADIAN-AMERICAN MILITARY RELATIONS

1938	— President Roosevelt promises that the U.S.A. will protect Canada in case of an attack
1940	— Canada and the U.S.A. create the Permanent Joint Board on Defence in the Ogdensburg Agreement
1941	— Canada and the U.S.A. agree to buy war materials from each other and have their factories work together (the Hyde Park Declaration)
1945	— Canada and the U.S.A. join the United Nations
1949	— Canada and the U.S.A. join the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO)
1950-53	— Canada sends troops, with the U.S.A. and other countries, to South Korea
1956	— Canada joins the U.S.A. in criticizing the British, French, and Israeli attack on Egypt
1958	— Canada forms the North American Air Defence Agreement (NORAD) with the U.S.A.
1962	— Canada is slow to put its armed forces on full alert
1963	— Canadians debate accepting nuclear warheads and in the end accept them
1965	— Prime Minister Pearson suggests that the U.S.A. stop bombing North Vietnam for a time
1968	— Canada renews NORAD agreement
1965-73	— Canada receives many American draft dodgers
1980	— Canada joins the U.S.A. in boycotting the Olympic Games in Moscow
	— Canada buys new jet plane, the F-18, for the Canadian armed forces from the U.S.A.

#### DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS

##### Reading Charts

1. Look at the time chart of Canadian-American Military Relations above. Select the three events which you think were most important in these years and list them in order in your notebook.

Explain why you think these three events were the most important.

2. Look at the time chart of Canadian-American Economic and Cultural Relations on page 228. Make a list of the agencies that the federal government has set up to control American influence in Canada.



## KEY POINTS IN CANADIAN-AMERICAN ECONOMIC AND CULTURAL RELATIONS

1933	— the federal government establishes the Canadian Radio Broadcasting Commission
1936	— the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation goes on the air
1954	— Canada and the U.S.A. agree to build the St. Lawrence Seaway
1959	— the St. Lawrence Seaway is completed
1963	— Walter Gordon tries unsuccessfully to put controls on foreign investment in Canada
1964	— Columbia River Treaty is made between Canada and the U.S.A.
1965	— the Auto Trade Pact begins
1968	— the Canadian Radio-Television Commission is created by the federal government
1970	— the Committee for an Independent Canada is formed
1970	— the federal government stops the sale of Denison Mines to a foreign company
1971	— the federal government sets up the Canadian Development Corporation
1972	— Canada and the U.S.A. agree to clean up the Great Lakes
1973	— the federal government sets up the Foreign Investment Review Agency
1973	— Canada exports 60 per cent of its oil and 40 per cent of its gas to the U.S.A.
1975	— Petro-Canada is set up
1977	— Canada and the U.S.A. agree to build a gas pipeline from Alaska, through Canada, to the U.S.A.
1979	— Canada exports 19 per cent of its oil and 38 per cent of its gas to the U.S.A.

### EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

The class should divide into several groups with an even number of students in each group. Each group should select a different discussion topic from the following list. The students in one-half of each group should write down their reasons for supporting the topic. Students in the other half of each group should write down their reasons for disagreeing with the topic. The text should be re-read as well as any other material provided by the teacher. Students may then debate the topic within their group or in front of the entire class.

- Canada needs the U.S.A. to help defend it in case of a nuclear war
- Canada should be a neutral country, separate from the U.S.A. and U.S.S.R.

- Canada's planes and missiles should be armed with nuclear weapons
- Canada should make all men and women take a year of military training when they turn nineteen
- The Canadian government needs stronger controls on foreign investment in Canada
- More branch plants are needed in Canada
- Canada should not sell oil or gas to the U.S.A.
- Canada and the U.S.A. should have free trade in all products
- The Canadian government should require Canadians to watch more Canadian movies and television programmes

# CHAPTER FOURTEEN

## Political Leaders in Canada, 1945-1981

**AIM: Who Governed Canada Between 1945 and 1981?**

### The Liberals in Power

1. When World War II ended in 1945, there were nearly 1 000 000 Canadian men and women in the armed forces. Canadians remembered the difficulties experienced by soldiers after World War I. They also remembered the Great Depression during the 1930's. There had been no jobs and the government had done very little to help the people. Canadians were afraid that the same thing would happen after World War II. They wanted the government to create jobs for the returning soldiers. Canadians also wanted an end to the rationing and wanted houses, cars, and furniture. People expected the government to do something to help them.

2. Before the war, in 1927, old age pensions had been introduced (\$20 a month) but only for people over 70 years old. In 1940, Mackenzie King's Liberal government introduced Unemployment Insurance to provide money for those people who had lost their jobs. In 1943, a Gallup Poll showed that 29 per cent of the Canadians interviewed said that they would vote for the CCF

### GALLUP POLL 1943

CCF	29%
Liberals	28%
Progressive Conservatives	28%





### Amounts of Baby Bonus, 1944

A child under 5 years \$5 a month  
A child 5 to 9 years \$6 a month  
A child 10 to 12 years \$7 a month  
A child 13 to 15 years \$8 a month

### The Personality of W.L. Mackenzie King

#### *His dog:*

Those who sought to humanize the Prime Minister invariably spoke of his attachment for his little Irish terrier, Pat. Pat was King's constant companion for some 17 years. He was the only one whom King could talk to in confidence. Pat probably was the repository of more state secrets over the years than one could shake a stick at...—King always claimed that his dog had an uncanny political sense, that he seemed to know if the day had gone well or badly for his master. He believed that a man could learn a great deal from a dog's sense of devotion and loyalty. "That dog taught me much," he declared on one occasion.

#### *Tobacco:*

Because King disliked tobacco smoke, ministers made a habit of knocking out their pipes and snuffing out their cigars and cigarettes when he entered the room.

Party (Co-operative Commonwealth Federation Party) if there were an election. The Liberals and the Progressive Conservatives were very worried about this great increase in the support for the CCF. This party wanted more benefits for the poor and needy and higher taxes for those who earned more money. In 1944, a provincial election was held in Saskatchewan and the first CCF government was elected. Its leader, Tommy Douglas, became the first CCF Premier in Canada.

3. W.L. Mackenzie King knew that more changes were needed to win the federal election of 1945. In 1944, his Liberal government introduced family allowances which provided government money to families with children. The amount of money received depended on the ages of the children. In 1945, a good wage in Canada was \$30 a week and these family allowance cheques helped Canadian families make ends meet. It also encouraged them to have more children, a fact that concerned some Canadians. There was also a concern about creating a **welfare state** in Canada. This is a type of government which provides many benefits to the people at great expense.

4. Mackenzie King's government also spent millions of dollars on benefits for the veterans who had fought for their country. They were given pensions, loans, and money to complete their education. Canada's second World War heroes were well-treated by the government. The government also helped home-builders, farmers, and fishermen. In the election of 1945, the Liberals elected 125 of 245 MPs, and Mackenzie King remained Prime Minister. He had introduced enough changes to satisfy the Canadian voters.



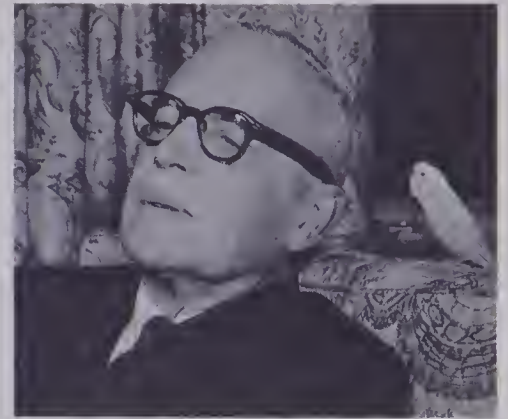
MACKENZIE KING SERVES



5. By 1948, Mackenzie King had been Prime Minister for twenty-two years and he decided to retire. He had been Prime Minister longer than anyone else. Louis St. Laurent, a lawyer from Quebec, became the new leader of the Liberal Party and the new Prime Minister of Canada. He became Prime Minister when most Canadians were prosperous. There were plenty of factory jobs; goods were being produced that Canadians had not been able to buy during the war. The returning soldiers were getting married and setting up new lives. Over 40 000 war brides and their 20 000 children arrived in Canada after World War II. These war brides came mainly from England where Canadian soldiers had been stationed. In 1946, there were 33 000 more marriages in Canada than in 1944. For fifteen years after 1945, Canadians had more children per family than any other industrialized country. This period in Canada's history is sometimes called the Baby Boom. Between 1945 and 1955, about 3 000 000 immigrants came to Canada, adding to Canada's growing population.

6. In the 1949 and 1953 federal elections, St. Laurent won large majorities. He received support from all parts of the country. Canadian voters did not want to change governments when they were doing well. St. Laurent was well-liked by most Canadians. During the elections, he took train rides across Canada and talked with the people. He shook hands and kissed babies, and people called him "Uncle Louis".

7. St. Laurent's Liberal government worked to develop Canada in several ways. In 1949, it made the Supreme Court of



*Louis St. Laurent*



*English war brides waiting to join husbands in Canada*

*Acquiring Canadian tastes*



Canada the most important court in this country. Before 1949, Canadian court cases could be taken to a court in Britain called the Judicial Committee of the Privy Council. This court could change decisions made by the Supreme Court of Canada. After 1949, a decision made by the Supreme Court of Canada was final. A case could no longer be taken to a British court; Canada was becoming more independent. In 1952, St. Laurent chose the first Canadian Governor-General as the King's representative in Canada. His name was Vincent Massey. All the other Governors-General had been British.

*Mackenzie King and Joey Smallwood*



### Newfoundland Joins Canada

8. In 1949, Newfoundland joined Canada and became Canada's tenth province. During the 1930's, the Great Depression had really hurt Newfoundland and its people. Newfoundland was under the control of the British government and its people had close ties to Britain. World War II had improved living conditions because it had provided the Islanders with more jobs. When World War II ended, the people of Newfoundland had to make a decision about their future. There were several choices. Newfoundland could become independent from Britain, it could continue to be a British colony, it could join Canada, or it could join the U.S.A. There were many arguments to support all four choices. Meetings were held to discuss the choices. Canada wanted Newfoundland to join Canada and offered the Islanders the benefits of unemployment insurance and family allowances. A Newfoundlander named Joey Smallwood became the leader of those Islanders who wanted to join Confederation. In 1948, a referendum was held in Newfoundland. The results of the first vote were not clear. A second vote was held one month later. On March 31, 1949, Newfoundland became Canada's tenth province and Joey Smallwood became Newfoundland's first Premier.

#### FIRST REFERENDUM IN NEWFOUNDLAND

For Independence	69 000 votes
To Join Canada	64 000 votes
To Stay with Britain	22 000 votes

#### SECOND REFERENDUM IN NEWFOUNDLAND

To Join Canada	78 323 votes
For Independence	71 334 votes

*C.D. Howe and his "cover story"*



### The Pipeline Debate

9. In 1914, gas and oil had been discovered in Alberta's Turner Valley. Until 1947, no other major discoveries were made, and Alberta's oil and gas had begun to run out. But on February 13, 1947, oil was discovered at Leduc, Alberta. This was the beginning of many oil and gas discoveries in Alberta. They were to bring billions of dollars to the province of Alberta.

10. The oil and gas had been discovered, but how was it to be used? Was it to be sold to Americans or Canadians? Who was going to pay for and build the pipelines to carry the oil and gas to consumers? In 1956, C.D. Howe was the Minister of Trade and Commerce in St. Laurent's Cabinet. He wanted to build the pipeline through Canada. An American company called Trans-Canada Pipelines Limited secured the job of building the pipeline

from Alberta to Winnipeg, Manitoba. However, the American company did not have enough money to build the complete pipeline and C.D. Howe agreed to lend the company \$80 000 000. Before the pipeline could be started, Parliament had to approve the plan. The CCF and Progressive Conservative MPs were opposed to giving the job to an American company. They thought that the government was selling out to the Americans. They argued that a Canadian company should build the pipeline. In order for the pipeline to be built, Parliament had to give its approval by June 7, 1956. The opposition MPs decided to debate the plan until after June 7.

11. In order to have parliamentary approval of the pipeline before the deadline, St. Laurent decided to bring in **closure**. This stopped the debate. The opposition MPs were very upset. As elected representatives of the people, they felt that they had a responsibility to argue against the pipeline. Before the vote to approve the pipeline could be taken, the opposition MPs walked out of the House of Commons. The Liberal government approved the pipeline.

### The Diefenbaker Years

12. In 1956, the Progressive Conservatives had chosen John George Diefenbaker as their leader. He was an excellent speaker in the House of Commons. In 1957, Louis St. Laurent called a federal election. The Liberals had been in power since 1935. Before the election, Diefenbaker argued that the Liberals had been in power too long. He said that the Liberals had been wrong to bring in closure during the pipeline debate. They should have allowed the elected representatives to debate the pipeline issue. He promised Canada a bright future if he was elected Prime Minister. In 1957, Diefenbaker was 61 years old and St. Laurent was 75. On June 10, 1957, the votes were counted and to the surprise of many, the Progressive Conservatives won a minority government. John Diefenbaker was the new Prime Minister of Canada.

13. From 1957 to 1958, the Progressive Conservative government cut taxes, helped farmers in the West, and raised the old age pension from \$40 to \$55 a month. John Diefenbaker appointed Ellen Fairclough to his Cabinet. She was the first woman in Canadian history to be a Cabinet Minister. Louis St. Laurent retired as the leader of the Liberal Party, and in 1958, Lester B. Pearson became the new leader. The Liberals wanted to have another election because they thought that, with a new leader, they would win. John Diefenbaker also wanted an election because he wanted to have a majority government. He did not want to depend on another political party to stay in power.

14. By 1958, support for the Liberal Party had diminished in most provinces. British Columbia and Alberta had provincial

### The Pipeline Debate, 1956

C.D. Howe, Liberal,  
May 14, 1956

"No words uttered in the House of Commons can convince the would-be gas consumers in Manitoba and Ontario that there is no hurry about building the gas pipeline system."

Stanley Knowles, CCF,  
May 25, 1956

"How the Liberals have changed. Sir Wilfrid Laurier had the patience to listen to a debate for six months and still he did not impose closure."

P.M. Louis St. Laurent,  
May 22, 1956

"That line should be built and it will be built and the future generations of Canadians will be glad that it will have been built. It is an important factor in maintaining the growth of the Canadian economy that has been so gratifying during these last years."

*Ellen Fairclough*





### 1957 ELECTION RESULTS

Progressive Conservatives	112
Liberals	105
CCF	25
Social Credit	19
Others	4
	<hr/>
	265

### 1958 ELECTION RESULTS

Progressive Conservatives	208
Liberals	49
CCF	8
	<hr/>
	265

"One Canada. One Canada, where-in Canadians will have preserved to them the control of their own economic and political destiny. Sir John A. Macdonald gave his life to this party. He opened the West. He saw Canada from East to West. I see a new Canada—a Canada of the North.

Canadians realize your opportunities!

This is the message I give to you my fellow Canadians, not one of defeatism. Jobs! Jobs for hundreds of thousands of Canadian people. A new Vision! A new hope! A new soul for Canada."

*John Diefenbaker, February 11, 1958*

### 1962 ELECTION RESULTS

Progressive Conservatives	116
Liberals	100
NDP (CCF)	19
Social Credit	30
	<hr/>
	265

Social Credit governments. Saskatchewan had a CCF government. Ontario, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia had Progressive Conservative governments. Quebec had a Union Nationale government, which was very conservative. Only Prince Edward Island and Newfoundland were run by Liberal governments.

15. Another federal election was held in 1958. John Diefenbaker promised Canadians a new future. He said that if his party was elected, his government would create thousands of jobs for Canadians. He promised to develop Canada's rich northern lands and to regain control of Canada's resources from the Americans. He also wanted to increase Canada's trade with Britain. John Diefenbaker told Canadians to believe in themselves and in Canada. Canadians were impressed with Diefenbaker's promises and his powerful speeches. In the 1958 election, Diefenbaker's Progressive Conservatives won the largest majority in Canadian history. They swept the country. For the first time since 1887, the Progressive Conservatives had a majority of the seats in Quebec. The country was united, and the future seemed bright for Canada.

16. The next four years were not as good as Diefenbaker had promised. Unemployment went up and the economy slowed down. The thousands of jobs which Diefenbaker had promised did not appear. Many Canadians were angry when John Diefenbaker stopped the building of the Canadian AVRO "Arrow", a fast Canadian jet fighter; thousands of workers lost their jobs. He said that Canada could not afford the jet. Instead, Diefenbaker ordered the American Bomarc missile for Canada's defence. Many French Canadians were upset because Diefenbaker did not appoint French Canadians to important positions in the Cabinet. They felt that the PC Party was ignoring French Canada and its needs. In 1962, the Canadian dollar fell in value and this worried many Canadians.

17. But the Diefenbaker government did some things that pleased Canadians. It developed Canada's North by building roads. It sold large amounts of western wheat to Russia and China which made the Diefenbaker government popular in the West. Diefenbaker also introduced a law called the Canadian Bill of Rights which listed the civil rights of all people living in Canada. John Diefenbaker was very proud of this law which tried to protect ordinary Canadians. In 1960, the Diefenbaker government gave Indians on reservations the right to vote in federal elections.

18. But Diefenbaker and his government lost the support of voters in Quebec, in Newfoundland, and in Canada's large cities. Rural voters (those people living in the country), voters in the Maritimes, and in the Prairies still supported the Progressive Conservatives. In the election of 1962, Diefenbaker continued to

John Diefenbaker was born in 1895 in Ontario. His father was a school teacher and a civil servant. In 1903, the Diefenbaker family moved to Saskatchewan. John Diefenbaker's family had a strong belief in education and when he wanted to quit high school, his mother forced him to continue. He served in the army during World War I with the rank of Lieutenant. Graduating from the University of Saskatchewan, he became a lawyer in 1919. He was an excellent debater and defence lawyer. He believed that everyone should have the opportunity to achieve a better way of life. John Diefenbaker married Edna May Brower in 1929; she died in 1951. He married Olive E. Palmer in 1953.

John Diefenbaker was very interested in politics but he lost his first five elections. Finally, in 1940, he was elected to the House of Commons and was never defeated again in his riding. He represented Lake Centre, Saskatchewan until 1953 and then Prince Albert, Saskatchewan until 1979. He tried to become the leader of the Progressive Conservative Party in 1948, but lost to George Drew. He was elected as the PC leader in 1956. Diefenbaker's Progressive Conservatives defeated St. Laurent's Liberals in the 1957 election. They won a minority government. The Progressive Conservatives were back in power after twenty-two years of Liberal rule. In the election of 1958, Diefenbaker's Progressive Conservatives won 208 of the 265 seats in the House of Commons. It was a great victory for John Diefenbaker. In the election of 1962, his party lost 92 seats, but he remained as Prime Minister. One of his great failures was the loss of French Canadian support in Quebec after the 1958 election. In 1963, the Progressive Conservatives were defeated by the Liberals. John Diefenbaker remained as leader of the PC Party until 1967. He fought to remain as the leader, but was defeated by Robert Stanfield. Diefenbaker continued to sit in the House of Commons as an elected Member of Parliament and as an honoured member until his death in 1979.

John Diefenbaker was a great story teller and loved to talk about Canada's past and about the lives of ordinary Canadians. He was a fighter who never admitted defeat. Throughout his life, Diefenbaker believed that Canada should remain close to Britain. He believed in the monarchy and wanted to keep the British tradition alive in Canada.

John Diefenbaker had strong opinions on most subjects and rarely changed his mind. He fought for his beliefs which made him friends as well as enemies. Canadians are deeply divided in their opinions of him. But Diefenbaker loved Canada and worked hard for his country and the people of Canada.



## John George Diefenbaker



**March 11, 1958**

"Catch the vision! Catch the vision of the kind of Canada this can be!...I've seen this vision; I've seen this future of Canada. I ask you to have faith in this land and faith in our people."





*Bomarc missile*

### 1963 Federal Election

#### LIBERAL MINORITY GOVERNMENT

Liberals	129
Progressive Conservatives	95
Social Credit	24
New Democrat	17
	<hr/>
	265

*Walter Gordon*



talk about Canada's bright future. L.B. Pearson, the Liberal leader, spoke softly and did not excite his listeners. When the votes were counted, the Progressive Conservatives had a minority government—John Diefenbaker was still Prime Minister of Canada. The great surprise of the election was in Quebec. There were twenty-six representatives of the Social Credit Party elected in Quebec. Réal Caouette, the Quebec Social Credit leader, was an exciting speaker and his platform was well-liked by the farmers in Quebec.

19. John Diefenbaker had a strong belief in Canada and wanted Canada to be independent of the U.S.A. At the same time, he wanted to defend Canada from communist Russia. The Diefenbaker government had bought the American Bomarc missile to defend Canada. But the missile needed atomic bombs to be effective. Diefenbaker refused to accept the nuclear bombs because he was against American control over these weapons in Canada. Pearson now changed his mind and said that he would accept American atomic weapons in Canada. Diefenbaker's party was divided on the issue. On February 5, 1963, the opposition parties defeated the Diefenbaker government in the House of Commons, and another election was called.

### Five Years With Lester Pearson

20. In the 1963 federal election, the Canadian voters were very uncertain. They admired Diefenbaker's fighting style, but they did not think that he could run the country. They were not ready to swing to smaller parties like the New Democratic and Social Credit Parties. Their leaders, Tommy Douglas and Réal Caouette, were great public speakers, but Canadians were not convinced by their promises. Lester Pearson did not excite or entertain the voters as the other leaders did, but the Liberals seemed to be the best choice. The Liberals did elect the most MPs to the House of Commons, but no party won a majority.

21. The West strongly supported the Progressive Conservatives and the Liberals placed third behind the New Democrats. Quebec strongly supported the Liberals and the Progressive Conservatives placed third behind the Social Crediters. No political party and no leader won strong support from all parts of the country.

22. Lester Pearson and the Liberals had promised swift action to clear up those problems that the voters had thought were caused by the PC government. The Liberals promised "60 Days of Decision". Walter Gordon, the Minister of Finance, brought a **budget** into the House of Commons. A budget shows how the government plans to raise and spend money. Gordon wanted to control American investment in Canada. He wanted to help Canadians buy back their economy from the Americans. Many businessmen and politicians attacked Gordon's independent ideas.

Lester 'Mike' Pearson did not plan to become a politician when he was a boy. His father was a minister and his family moved from town to town as his father changed churches. Pearson was a good student in school and he loved sports. He played hockey, lacrosse, baseball, and tennis. He was seventeen years old and a university student when World War I broke out in 1914. In April, 1915, he joined the army and was sent with the Medical Corps to Greece. After two years, he was trained as an officer and assigned to the air force, but he saw no action.

After World War I, Mike Pearson returned to university in Toronto and then in Oxford, England. He studied history and played hockey for the Oxford team in Europe. After he graduated, he tried his luck in business and then turned to teaching. The University of Toronto hired Pearson to teach history for \$2000 per year in 1924. He also coached football and tennis. He married one of his students, Maryon Moody, from Winnipeg.

In 1928, Pearson wrote the examinations to become an officer in the Canadian foreign service. Mike Pearson had an exciting career as a **diplomat**. Diplomats are people who are sent to foreign countries to represent their own country. They settle disagreements and make deals between the two countries. Mike Pearson was at the League of Nations in 1935 when Italy attacked Ethiopia. From 1935 to 1941, Mike Pearson was the second-in-command at Canada's embassy in Britain. He watched the start of World War II from London, England. In 1942, he went to Washington and became Canada's Ambassador to the U.S.A. in 1945. Canada's diplomats had to work hard to protect Canada's interests, while still co-operating with the allies during World War II.

Pearson strongly supported the creation of the United Nations after World War II. He believed that the countries of the world had to find a way to live in peace. In 1946, Pearson became the Deputy-Minister of External Affairs. He was the top civil servant in the Department. It was his job to advise the Minister of External Affairs, Louis St. Laurent, on Canada's foreign policy. When St. Laurent became Prime Minister in 1948, Pearson made the jump into politics. He quit his job as a civil servant and joined the Liberal party. He was elected an MP and joined the Liberal Cabinet as Minister of External Affairs.

Pearson served as Minister of External Affairs under St. Laurent until the Liberals were defeated in the 1957 election. In 1957, Pearson received the Nobel Peace Prize for helping to solve the Suez Crisis.

St. Laurent retired in 1958, and 'Mike' Pearson was elected the new leader of the Liberal Party. Suddenly the long string of successes in his life came to an end. 'Mike' Pearson came up against



Lester Bowles Pearson





John Diefenbaker. In the 1958 federal election, Pearson and the Liberals suffered their worst defeat. For six years, Pearson sat in the House of Commons as Leader of the Opposition. Then in 1963, Pearson won the election and became Prime Minister of Canada. In the four elections in which Pearson faced Diefenbaker, the two party leaders debated and argued and criticized each other. Mike Pearson won two of the elections, but he was never able to win a majority government.

As Prime Minister, Mike Pearson did have some success. His government introduced the Canada Pension Plan, medicare, a new flag, and united armed forces. He had less success with French-English relations and federal-provincial relations. Perhaps his greatest failure was his lack of a plan to control American investments in Canada. All his skills as a diplomat could not solve these old Canadian problems.

Lester Pearson retired as leader of the Liberal Party and as Prime Minister of Canada in 1968. He became a professor at Carleton University and started writing his autobiography. He died in 1972.

### Walter Gordon's Opinions About Foreign Investment in Canada

Canada has benefited greatly from the investment of foreign capital, (money) and we will need more of it. But to suggest, as is sometimes done, that it makes no difference who owns Canadian companies, is (false). There are those who... see no cause for concern about the size and character of foreign investment in Canada...

We believe, or many of us believe, that economic independence and political independence go hand in hand. In wanting to (keep) our independence, we are no different than the British, the French, the Swiss, the Japanese, or the people of other countries, including the United States. Some may call this nationalism, and so it is. It is a proper respect, loyalty, and enthusiasm for one's country,... and confidence about its future.

Prime Minister Pearson did not support his Minister of Finance, and Gordon was forced to change his budget. This was very embarrassing. The Liberals looked to be just as weak and divided as the Progressive Conservatives. The "60 Days of Decision" were lost in debate and indecision.

23. However, the Liberal government did not change its mind on defence plans. The government decided to unite the Canadian Army, the Royal Canadian Navy, and the Royal Canadian Air Force into one unit called the Canadian Armed Forces. Paul Hellyer, the Minister of Defence, said that this would make Canada's small fighting forces more efficient in NATO and UN peacekeeping operations. These operations already involved planes, ships, and soldiers working together. Uniting the forces would also save the taxpayers money.

24. Many officers and veterans opposed this change. Diefenbaker and the Progressive Conservatives also opposed the change. They said that the Canadian Army, Navy, and Air Force had great fighting records. They accused the Liberals of having no respect for Canada's past. Nevertheless, the forces were united. The Canadian Armed Forces have served with great success in their new dark green uniforms.

25. Prime Minister Pearson faced other problems during his five years in office. One area was French-English relations. French Canadians had trouble finding jobs with companies and with the federal government. They had to learn English to advance in their jobs. There were few French schools for their children outside

Quebec. Some French Canadians were being assimilated into the English way of life. Many French Canadians were afraid that their culture was disappearing. A few terrorists in the Front de Libération du Québec (FLQ) robbed banks, bombed mail boxes, and bombed government buildings. They wanted an independent Quebec. A small group of French Canadians led by Pierre Bourgault and Marcel Chaput formed the first separatist party. Even the Quebec Liberal Party demanded more powers for the Quebec provincial government.

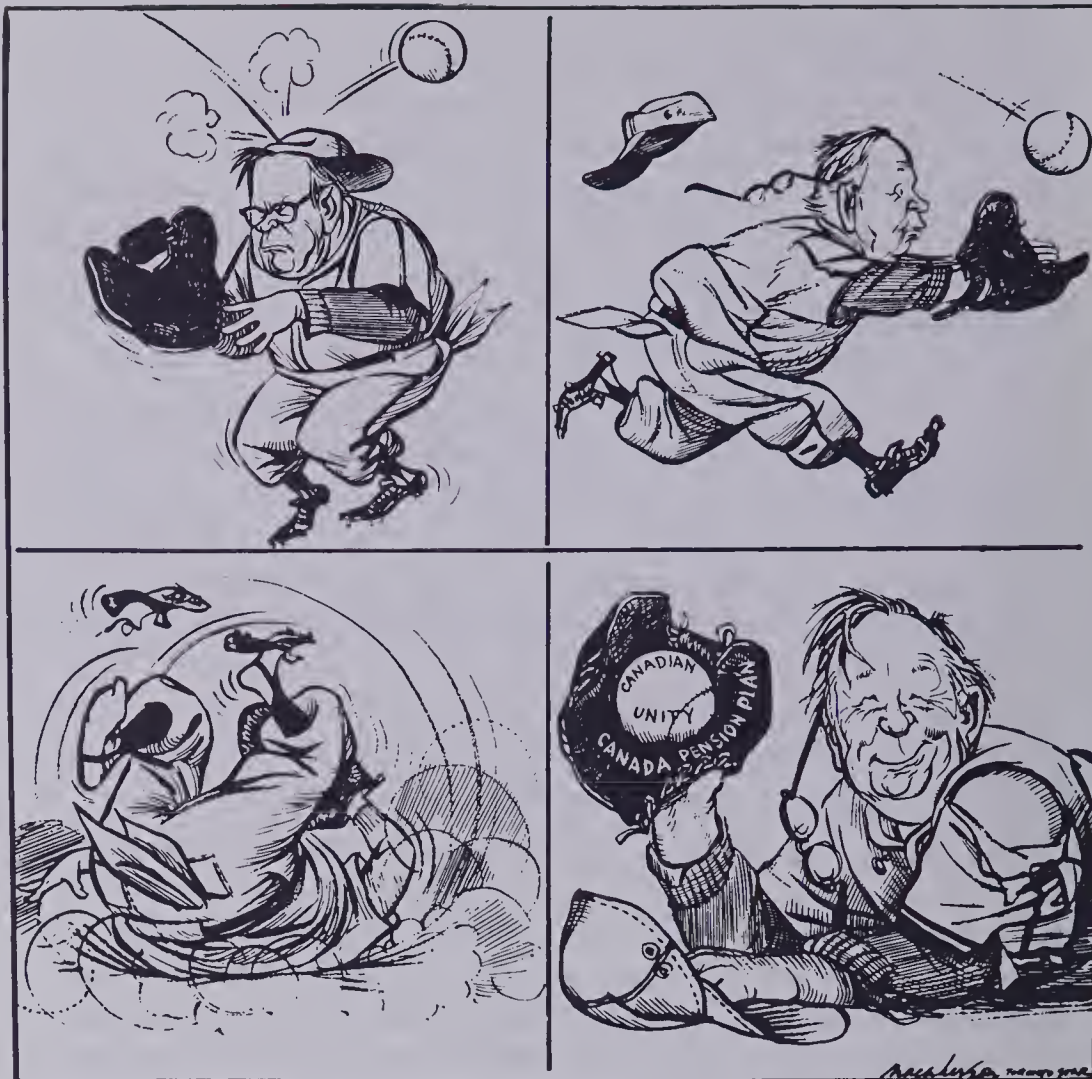
26. In 1963, Prime Minister Pearson appointed a Royal Commission to study and suggest ways to improve relations between English and French Canadians. The Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism, or Bi and Bi Commission, worked for seven years, and made many important suggestions. The federal government made many changes in the federal civil service. New Brunswick and Ontario made changes in their educational and legal systems. Other provinces made few changes. It was still very difficult for a French-speaking Canadian to visit, live, or work in most parts of Canada.

27. The Liberals had also promised to improve pensions and to provide medical care for all Canadians. These plans were the responsibility of the provinces. Some of the bigger and richer provinces like Ontario, Quebec, and British Columbia did not want the federal government to interfere. Some of the smaller and poorer provinces could not afford these expensive plans on their own. Pearson offered to have the federal government share the costs with the provinces. Premier Lesage of Quebec opposed a Canadian pension plan. He wanted the federal government to give the provinces more tax dollars and let the provinces run their own plans. In the end, Pearson compromised. A Canada Pension Plan and a Quebec Pension Plan were set up. People pay into these plans and when they turn 65, they receive a monthly pension cheque. They also receive an old age pension from the federal government.

28. A medicare plan was also set up for all Canadians. Each province ran the plan within its own boundaries. When Canadians became sick, they could visit their doctors or be hospitalized without paying large health bills. People in other countries, like the U.S.A., think Canadians are lucky to have this health plan.

29. The new demands of the provinces and the French Canadians put Pearson and the federal government in a difficult position. The provinces wanted more power and money from the federal government. The federal government and the provinces talked about changing the constitution (B.N.A. Act) in 1964, but Quebec did not think that enough changes were suggested. No agreement was reached. In 1967, Premier John Robarts of Ontario invited all the provinces to a "Confederation of Tomorrow





Conference" in Toronto. The provinces talked about some constitutional changes. However, the federal government and the provinces still failed to agree at the constitutional conference in Ottawa in 1968. Constitutional talks continued in the 1970's without success.

30. The problems of American influence, French-English relations, and provincial demands raised serious questions about Canada's future. Prime Minister Pearson decided that something had to be done to strengthen Canadians' pride in their country. He suggested a national flag. Thousands of new flag designs were submitted by Canadians and finally the red maple leaf on a white background with red borders was selected. Diefenbaker and the Progressive Conservatives wanted to keep the Red Ensign as Canada's flag. They accused the Liberals of trying to cut Canada's ties with Britain. They said that the Liberals had no respect for Canada's history or traditions. The new flag was debated in the House of Commons between June 5 and December 13, 1964. The new flag was finally passed and it flew for the first time over Parliament Hill on February 15, 1965. The flag debate divided Canadians at the time. However, as years passed, Canadians became very proud of their new flag. The Red Maple Leaf flew over Canada's centennial celebrations in 1967.

Raising the new flag



31. Prime Minister Pearson also hoped to give Canada a new national anthem to replace "God Save the Queen". The fight over the flag made him change his mind. Canadians had to wait until 1980 for Parliament to make "O Canada" the official national anthem.

32. The Canada Pension Plan and the idea of a new flag failed to win many more votes for the Liberals in the 1965 federal election. Prime Minister Pearson had asked for a majority government and was very disappointed when the Liberals failed to win it. The West still voted for the Progressive Conservatives while Quebec voted for the Liberals. The Liberals had failed to unite the country.

33. The mid 1960's were also years of scandal. In 1965, Yvon Dupuis, a Minister in Pearson's Cabinet, was forced to resign from the Cabinet. He was found guilty of accepting a \$10 000 bribe to help a man obtain a racetrack licence. Later in 1965, the public learned that some Liberals had used their money and influence to help a Montreal gangster and drug dealer, Lucien Rivard. This eventually led to the Minister of Justice leaving Pearson's Cabinet. Then, in 1966, George Spencer, a postal employee, was fired for selling information to Soviet agents. The Progressive Conservatives accused the Liberals of failing to protect Canada from foreign spies. The Liberals fought back; they revealed the Munsinger case.

34. This was the most exciting scandal. Gerda Munsinger had been a prostitute and small-time spy for the Soviets in Germany. She immigrated to Canada with her husband in 1955. In 1960, she was the mistress of Pierre Sevigny, Associate Minister of National Defence in Diefenbaker's Cabinet. When Diefenbaker learned of this, he had warned Sevigny to stop seeing Mrs. Munsinger. However, Diefenbaker kept Sevigny as Associate Minister of Defence. The investigations into these scandals did not prove any danger to national security or serious corruption, but the scandals did make exciting news. They showed that Canadians were no different and no better than the Americans and the British. However, they did make Canadians a little suspicious and tired of politicians.

35. Fortunately, Canada's centennial in 1967 gave the country a chance to rise above the fighting and mud-slinging of the politicians. Canadians found many ways to celebrate Canada's hundredth birthday. Local communities built libraries, galleries, halls, parks, arenas, sports fields, or swimming pools to mark this great point in Canada's history. The Expo '67 World's Fair in Montreal was the centre of these celebrations. Canadians travelled across their own country in greater numbers than ever before. Perhaps the funniest centennial celebration was in Bowsman, Manitoba. The town built a new sewage system as its centennial





project. When the sewers were completed, they held a Centennial Privy Parade with a bonfire to get rid of their old wooden outhouses.

36. In September, 1967, John Diefenbaker was forced out as leader of the Progressive Conservative Party. He had hoped to serve as Canada's Prime Minister during the centennial celebrations. However, his party had lost the federal elections of 1963 and 1965. The Progressive Conservatives decided to hold a meeting to elect a new party leader. Mr. Diefenbaker ran for re-election, but he came fifth on the first vote. Robert Stanfield was elected the new leader of the PC Party.

37. As the centennial year came to an end, Pearson announced his plans to retire. Lester Pearson had failed to unite the country behind him. The problems of American influence, French Canadians, and the provinces remained. However, during his years as Prime Minister, the economy had boomed and most people prospered. The centennial year left most Canadians happy and proud of their country.

### Pierre Trudeau and Canada

38. The 1960's were influenced by the young people. Styles changed—longer hair, mini skirts, blue jeans, and rock music. Companies aimed their advertising and sales at the large group of teenagers and college students. The Baby Boom had created a large market of young people—all at once. The young people set out to change society. Society is any community of people who live together. In the 1960's, there were more teenagers in Canadian society than ever before. These young people were well educated and television had made them more aware of the world. There was student opposition to the Vietnam War and the draft in the U.S.A. The young people questioned their schools and their governments more closely.

39. In 1968, a new politician captured the imaginations of many Canadians, especially the young. Pierre Trudeau was forty-eight years old in 1968. He was an eager canoer, skier, scuba diver, and had a brown belt in judo. He was a wealthy bachelor who enjoyed dating bright, beautiful women. He had studied in Montreal, Boston, Paris, and London, and had visited China and Russia. During the 1940's and 1950's, he had joined in the struggle against the very conservative Premier of Quebec, Maurice Duplessis. Trudeau worked as a lawyer, writer, and university professor.

40. In 1965, Trudeau joined the Liberal Party with two other well known French Canadians. Jean Marchand was a union organizer and Gerard Pelletier was a newspaper man. They were called the "three wise men". They believed in Canada and wanted to keep the country united. They were opposed to separatism in



*A mini-skirt of the '60's*

Quebec. These three men were elected as Liberal MPs in the 1965 federal election. Pierre Trudeau wore a sports jacket and sandals into the House of Commons. His casual style angered older members of the House of Commons such as John Diefenbaker, but it appealed to the newspapers and the young people across the country. In 1967, Trudeau became Minister of Justice in Pearson's Cabinet. At the February, 1968, federal-provincial constitutional conference, Trudeau was very visible. He defended the federal government against the demands of Premier Daniel Johnson of Quebec on national television. His strong showing on television led many Liberals to ask him to run for the Liberal Party leadership.

41. A Liberal Party meeting of about 2400 members was held in April, 1968, to choose a new leader to replace Lester Pearson. Trudeau was elected; his quick smile and sharp answers to questions had impressed many. Since the Liberal Party had the most MPs in the House of Commons, Trudeau became Canada's fifteenth Prime Minister. He decided to have a federal election on June 25, 1968, to give the Canadian voters a chance to express their opinions on his leadership.

42. During the election campaign, Prime Minister Trudeau promised a "Just Society" for Canada. He did not explain this in detail. People flocked to see him. Young people cheered wildly at his meetings. Women tried to kiss or touch him. This amazing response was called "Trudeaumania" by the reporters.

43. The new leader of the Progressive Conservative Party, Robert Stanfield, could not compete with Trudeau's style. Stanfield was an honest, slow-speaking, solid politician. He had been an excellent Premier of Nova Scotia for eleven years before becoming the PC leader. But, in 1968, he could not stop "Trudeaumania". Tommy Douglas of the New Democrats and R  al Caouette of the Cr  ditistes were also left behind.

44. In the 1962, 1963, and 1965 elections, the Canadian voters had been divided. They had elected minority governments. But in 1968, the Canadian voters elected a majority government. The Liberals won more seats in the West than they had won in any of the six elections since 1948.

45. The people had high hopes for this new leader. They expected bold and exciting changes even though Trudeau had not promised any changes. The people waited for action. They were disappointed. Prime Minister Trudeau moved slowly and cautiously. All areas of government were studied carefully—external affairs, defence, taxes, pensions, and the constitution. Changes came slowly.

46. The Official Languages Act was passed in 1969 with the support of all political parties. This law made English and French, Canada's official languages. Any citizen could deal with the federal

*Pearson, Trudeau, and Johnson*



#### 1968 Federal Election

##### LIBERAL MAJORITY GOVERNMENT

Liberals	155
Progressive Conservatives	72
New Democrats	22
Social Credit	14
Other	1
<hr/>	
	264



government in either language. The Trudeau government also raised old age pensions, cut income taxes for the poorest Canadians, and doubled unemployment insurance payments. None of these changes seemed very new or exciting to the public.

47. Trudeau did act swiftly when the FLQ terrorists kidnapped James Cross and murdered Pierre Laporte in October, 1970. The Prime Minister used the War Measures Act, sent the army into Quebec, and hundreds of people were put in jail. The Canadian people supported his actions at the time. Later, they wondered if he had used too much force.

48. The people could not understand this man. Everyone knew Trudeau was clever, but many thought he was cold. He did not seem to appreciate the people's love and admiration or to return it. Some people began to turn against Prime Minister Trudeau.

49. The main issue that angered people was the economy. The federal government was spending large amounts of money on pensions, and health and unemployment insurance. The debt was increasing. Prices were rising and inflation became a problem. To fight inflation, Trudeau cut spending plans. Unemployment doubled in 2½ years to 7 per cent. Although inflation began to drop, most Canadians did not notice; they were too anxious that they might lose their jobs.

50. In the 1972 federal election, the voters showed their anger with Trudeau. They were not ready to fully accept Stanfield, so the country elected a minority Liberal government. Trudeau was still the Prime Minister, but he and the Liberals needed the support of David Lewis and the New Democrats to stay in power.

51. Trudeau was very surprised by the election results. He learned his lessons quickly. He thanked the Canadian people for giving him a second chance to be Prime Minister and began to rebuild the Liberal Party. In the House of Commons, the Liberals, with the support of the New Democrats, increased family allowances and old age and veterans' pensions. They also passed laws to protect the consumer from the increase in the world price of oil. These policies increased inflation, but the voters were not interested in fighting inflation.

52. In 1974, the NDP and the PC members voted against the Liberals' budget. It was defeated in the House of Commons and another election was called. Robert Stanfield suggested wage and price controls to stop inflation. This plan would limit any pay raises for workers and any price increases for farmers and businessmen. Trudeau said wage and price controls would not work, and asked Canadians if they were going to vote themselves pay cuts. The voters returned Trudeau and gave the Liberals a new majority government.

David Lewis



#### 1972 Federal Election

##### LIBERAL MINORITY GOVERNMENT

Liberals	109
Progressive Conservatives	107
New Democrats	31
Social Credit	15
Other	2
	<hr/>
	264

#### 1974 Federal Election

Liberals	141
Progressive Conservatives	95
New Democrats	16
Social Credit	11
Other	1
	<hr/>
	264

53. Once again, the Prime Minister moved slowly after his victory, and the voters began to wonder. Inflation and unemployment continued to increase. In the fall of 1975, Trudeau and the Liberals introduced wage and price controls. The Canadian people were shocked! Trudeau had first talked about controls in 1969, but they only remembered his attacks against controls in the 1974 election campaign. Many people no longer believed in Trudeau, and he became less popular.

54. The other political parties elected new leaders in 1975 and 1976. David Lewis had led the New Democrats to a great success in 1972, but they had lost heavily in 1974. Lewis had been defeated in his own riding. Ed Broadbent, the MP from Oshawa, was elected leader of the New Democratic Party in 1975. The Progressive Conservatives elected a new leader in 1976. Stanfield had lost three elections to Trudeau and he decided to retire. The Progressive Conservatives elected Joe Clark, a thirty-seven-year-old MP from Alberta, as their new leader.

55. On November 15, 1976, René Lévesque and the Parti Québécois won the Quebec provincial election and threatened to lead Quebec out of Canada. The Canadian people looked to Trudeau as the best man to defend Canada against the separatists. However, Trudeau waited until 1979 to call another federal election. By then, inflation and unemployment had grown much worse and Lévesque did not look as threatening. On May 22, 1979, the voters handed Trudeau his first defeat in his eleven years in office. Joe Clark and the PCs won the most seats, 136. Joe Clark became the Prime Minister of Canada and leader of Canada's sixth minority government since 1957.

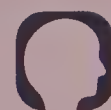
TOP: Ed Broadbent

BOTTOM: Joe Clark

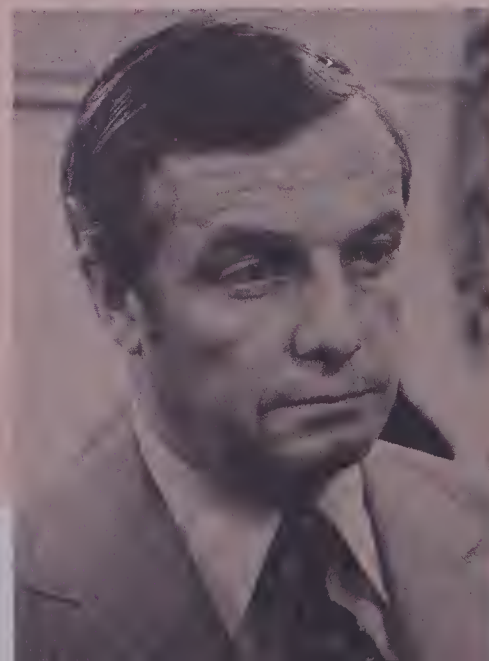


Peter Lougheed was born on July 26, 1928 in the city of Calgary, Alberta. In 1952, he married Jeanne Estelle Rogers and they have four children. Lougheed enjoys skiing, golf, and attending the symphony. He practiced law for several years before he entered provincial politics. Lougheed's grandfather was a lawyer and was also in politics. He was a Senator and a Conservative Cabinet Minister in the federal government from 1920 to 1921. Peter Lougheed's father was also a lawyer.

In 1965, Peter Lougheed became the leader of the Progressive Conservative Party in Alberta. At the time, the party was very weak. The Social Credit Party had been in power since 1935 when William Aberhart had won. Peter Lougheed slowly built up Alberta's PC Party until it finally won a majority of the seats in the Alberta legislature in 1971. Lougheed became Premier of Alberta when Alberta's sales of oil and gas were beginning to earn billions of dollars for the province.



**Peter Lougheed**





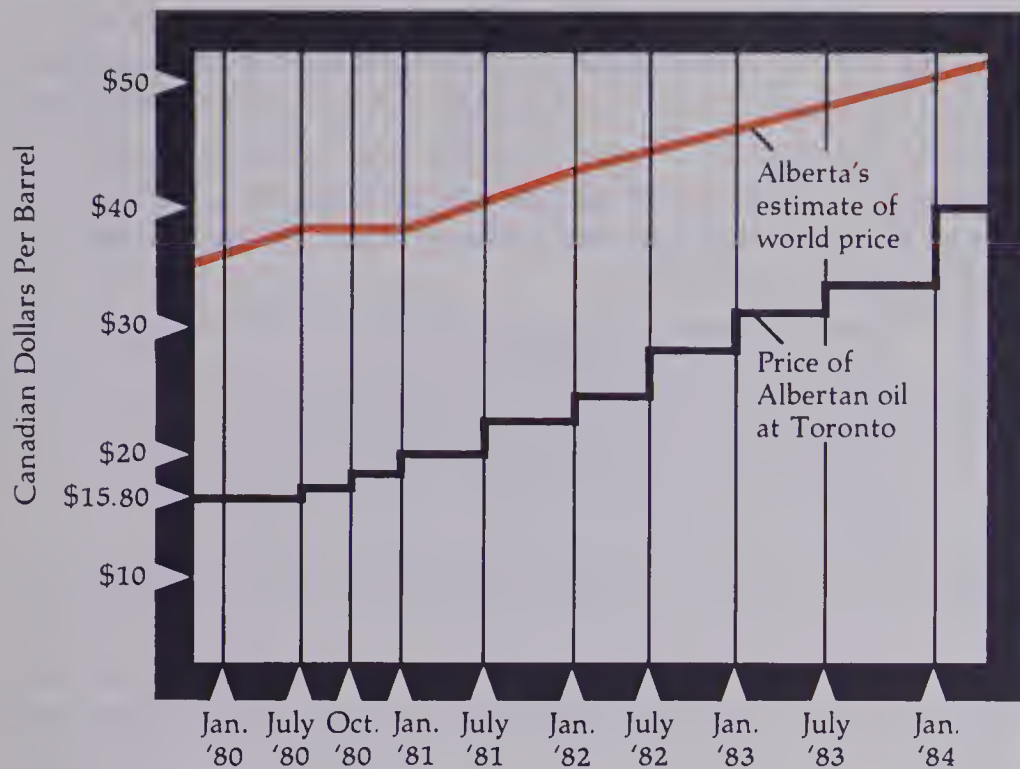


*Oil sands project, Fort McMurray,  
Alberta*

Lougheed is very loyal to the province of Alberta and wants to do what is best for Alberta. There are many important decisions to be made. His government must decide on the amounts of oil and gas it sells to the rest of Canada. It must also decide how to use the money earned from these sales. Alberta now sells its oil and gas to other Canadians at prices that are less than those paid by other countries. Oil and gas are not renewable, and once they are used up, they are gone forever. By about 1990, Alberta's oil will run out unless new discoveries are made. Lougheed wants to get a fair price for Alberta's energy before it does run out. He wants to raise the price of oil closer to the world price. He plans to use some of the money to find new supplies of oil and gas and to build new industries and businesses. These industries will provide jobs for Albertans long after the oil and gas run out. He wants to build up Alberta's economy.

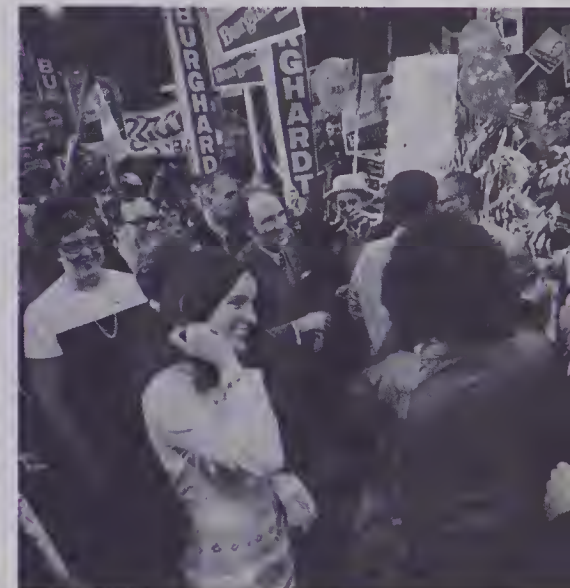
But Lougheed has met resistance from the federal government and from some Canadians living in other provinces. They want Alberta to sell its oil and gas to them at prices that are lower than world prices. Before 1973, central Canada paid higher than world prices for Alberta's oil and this helped Alberta to develop its oil industry. Central Canada now wants Alberta to return the favour. They also want Alberta to use the billions of dollars that are in Alberta's Heritage Savings Trust Fund for the good of all Canadians. Lougheed does not agree with these opinions. He argues that for over 100 years, westerners have paid high prices for manufactured goods made in central Canada. Westerners have paid high prices for these goods because high tariffs have protected Canadian industry. Westerners were willing to pay high prices and make certain sacrifices for other Canadians. Now it is the turn of other Canadians to pay higher prices for energy, to benefit westerners. Lougheed argues that the money in the Heritage Fund is needed to create a better future for Albertans. At present, some of this money is being lent to other provinces and is helping them. But Lougheed will not give away this money.

Most Albertans agree with Peter Lougheed's opinions on Alberta's energy and on the Heritage Fund. In 1974 and 1979, they gave the Progressive Conservatives huge majorities. Higher prices for energy are now being negotiated by Premier Lougheed and the Prime Minister. Canadians living in eastern Canada might not like higher prices for energy, but Peter Lougheed and other westerners believe that higher prices are both necessary and fair.



TOP: Trudeau on the campaign trail

BOTTOM: Margaret Trudeau



56. After the election, some people began to question Clark's ability to lead the government. He did not reach a final energy agreement with Premier Lougheed of Alberta. The voters had thought that a Prime Minister from Alberta would be able to settle any disagreements with the West. The Progressive Conservatives' budget raised oil and gasoline prices. The NDP and Liberal MPs joined together to defeat the minority Progressive Conservative government on December 13, 1979. Prime Minister Clark asked Governor-General Schreyer to call another federal election for February 18, 1980.

57. Trudeau had decided to resign as leader of the Liberal Party in November, 1979. He had married Margaret Sinclair in 1971. Mrs. Trudeau was a very attractive woman who was twenty-nine years younger than her husband. They had three sons, Justin, Sacha, and Michel. Mrs. Trudeau disliked politics, which kept her husband so busy and away from home. She had looked forward to the day when he would retire. When this day kept being delayed, their marriage gradually broke down. In 1977, they separated, and Pierre Trudeau kept their three sons. After the election of 1979, Trudeau decided to retire and move with his sons to Montreal. However, after the defeat of the Progressive Conservative government in the House of Commons, the Liberals persuaded him to remain as leader. They thought that Trudeau was still a strong leader and they did not think that they would have time to pick a new leader before the 1980 election. The Liberals wanted to win the 1980 federal election.

58. In the 1980 election campaign, Trudeau and the Liberals attacked the gasoline tax that the Progressive Conservatives had



introduced. The Liberals promised to keep gas prices lower if they were elected. The voters in central and eastern Canada switched back to the Liberal Party. The Liberals won a majority of the seats in the 1980 election. Pierre Trudeau had made a remarkable comeback! However, the Liberals elected only two MPs in the West. This was their worst showing ever in the West. The country was clearly divided.

59. Prime Minister Trudeau followed this election victory with another success. The Prime Minister joined with Claude Ryan, leader of the Liberal Party in Quebec, to win the Quebec referendum and defeat René Lévesque and the Parti Québécois on the question of separation.

60. The country still faced serious problems. Changes in the constitution had been discussed since the 1960's, but no changes had been made. Now, Quebec, Alberta, Newfoundland, British Columbia, Saskatchewan, and Nova Scotia were all demanding serious changes in the constitution to keep Canada together as a country.

61. Alberta, Saskatchewan, and British Columbia are the main producers of oil and natural gas in Canada. They demanded a fair price for their natural resources. The federal government refused to let them set their own prices. The Liberals had elected no MPs from these three provinces in 1980. The country was split between West and East; talk of western separation increased.

62. In the East, Newfoundland and Nova Scotia were also making demands for more power from the federal government. They said that their provinces should own any oil found in the Atlantic Ocean off the shores of their provinces.

63. The provinces had been growing in power since the 1950's. Their demands for more power could threaten the survival of the country. Prime Minister Trudeau and the Liberals faced a very difficult situation. They had to protect the basic power of the federal government over the economy, defence, and external affairs. At the same time, they had to find some way to recognize the demands of the West, of the East, and of Quebec. It remained for Prime Minister Trudeau, the provincial premiers, and the Parliament of Canada to find a great Canadian compromise.

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—7

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside the name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. W.L. Mackenzie — the first Canadian King  
Governor-General  
Tommy Douglas — made the Supreme Court of Canada the highest court in Canada  
Louis St. Laurent — Prime Minister for twenty-two years  
Vincent Massey — CCF Premier of Saskatchewan

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A welfare state is
  - (a) a country where everyone is on welfare
  - (b) a country which provides such benefits as pensions, unemployment insurance, family allowances, and welfare
  - (c) a place where \$30 a week is given to everyone by the government
  - (d) another name for loans that are given to farmers, fishermen, and veterans

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. In 1943, the Liberals and Progressive Conservatives were worried about the results of a Gallup Poll because
  - (a) it showed that the voters could not make up their minds between the two parties
  - (b) it showed strong support for the CCF
  - (c) it showed that Tommy Douglas would become the next Prime Minister
  - (d) it showed that Canadians were against old age pensions
4. Louis St. Laurent won the elections of 1949 and 1953 because
  - (a) he was well-liked by most Canadians
  - (b) Canada was prosperous
  - (c) he received support from all parts of the country
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

5. What did the Mackenzie King government do to prevent bad times in Canada after World War II?
6. Why did Canada's population increase sharply between 1945 and 1960?
7. What did the St. Laurent government do to make Canada a more independent country?

### Paragraphs 8—11

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Joey Smallwood — was the Minister of Trade and Commerce who wanted to build an oil and gas pipeline  
C.D. Howe — decided to stop the debate on the pipeline  
Louis St. Laurent — was the first Premier of Newfoundland

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Closure means
  - (a) the government stops debate on an issue in the House of Commons
  - (b) the right of the elected representatives to debate an issue in the House of Commons for as long as they wish
  - (c) what the government does to build a pipeline
  - (d) something which makes all elected representatives very angry

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The CCF and the Progressive Conservative Parties were against the pipeline plan because
  - (a) they wanted the pipeline to be built all the way to Nova Scotia
  - (b) they wanted Parliament to approve the plan
  - (c) they did not like C.D. Howe
  - (d) they did not want an American company to build the pipeline



## Questions

4. What were the four choices for the future that the Newfoundlanders had at the end of World War II?
5. (a) Why were the results of the first referendum in Newfoundland “not clear”?  
(b) When did Newfoundland join Canada?
6. Why was it necessary to build pipelines in Canada after 1947?
7. Do you think Louis St. Laurent was right when he brought in closure in 1956? Explain.

## Paragraphs 12—19

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. John G. Diefenbaker —an exciting speaker who was leader of the Social Credit Party in Quebec
- Ellen Fairclough —was 75 years old when he fought the 1957 election
- Lester B. Pearson—wanted to regain control of Canada’s natural resources from the Americans
- Louis St. Laurent—the first woman cabinet minister in Canada
- Réal Caouette —was leader of the Liberal Party in the election of 1958

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Diefenbaker won the election of 1958 because
  - (a) support for the Liberals had decreased in most provinces
  - (b) he promised to create thousands of jobs for Canadians
  - (c) he promised Canadians a new future
  - (d) all of the above
3. Diefenbaker lost support between 1958 and 1962 because
  - (a) unemployment increased
  - (b) he stopped building the Avro “Arrow”
  - (c) he did not appoint French Canadians to important jobs in the Cabinet
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

4. Why do you think the PCs won the election of 1957?

5. What evidence is there to support the idea that Diefenbaker wanted to help ordinary Canadians?

## Paragraphs 20—24

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. John Diefenbaker—united the Canadian army, navy, and air force
- Tommy Douglas —promised action in “60 Days of Decision”
- Lester Pearson —leader of New Democratic Party
- Réal Caouette —tried to limit American investment in Canada, but failed
- Walter Gordon —was liked by Canadians because of his fighting style
- Paul Hellyer —leader of Social Credit Party in Quebec

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A diplomat is
  - (a) a Canadian automobile
  - (b) a politician who wins an election
  - (c) a civil servant who represents own country in a foreign country
  - (d) a politician who places second in an election
3. A budget is a
  - (a) special rent-a-car
  - (b) plan to raise and spend money
  - (c) bill to borrow money to pay the government debt
  - (d) all of the above

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

4. Lester Pearson became Prime Minister of Canada in 1963 because
  - (a) he was the best public speaker among the party leaders
  - (b) Diefenbaker was tired of the job and gave up the fight
  - (c) his party elected the most MPs to the House of Commons
  - (d) he won a majority of the seats in the House of Commons

5. Walter Gordon changed his 1963 budget because
  - (a) Prime Minister Pearson did not stand behind him
  - (b) many businessmen opposed government controls on business
  - (c) many politicians opposed his independent economic ideas
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

6. (a) How many seats did the Liberals need in the 1963 federal election to win a majority?
- (b) How many seats short of a majority were they?
- (c) In what parts of the country did the Liberals and Progressive Conservatives run third and what does this tell you about Canada in 1963?
7. (a) What happened to the “60 Days of Decision”?
- (b) How did this make the Liberals look to the voters?

### Paragraphs 25—37

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside the name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Lester Pearson —elected leader of the Progressive Conservative Party in 1967
- Chaput and Bourgault —popular singers in Quebec
- Jean Lesage —called a meeting of all provincial Premiers in Toronto in 1967
- John Robarts —one of Pearson’s Cabinet Ministers who was forced to resign because of a scandal
- John Diefenbaker —started the first separatist political party in Quebec
- Robert Stanfield —wanted to keep the Red Ensign as Canada’s national flag
- Yvon Dupuis —wanted a Quebec Pension Plan
- appointed the Bi and Bi Commission to study English-French relations.

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. It was difficult for French Canadians to live and work outside Quebec because
  - (a) French Canadians were paid lower wages for the same work
  - (b) governments provided services in English but companies did business in French
  - (c) governments provided services in French but companies did business in English
  - (d) governments provided services in English and companies did business in English
3. Prime Minister Pearson suggested a new flag for Canada because
  - (a) he wanted to cut all Canada’s ties with Britain
  - (b) Canada did not have a flag
  - (c) he thought the Red Ensign was the best flag for Canada
  - (d) he wanted a new flag to unite Canadians
4. Prime Minister Pearson failed in one way because
  - (a) he did not unite the country and win a majority government
  - (b) he could not get the provinces to agree to a Canada Pension Plan
  - (c) he could not sing Canada’s new national anthem
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

5. Why did French Canadians think that English Canadians treated them unfairly?
6. Why did rich and poor provinces have different attitudes toward a Canada Pension Plan?
7. What happened in the 1965 federal election? Why?
8. What did the politicians mean when they talked about Canada’s “national security”?
9. What effects did the scandals of the 1960’s have on Canadian politics?
10. (a) What did communities do to celebrate Canada’s centennial?
- (b) What did your community do to celebrate Canada’s centennial? Contact your local government officials.



## Paragraphs 38—41

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside the name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Pierre Trudeau —union organizer in Quebec who joined the Liberal Party
- Maurice Duplessis —Premier of Quebec who demanded more power from Ottawa in 1968
- Jean Marchand —very conservative Premier of Quebec in the 1950's
- Gerard Pelletier —appointed Pierre Trudeau Minister of Justice in 1967
- Lester Pearson —Canada's fifteenth Prime Minister
- Daniel Johnson —newspaper man from Quebec who joined the Liberal Party

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The young people influenced the rest of Canada in the 1960's because
  - (a) they wore long hair and mini skirts
  - (b) they had disagreements with their parents
  - (c) there were more young people than ever before
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

3. How did Pierre Trudeau become leader of the Liberal Party of Canada?
4. How did Pierre Trudeau become Prime Minister of Canada?

## Paragraphs 42—49

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Prime Minister Trudeau disappointed some Canadians after the 1968 election because
  - (a) he stopped his skiing and diving
  - (b) he tried to change things very quickly and frightened them
  - (c) he moved very slowly and cautiously
  - (d) none of the above

2. The Official Languages Act was important because
  - (a) it made all languages in Canada equal
  - (b) it made English, French, and Italian official languages
  - (c) it made English the one official language of Canada
  - (d) it made French and English the official languages of Canada
3. Many people were angry with the government's handling of the economy because
  - (a) unemployment fell to 7 per cent
  - (b) inflation and unemployment were serious problems
  - (c) the federal government was spending a lot of money and the government's debt was falling
  - (d) Trudeau did nothing to fight inflation

### Questions

4. How was the 1968 federal election different from the elections in 1962, 1963, and 1965?
5. How successful were the Liberals in western Canada in the 1968 election?
6. What changes did the Trudeau government make between 1968 and 1972?

## Paragraphs 50—55

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside the name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Pierre Trudeau —a New Democrat MP from Oshawa
- Robert Stanfield —won the Quebec provincial election of 1976
- David Lewis —suggested a policy of wage and price controls during the 1974 election
- Ed Broadbent —was surprised by the results of the 1972 election
- Joe Clark —supported the minority Liberal government in the House of Commons after the 1972 election
- René Lévesque —won the federal election of 1979

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Trudeau was still the Prime Minister of Canada after the 1972 election because
  - (a) he had won a majority of the seats in the House of Commons
  - (b) his party had elected the most MPs in the House of Commons
  - (c) the Social Credit Party agreed to support him in the House of Commons
  - (d) his party had won 107 seats in the House of Commons
3. Robert Stanfield suggested a plan of wage and price controls in 1974 because
  - (a) he wanted to cut people's wages
  - (b) he wanted to increase unemployment and cut prices
  - (c) he wanted to stop inflation
  - (d) he wanted to cut prices

## Questions

4. How many Liberals had been elected in 1968? How many were elected in 1972?
5. Why did David Lewis and the New Democrats support the Liberals for a short time after the 1972 election?
6. Why did Joe Clark become Prime Minister of Canada after the 1979 federal election?

## Paragraphs 56—63

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside the name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. Joe Clark    | —lost a referendum on Quebec separating from Canada    |
| Peter Lougheed  | —called the 1980 federal election                      |
| Edward Schreyer | —could not reach a final energy agreement with Alberta |
| Pierre Trudeau  | —leader of the Quebec Liberal Party                    |
| Claude Ryan     | —made an amazing political comeback in 1980            |
| René Lévesque   | —lawyer and politician from Alberta                    |

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Alberta, Saskatchewan, and British Columbia were angry with Trudeau and the federal government in 1980 because
  - (a) the tariffs on goods imported into Canada were very high
  - (b) the railways charged high freight rates for western wheat and oil
  - (c) they could not set their own prices for oil and gas
  - (d) none of the above

## Questions

3. Canada has had six minority governments between 1957 and 1980.
  - (a) Which Canadian Prime Ministers led minority governments during these years?
  - (b) What are the problems for a Prime Minister who leads a minority government?
4.
  - (a) Why did Pierre Trudeau decide to retire as leader of the Liberal Party in 1979?
  - (b) Why did Trudeau change his mind?
  - (c) Why is the job of a politician difficult for his/her family?
5. Why was Canada still divided although the Liberals had won a majority in the 1980 election?
6. What problems did Prime Minister Trudeau face in three parts of Canada in 1980?

## USING SOURCES

Read the following magazine article on "How the Discovery of Oil Changed Leduc, Alberta". Answer the two questions about the article.

Shortly after the discovery of oil at Leduc in 1974, a magazine writer noted some of the changes in the town:

Six months ago a traveller always could get a room in the two-story brick hotel at Leduc, 19 miles south of Edmonton on the highway to Calgary. ... The only day in the week when many people were around was Saturday. If a traveller visited Leduc often he probably knew by sight or name many of Leduc's 864 citizens and some of the farmers, too.

Today he'd be lucky to find anyone he knew. Citizens and farmers alike are almost lost in the dozens of men in plaid and khaki shirts,



high boots, wide-brimmed hats and oil-stained overalls — wildcatters, the men who search for new oil fields.

The pool room is full of oilmen off shift, drillers and cathead men and lead tong men and derrick men. Upstairs in the hotel, past the deserted desk with its "No Rooms Vacant" sign, oilmen sit around a blanket-covered table and play quiet, dollar-limit poker. In the beer parlor below some oilmen drink beer and others drink a mixture of beer and tomato juice. The mid-European accents of the Ukrainian and Polish farmers and the clear prairie speech of the townspeople mix with the more precise English of Easterners and occasionally with the drawls of Texas and Oklahoma.

And among oilmen and farmers alike the talk is not of crops but of ... the \$130 000 Pete Hairysh got for his half section, or the \$41 000 the widow Kate Malchak got for her quarter. ...

*By Scott Young*

1. What effects did the discovery of oil at Leduc, Alberta have on the community?
2. Do you think that the newcomers to Alberta would support higher oil and gas prices?

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

Canada has had six Prime Ministers since World War II. Which person do you think was the best Prime Minister and which do you think was the worst? The class should divide itself into groups. Each group should study a different Prime Minister. Read the textbook and go to the library to find information about the Prime Minister chosen by your group. Half the students in each group should prepare arguments to prove that their Prime Minister was the best Prime Minister of Canada. The other half of the students in the group should prepare arguments to prove that their Prime Minister was the worst Prime Minister of Canada during these years. After each group has finished its work, the students should report to the class. After all groups have reported to the class, students may hold an election by secret ballot to decide on the class's choice for the best Prime Minister of Canada.

Clark, Joe  
Diefenbaker, John  
King, Mackenzie

Pearson, Lester  
St. Laurent, Louis  
Trudeau, Pierre

### Political Party Leaders 1945-1981

	<i>Liberal</i>	<i>Progressive Conservative</i>	<i>CCF (1945-1961) NDP (1961- )</i>
1945	W.L.M. King	John Bracken	M.J. Coldwell
1948	Louis St. Laurent	George Drew	
1956		John Diefenbaker	
1958	Lester Pearson		
1960			Hazen Argue
1961			T.C. Douglas
1967		Robert Stanfield	
1968	Pierre Trudeau		
1971			David Lewis
1975			Ed Broadbent
1976		Joe Clark	

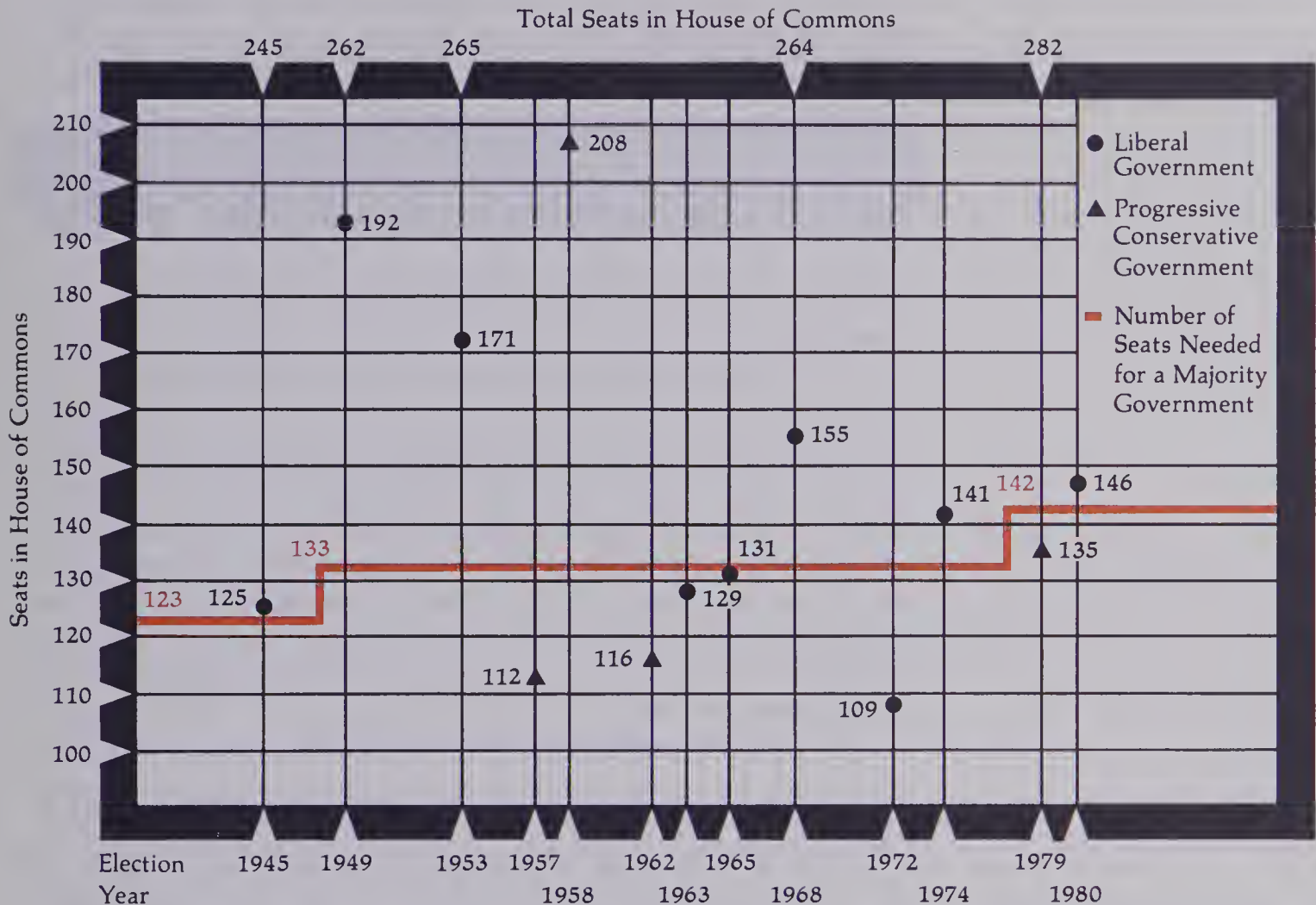
### Questions

1. How many people served as leaders of these three political parties?
2. How many party leaders became Prime Minister of Canada?

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

### MAJORITY AND MINORITY GOVERNMENTS 1945 to 1980

Study the following graph. Answer the questions in your notebook.



- How many federal elections have there been in Canada since 1944?
- How many times have Canadians elected a majority government?
  - How many times have Canadians elected a minority government?
- How many MPs were elected to the House of Commons in the elections of 1945, 1949, 1968, and 1979?
- How many seats did a political party need to have a majority in the House of Commons in 1945, 1949, 1968, and 1979?
- How many times was a minority government defeated in the House of Commons and forced to call a new election?
- Why is it much easier for the Prime Minister and the government party to make laws when they have a majority of MPs in the House of Commons?
- What must a minority government do to pass a bill in the House of Commons?
- Do the smaller political parties have more influence with a majority government or a minority? Explain.



## CHAPTER FIFTEEN

# French Canadians in Canada

AIM: How Have French Canadians Survived in Canada?

### Why Have Some French Canadians Become Separatists?

#### Background

1. French Canadians were the first Europeans to settle in the Maritimes, in the St. Lawrence River Valley and on the Prairies. There were about 60 000 French Canadians at the time of the British conquest of New France. After the conquest in 1759, English Canadians began to move to Canada. They had many advantages in business, government, and politics. After 1850, there were more English than French-speaking Canadians. The French Canadians had to struggle very hard to keep their language and culture. They were worried that they would be assimilated by the English Canadian majority.

2. After Confederation, the French Canadians in New Brunswick, Manitoba, and Ontario faced serious dangers. These provinces cut off tax money to the Catholic separate schools where the French Canadians took their classes in French. Schools were a very important way to help children learn the language and customs of their parents. But the French Canadian minorities in these provinces were not protected. This angered and frightened all French Canadians. They turned to the province of Quebec where the French Canadians were still a majority.

3. French Canadians in Quebec had several advantages that helped them protect their culture. They were about 80 per cent of the population in Quebec. They controlled the political parties in the province. French Canadians directed the provincial government.

4. The provincial government had control of certain powers like education and property. Different schools were set up for French Roman Catholics and for English Protestants in Quebec. French-speaking priests and nuns ran the French Roman Catholic schools. They taught the students about their religion, language, and history. Here, the students heard about the bravery of D'Iberville, the strength of Marie l'Incarnation, and the death of Father Brébeuf in the early years of New France. French

Canadians learned about their glorious past before the British conquest.

5. French Canadians also had very strong communities. Many lived in small villages and worked the farms of their forefathers. They had very little contact with English Canadians. The English Canadians lived in the towns and cities of Quebec. They built warehouses, banks, mills, mines, and factories. The English were the leaders of the economy.

6. Quebec could not remain a province of farmers forever. As the population grew, the people ran out of farmland. Soon French Canadians began moving into the towns and cities to take jobs in the mills and factories. They had not learned trades or business methods at school. Many of them were hired for simple jobs at lower wages. To get ahead in these businesses, a French Canadian had to learn English. The new industries brought jobs, money, and the danger of assimilation to French Canadians in Quebec.

7. Many French Canadians did not think that they could trust the federal government to protect their culture. English Canadians had a majority in the country and in the House of Commons. Most of the English and French leaders had worked well together. They had learned to compromise. But French Canadians also remembered the hanging of Louis Riel, the loss of French Catholic schools outside Quebec, and the conscription crisis of World War I. They knew that the English majority could always get its own way. Who could protect them?

### **Maurice Duplessis — The Chief**

8. In the 1930's, Maurice Duplessis had started a new political party in Quebec, the Union Nationale. He promised to defend French Canadians in Quebec from the big English and American companies. Duplessis said that these companies had caused the Great Depression. In 1939, Duplessis warned the French Canadians about World War II and the danger of conscription. When Prime Minister King broke his promise and brought in overseas conscription, Duplessis was proved right in the eyes of many French Canadians. Duplessis won the provincial election of 1944 and every Quebec provincial election after that until he died in 1959. They called him "Le Chef" or "The Chief".

9. Why was Duplessis so successful? First, the Premier appealed to the French Canadian pride. He encouraged a feeling of French Canadian nationalism. He praised their great past and their simple way of life. Duplessis was a very conservative person and he wanted to keep the old ways of Quebec.

10. Second, Duplessis had important friends in the Roman Catholic Church. Many of the bishops and priests supported Duplessis and the Union Nationale. The priests were very worried

French Canadians in Quebec show their pride in their past and culture in the province's motto, "Je me souviens" (I remember).

*Maurice Duplessis*





about the growing influence of English Canadians in Quebec. They were afraid that life and work in the cities were weakening the faith of the people and making them more like English Canadians.

11. Third, Duplessis always appeared as the great defender of the province of Quebec. Even when Louis St. Laurent was the Prime Minister of Canada, Duplessis attacked the federal government. He kept saying that Ottawa was trying to take away the powers of the government and people of Quebec.

12. Fourth, Duplessis was a very tough politician. He was a good speaker and he built a strong political party. Rich individuals and companies were expected to give money to the Union Nationale in return for government work and favours. Although Duplessis had attacked the big American and English Canadian companies, he now made deals with them. Mining, pulp and paper, and hydro-electric companies were given excellent chances to make profits in Quebec. The voters were told to vote for the Union Nationale representative in their riding if they wanted any provincial government services. Ridings that did not elect Union Nationale representatives often did not get new hospitals, schools, roads, or bridges. They had to wait.

13. By the 1950's, more people were saying that such behaviour was wrong. They said that it was **corrupt** for politicians to give a few people special favours in return for money or votes. Still, Duplessis was very good at this type of politics and he continued to win election after election.

14. During the Duplessis years, life in Quebec changed very rapidly. World War II had increased the number of jobs in factories and mines. After the war, more French Canadians lived in towns and cities. Duplessis expected the workers to be thankful for their jobs and to accept what the companies offered them. Duplessis was very suspicious of unions and union organizers. He accused them of being communists, who only made trouble. In disputes between companies and unions, Duplessis backed his friends in the companies. Sometimes he sent in the provincial police to arrest strikers, protect company property, and let strike-breakers cross the picket lines.

15. In 1949, the miners at the Johns-Manville asbestos mine in Asbestos, Quebec, went on strike. Jean Marchand was the leader of the union. The miners made \$.85 per hour and they asked for a \$.15 per hour raise and double time on Sundays. They also wanted safer working conditions because the asbestos dust made many miners sick. Asbestos can cause diseases like cancer in a person's lungs.

16. The company refused these demands. They hired some strike-breakers to work in the mines and paid them \$.95 per hour. Duplessis said that the union was led by communists and that the

"I warned you not to elect a Liberal candidate. You did not listen to me. Unfortunately, your riding did not receive any of the grants... that could have made it a happier place in which to live. I hope you have learned your lesson and that you will vote against the Liberals this time."

*Maurice Duplessis, 1952*

"We have shown our friendship for Arthur Dupré (Liberal) by electing him in 1944, in 1948, and in 1952. This time we are going to vote for new roads."

*A Voter, 1956*

*A new bridge is opened, 1948*



strike was illegal. He sent in the Quebec provincial police to help the company. For a few days, the strike was very violent. The police fought with the strikers and the strikers fought back. Some men on both sides had guns. The violence used by the police shocked newspaper reporters and their readers. The violence ended but the strike lasted for five months.

17. Many Quebeckers supported the strikers against the company and Duplessis. Two supporters of the workers were a young lawyer from Montreal, Pierre Trudeau, and a young reporter, René Lévesque. Even the Roman Catholic Church supported the striking miners; it helped raise money to feed the miners and their families. In the end, the miners settled for a \$.10 per hour raise and two more paid holidays. The strike convinced many unions and workers that Duplessis was a very unfair Premier. The unions decided to oppose Duplessis and the Union Nationale. They wanted new laws that would treat unions and workers fairly.

18. The Asbestos strike also turned many well-educated French Canadians against Duplessis. These people included some writers, artists, reporters, lawyers, teachers, and professors, as well as union leaders. They disliked Duplessis' old-fashioned attitudes and his use of force. They wanted French Canadians to share in the prosperity of the economic boom of the 1950's.

19. As hard as they tried, the unions and the well-educated reformers could not defeat the Union Nationale while Duplessis was the leader. When Maurice Duplessis died in 1959, they finally got their chance. In the 1960 provincial election, the Union Nationale could not meet the great promises of Jean Lesage and the Quebec Liberal Party. The Liberals won the election and Jean Lesage became Premier of Quebec.

*René Lévesque, 1962*

#### The Quiet Revolution in Quebec, 1960-1966

20. A great many changes were made in Quebec in the 1960's. These changes were made peacefully through elections and new laws. That is why this period is called a "Quiet Revolution" instead of a violent revolution.

21. The Quebec Liberals were full of excitement in the 1960's. They wanted to make changes in all areas of Quebec society — the economy, health, education, culture, and federal relations. Premier Lesage had many brilliant and ambitious people in his political party and Cabinet. They planned to use the power of the Quebec government to help French Canadians in Quebec. Perhaps the most popular member of the Liberal Cabinet was a TV news star, René Lévesque.

22. The government was determined to get a better deal for Quebec in the development of the economy. Lévesque was made Minister of Natural Resources. The government decided to buy





out some of the big hydro-electric companies in Quebec and create Quebec Hydro. The companies charged different rates for their electricity and some parts of the province had to pay very high prices. The government-owned Quebec Hydro would provide electricity at one low price. When the companies refused to sell, Lesage called a new election in 1962. The Liberals urged Quebecers to become “maîtres chez nous” — masters in their own house. The Quebec voters re-elected Lesage and the Liberals. Quebec Hydro became a very important government-owned company in the province.

23. The Quebec government also took over many services from the Roman Catholic Church. More money was spent on hospitals. Health insurance plans and the Quebec Pension Plan were introduced. The Quebec government spent a lot of money to improve living conditions for Quebecers.

24. Perhaps the most important changes made by the government were in the schools. In 1964, a Quebec Department of Education was set up. The church schools had provided a good education in language, religion, and history. They had trained good priests, doctors, and lawyers. Now the Quebec government decided what the students would study. More class time was spent on mathematics, science, and trades and business subjects. Students learned the skills that would help them find better jobs in industry and business. More French Canadians were becoming engineers, scientists, technicians, economists, and accountants. French Canadians were moving into the modern world of business.

### The Federal Government and French/English Relations

25. By 1963, most Canadians were aware that Quebec was changing. Many French Canadians were still unhappy with their relations with English Canadians. They believed that they were not getting a fair deal and that the French Canadian culture was disappearing.

26. In 1963, Prime Minister Pearson appointed the Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism (Bi and Bi). Its job was to make suggestions on how the French culture could be protected. The government wanted the Commission to make suggestions on how to improve the relationships between English and French Canadians. In 1965, the Royal Commission made eight important recommendations. It reported that Canada was in danger of breaking up because of disagreements and unhappiness between English and French Canadians. It suggested that both English and French be made the official languages of Canada. French should be the language of business in Quebec. Canadians should be encouraged to learn both languages. The Royal

### The Opinions of Some Canadians on Bilingualism in Canada

“Bilingualism is the chief source of the disunity in Canada today and as long as the Official Languages Act continues as law we will have continued division.” (from St. John)

“The best way to unite Canada is to let everyone speak English.” (in Whitehorse)

“Every child in Canada should be taught English and French.” (in Vancouver)

“I want all French Canadians, if they so wish, to have the right to speak French in any part of the country.” (in Quebec City)

Commission suggested that English Canadians be more understanding of French Canadians and their culture. At the same time, the French Canadians should be concerned about what happened outside Quebec. The Commission did point out that French Canadian workers in Quebec earned less than other workers in Quebec. The Commission recommended that this situation be changed. It also suggested that French Canadian communities outside Quebec be helped to keep their language and culture.

27. In 1965, Prime Minister Pearson encouraged French Canadians, like Trudeau, to join the Liberal Party and enter federal politics. These French Canadians believed in Canada and its federal system of government. It was hoped that they could make the concerns of French Canada known and that they would work to correct the problems. In 1968, Trudeau became the new leader of the Liberal Party. A French Canadian was again Prime Minister of Canada.

28. In 1969, the Trudeau government took some of the suggestions of the Bi and Bi Commission and made them into a law called the Official Languages Act. This law made English and French the two official languages of Canada. Both languages were now to be used by the federal civil service. The federal government spent millions of dollars to make many civil servants bilingual. It also started to hire and promote more French Canadians in the civil service.

### Daniel Johnson Comes to Power in Quebec

29. From 1960 to 1966, Premier Jean Lesage led Quebec and its people through many changes. In 1966, Lesage called an election and, to the surprise of many people, the Liberal Party was defeated. The Union Nationale Party was returned to power and its leader, Daniel Johnson, became the new Premier. The Union Nationale had received strong support from Quebec farmers. They wanted a slow-down on the number of changes taking place in Quebec. They were worried about the big debt of the Quebec government. They were against the high taxes which the Liberal government had introduced to pay for the changes in Quebec. They were worried about Quebec's future.

30. Daniel Johnson asked the federal government for special rights and more money. He wanted Quebec to have control over the federal old age pensions and family allowances; he wanted Quebec to have more control over its economy. He also wanted to have closer ties between Quebec and France to encourage the growth of French Canadian culture. In 1966, his call to the Quebec people was "Equality or Independence". French Canadian nationalism was increasing in Quebec.

Section 133 of the British North America Act guaranteed that both English and French could be used in the Parliament of Canada and in the federal courts. English and French could also be used in the Parliament and provincial courts of Quebec. No other province recognized the French language in 1867.



Daniel Johnson



## The Roots of the Separatist Movement in Quebec

31. English and French Canadians have had different opinions about many subjects since Confederation. Confederation has been like a marriage. Both partners have had disagreements about what they want to do in the marriage. These disagreements caused some French Canadians to think that the marriage between English and French Canada was not working. They began to believe in divorce or separatism for Quebec. Separatists believe that the French Canadian culture, language, and beliefs can only grow if the people of Quebec, the Québécois, have their own country. They want a divorce from English Canada.

32. The separatist movement began to grow in Quebec after 1960 but it was only a small part of what was happening in Quebec. Quebec society was changing. The Québécois began to have more confidence in themselves. They no longer needed to rely on the Roman Catholic Church, English businessmen, and a few French Canadians to make their decisions. They were now able to take care of themselves and make many of their own decisions. But the separatists wanted to carry the "Quiet Revolution" one step further. They wanted Quebecers to make all their own decisions. They did not want federal politicians to make decisions for Quebec on such things as immigration, trade, or foreign affairs.

33. In the beginning, the separatist movement had only a small number of supporters. The first people to join the movement were teachers, students, artists, and entertainers. In 1960, the RIN (Rassemblement pour l'Indépendance) was formed. One of its goals was to work toward separation for Quebec from the rest of Canada. Its first leader was Marcel Chaput. Several separatist political parties were created during the 1960's but most Canadians did not take them seriously. They were small parties and badly divided. They only received a small percentage of the votes in provincial elections.

34. René Lévesque was a Quebec nationalist. He believed in a strong culture and language for the Quebec people. At first, he was not a separatist. He was a Cabinet Minister in the government of Jean Lesage and one of the leaders of the Quiet Revolution. But from 1960 to 1967, he slowly came to believe in an independent Quebec. In 1967, he left the Liberal Party. Like Mercier and Duplessis, Lévesque created a French Canadian political party. Unlike Mercier and Duplessis, Lévesque's political party, MSA (Mouvement Souveraineté-Association), wanted to separate Quebec from the rest of Canada. In 1968, the RIN and the MSA joined together and formed a new separatist party called the Parti Québécois. Most Quebec separatists now joined this party.

*Gilles Vigneault, Quebec songwriter*



35. Most Canadians still did not take the separatist movement seriously. They underestimated the separatists, many of whom were entertainers and teachers, who sang and talked about an exciting new future for an independent Quebec. They told the Québécois to stand on their own and to have confidence in themselves. More Quebec people began to join the Parti Québécois. They called themselves Péquistes to show that they were separatists.

36. René Lévesque became the leader of the Parti Québécois in 1968. He was an exciting leader. He spoke very well on television and gave strong arguments to support his beliefs in separatism. He asked the Quebec people to vote for the Parti Québécois and to make him Premier of Quebec. He was against violence. He wanted to achieve independence peacefully. Not all separatists agreed with Lévesque. In 1963, a small terrorist group called the FLQ (Front de Libération du Québec) was formed. This group believed that separation from Canada could only be achieved by violence. They set off bombs in mailboxes and buildings. Several people were killed and injured. Lévesque condemned the FLQ. He was afraid that the separatist movement would lose support if it was connected to the FLQ and its use of violence.



### "Mon Pays" by Gilles Vigneault

Mon pays ce n'est pas un pays  
c'est l'hiver  
Mon jardin ce n'est pas un jardin  
c'est la plaine  
Mon chemin ce n'est pas un  
chemin c'est la neige  
Mon pays ce n'est pas un pays  
c'est l'hiver  
My country is not a country it's  
the winter  
My garden is not a garden it's the  
plain  
My road is not a road it's the  
snow  
My country is not a country it's  
the winter

*A policeman is wounded by a mail box bomb he was trying to dismantle, 1963*

### The Visit of President Charles De Gaulle

37. In 1967, many world leaders visited Expo '67 in Montreal. The President of France, Charles De Gaulle, gave a speech in Montreal in which he said that he had not felt so happy since the Nazis had been driven out of France in 1944. He ended his speech with the words:

"Vive Montréal"  
"Vive Québec"  
"Vive le Québec libre"  
"Vive le Canada français"  
"Vive la France"





*De Gaulle, Montreal*

The crowd went wild when De Gaulle said the words “Vive le Québec libre”. Many in the crowd were carrying Quebec flags. De Gaulle seemed to be supporting the separatists.

### **Prime Minister Pearson's Reply to President Charles De Gaulle of France**

“The people of Canada are free. Every province of Canada is free. Canadians do not need to be liberated. Indeed, many thousands of Canadians gave their lives in two world wars in the liberation of France and other European countries. Canada will remain united and will reject any effort to destroy her unity.”

38. The Canadian government was very angry with De Gaulle's speech. Prime Minister Pearson reminded President De Gaulle that thousands of Canadians had died to free France from the Germans in World Wars I and II. Quebec was free, as were all the provinces in Canada. Pearson found De Gaulle's words “unacceptable”. When De Gaulle received this message from the Prime Minister, he cancelled his planned visit to Ottawa and went home. Canada and France were not on very friendly terms. Premier Daniel Johnson said nothing about De Gaulle's speech. French Canadian nationalism was stronger than ever.

### **St. Jean Baptiste Day, 1968**

39. Shortly after he became Prime Minister, Pierre Trudeau had said that he opposed any special treatment for the province of Quebec. His opposition to Quebec separatism was clearly seen by all Canadians on June 24, 1968. Trudeau was one of the guests at the St. Jean Baptiste parade in Montreal. St. Jean Baptiste Day is a very important French Canadian holiday. While the guests and Canadian television viewers were watching the parade, a group of separatists began to throw rocks and bottles at the guests. Most of the startled guests left the platform, but P.M. Trudeau refused to back down. This impressed most television viewers. The next day was a federal election day; the Trudeau Liberals won a majority government.

## Robert Bourassa and the October Crisis

40. Daniel Johnson, the Union Nationale Premier of Quebec, died in 1968. The Union Nationale Party could not find another strong leader. Robert Bourassa had replaced Jean Lesage as the leader of the Quebec Liberal Party. The new political party, the Parti Québécois, led by René Lévesque, was also preparing for the next provincial election in April, 1970. The Liberals won the election but the Parti Québécois managed to win 23 per cent of the votes. This was a good beginning for the Quebec separatists.

41. In October, 1970, several events took place in Quebec which shocked Canadians. FLQ terrorists went into action. James Cross, a British representative, was kidnapped from his home in Montreal. The terrorists demanded that the Quebec government give in to their demands before they would release Cross. On October 10, 1970, the FLQ struck again. They kidnapped Pierre Laporte, the Minister of Labour in the Bourassa government. There was a rumour that the FLQ planned to kidnap other important government representatives and Canadian troops were sent to guard them. There was also a rumour that the FLQ was planning to take over the government by force and separate Quebec from Canada. Many people believed that the FLQ was going to start a revolution.

42. On October 16, 1970, Prime Minister Trudeau put the War Measures Act into effect. The rights of all Canadians were taken away. Police and troops could now arrest anyone without telling them the reason. They could hold the arrested people for as long as they wished without bringing them to trial. The arrested persons could not even make a phone call. More than 400 people were arrested and put in jail. Canadian soldiers patrolled the streets of Montreal.

43. On October 18, 1970, the body of Pierre Laporte was found in the trunk of a car. He had been strangled with the religious chain around his neck. The country was very tense and did not know what would happen next.

44. On December 4, 1970, James Cross and his kidnappers were found and the police made a deal with them. Cross was released and the FLQ kidnappers were flown to Cuba. On December 28, 1970, three other members of the FLQ were arrested and charged with the murder of Pierre Laporte. No other kidnapping or violence took place. There was no clear plan by the FLQ to overthrow the government in Quebec.

45. Most Canadians supported Prime Minister Trudeau when he brought in the War Measures Act. They thought that the government had to take strong actions against the FLQ. It was later found that only a small number of people were members of the FLQ. Many people began to criticize Trudeau for bringing in the War Measures Act. They felt that he might have acted too strongly.

## 1970 QUEBEC ELECTION RESULTS

	Seats Won	Popular Vote
Liberals	72	41.8%
Parti Québécois	7	23
Ralliement Cr�ditistes	12	11.1
Union Nationale	17	19.6
Other	—	4.5

## FLQ DEMANDS

\$500 000 in Gold  
Release of 23 prisoners  
Safe Passage to Cuba or Algeria

*Montrealers are startled by the presence of armed troops, October 1970*





## 1973 QUEBEC ELECTION RESULTS

	<i>Seats Won</i>	<i>Popular Vote</i>
Liberals	102	54.8%
Parti Québécois	6	30.3
Créditistes	2	9.9
Union Nationale	—	4.9

"In appearance, the preservation of the language rights of the anglophone families who have lived in Quebec for generations may be continued for a time. Even so, English is doomed to become no more than a 'kitchen language' in the province." (from Vancouver)

## The Separatists Come to Power in Quebec

46. In 1973, another provincial election was held in Quebec. The Liberal Party won a great victory and all the other political parties lost seats. Many Quebecers were afraid that Quebec would lose businesses and jobs if the Parti Québécois was elected. Robert Bourassa and his Quebec Liberals said that they were the only ones who could stop the separatists. Quebec voters believed them. Most Canadians outside of Quebec were very pleased with the Liberal victory. Lévesque was defeated in his own riding. Those Canadians who cheered the Liberal win ignored the fact that the Parti Québécois had won more votes in 1973 than ever before.

47. Between 1973 and 1976, the Quebec Liberals became unpopular in Quebec. Billions of dollars were spent by the government on huge projects like the James Bay hydro-electric project. The Parti Québécois and others criticized this project. They said that Quebec could not afford such an expensive project and were against the American involvement in them. Some people were worried about the effects of the James Bay project on the environment. The native peoples living around James Bay were angry because they had not been asked their opinions. The large dams on the rivers running into James Bay destroyed their hunting, trapping, and fishing grounds. The native peoples wanted the project to be stopped. They also wanted money from the government to pay them for what they had lost.

48. The English-speaking Quebecers who had supported Robert Bourassa in the 1973 election were angry. His government had passed Bill 22, making French the only official language of Quebec. Bill 22 also forced immigrants coming into Quebec to send their children to French-speaking schools. Many English Canadians and immigrants felt that this law took away important rights from them. Canada was a bilingual country and they wanted the right to have their children educated in English.

49. In 1975, the federal government proposed to make the main airports in Quebec bilingual. Before, only English had been used to communicate with pilots taking off and landing their planes in Quebec. In 1976, the English-speaking pilots went on strike. They said that it was too dangerous and too confusing to use another language. Many English-speaking Canadians supported the pilots. But many French Canadians wanted to use French at airports in Quebec. Once more, English and French Canada appeared to be divided. Some people believe that this issue alone persuaded many French Canadians to vote for the Parti Québécois.

50. Between 1973 and 1976, taxes, unemployment, strikes, and inflation increased in Quebec. Bourassa's government was accused of dishonesty; the Liberals seemed unable to handle the

problems facing Quebec. In the 1976 election, René Lévesque promised the Quebec voters good, honest government. He also promised the voters that, if his party were elected, he would hold a referendum on the question of separation. The referendum would ask the Quebec people if they wanted to separate from Canada. Lévesque and the Parti Québécois won the election. A separatist government was now in power in Quebec! Most Canadians began to worry about Quebec's future in Canada. They wondered about the future of Canada if Quebec separated and became an independent country.

51. In 1977, the federal government appointed the Task Force on Canadian Unity. These eight persons were asked to study Canadian attitudes to national unity. They were also to make suggestions on how Canada could be kept together and made into a stronger country. In 1979, the Task Force finished its work. It suggested that Canadians recognize Quebec as a separate nation (culture, language) with needs that were different from the rest of Canada. It suggested a new constitution for Canada which would change the British North America Act to give the provincial government more powers over its own affairs.

52. Between 1976 and 1980, the Parti Québécois gave the Quebec people good, honest government. Most Quebecers agreed that the Parti Québécois did a good job in running the province. But Lévesque did two things to upset many Quebecers and other Canadians.

53. In 1977, Lévesque's government made Bill 101 into a law. This law made French the language of work and business in Quebec. All signs on stores and streets now had to be in French. Signs in English or other languages were illegal. Many English Canadians in Quebec attacked this law because they felt that they had the right to work in English and to have English signs on their stores. But Lévesque was determined to make French the language of work.

## 1976 QUEBEC ELECTION RESULTS

	<i>Seats Won</i>	<i>Popular Vote</i>
Parti Québécois	69	41.4%
Liberals	28	33.8
Union Nationale	11	18.2
Ralliement		
Créditistes	1	4.6
Other	1	2



LEFT: Bourassa, Ryan, Lesage, et non

RIGHT: Lévesque et oui



## THE REFERENDUM QUESTION:

"The Government of Quebec has made public its proposal to negotiate a new agreement with the rest of Canada, based on the equality of nations; this agreement would enable Quebec to acquire the exclusive power to make its laws, administer its taxes and establish relations abroad—in other words, sovereignty—and at the same time, to maintain with Canada an economic association including a common currency; any change in political status resulting from these negotiations will be submitted to the people through a referendum; on these terms, do you agree to give the Government of Quebec the mandate to negotiate the proposed agreement between Quebec and Canada?

Oui \_\_\_\_\_ Non \_\_\_\_\_

54. In 1980, Lévesque held a referendum in Quebec. He asked the Quebec people to allow his government to negotiate "sovereignty association" or independence for Quebec, with the federal government. He wanted the Quebec people to vote "Oui" in the referendum. Claude Ryan, the new leader of the Quebec Liberal Party, fought hard to convince the voters to vote "Non" to sovereignty association. Ryan told the Quebec people that changes were needed in Canada but the best place for Quebec and Quebecers was still in Canada. The supporters of the "Oui" and "Non" sides worked hard to convince the Quebec voters to choose their side. Their arguments and opinions appeared on signs, newspapers, radio, and television. Both sides held huge meetings. The "Oui" side used many French Canadian entertainers and personalities to attract people to their meetings. The "Non" side used federal politicians like Pierre Trudeau to attract people. The fight for public support was a hard battle. Families in Quebec were divided on the issue and the arguments were often heated.

55. On May 20, 1980, the Parti Québécois lost the referendum. Of the voters in Quebec, 59.6 per cent voted "Non" to sovereignty-association while 40.4 per cent voted "Oui". It was a serious defeat for the Parti Québécois. The separatists in Quebec were greatly disappointed by the results of the vote but they promised to continue the fight.

### Recommendations of the Task Force on Canadian Unity

It is for the people of Quebec to declare themselves on their political and constitutional preferences, and not the country as a whole.... But it is the Québécois themselves who must make the decision.

We believe, therefore, that there should be a new Canadian constitution to meet the aspirations and future needs of all the people of Canada.

... Quebec is distinctive and should, within a viable Canada, have the powers necessary to protect and develop its distinctive character; any political solution short of this would lead to the rupture of Canada.

... assign to Quebec formal law-making powers, denied to other provinces, over such matters as culture, language, immigration, social policy, communications and some aspects of international affairs.

### Canadians Who Support Separation

"The French people want to be free. You English people, you had your turn, you've lost it. Forget it." (in Toronto)

"Let's face it, there are two nations here." (in Charlottetown)

"The provinces and territories of Canada other than Quebec will become a stronger and more unified nation without Quebec." (in Vancouver)

### Canadians Who Are Against Separation

"If Quebec leaves, a part of my soul will leave with her." (in Halifax)

"As a Québécois, the dream of my own sovereign country is tempting; but I am federalist because of our situation in North America." (in Quebec City)

### What would Canadians Do If Quebec Tried to Separate?

"René Lévesque should be jailed for treason. I fought five years for the preservation of our great country and I do not intend to sit idly by and watch, while a bunch of idiots try to cut off a slice of my country." (from Severn Bridge, Ontario)

"In the event of a decision to separate from Canada, we oppose any use of military force against Quebec. We have no desire to impose an outside will upon the Quebec nation." (Student's Union, in Edmonton)

"We are probably the only country in the world which won't fight a civil war in attempting to hold itself together." (in Charlottetown)

René Lévesque was born on August 24, 1922, in the small town of New Carlisle, Quebec. His father was a lawyer. There were four children in the family and René was the oldest. He studied law at Laval University for three years but did not graduate. In 1943, he was a newspaper reporter overseas in Europe and covered some of the events of World War II. After the war, he worked for the CBC and was a reporter in Korea during the Korean War. By 1956, he was a television star on a CBC French television programme. He became well-known to the French-speaking people of Quebec.

In 1960, René Lévesque was elected as a Liberal to the Quebec National Assembly. He became a Cabinet Minister in the government of Jean Lesage. He helped the Liberal government buy out some of the privately-owned hydro-electric companies in Quebec. While he was in the Lesage government, he was already becoming a strong Quebec nationalist. In 1963, he said "I am a Quebecker first, a French Canadian second and I really have ... no sense at all of being a Canadian". In 1967, he quit the Liberal Party. In 1968, he helped to create a separatist party called the Parti Québécois.

Lévesque left his first wife in 1970, and, in 1979, married his second wife, Corinne Côté. He is an excellent speaker on television and is well-liked by many Québécois for his sincerity and honesty. He has worked to convince French Canadians that the separation of Quebec from the rest of Canada can be accomplished. He believes that the French culture and language in Quebec can only develop if Quebec becomes a separate country.



**René Lévesque**



56. Canada will have to change in order to survive as a united country. The federal government will have to negotiate a new constitution with the provinces. All the provinces want more powers and more control over their own affairs. At the same time, politicians, like Pierre Trudeau, want a strong federal government to keep the country together. It will be interesting to see the results of the negotiations. Change is needed but will the provincial and federal governments come to an agreement? Will they agree on the amount of change that they believe is best for Canada?

### **How Do French Canadians Outside Quebec Feel About Canada?**

57. In 1980, there were about 1 500 000 French Canadians living outside Quebec. How can Jeanette-Marié in Moncton, Maurice in Windsor, or Jean in St. Boniface hope to keep their language and customs? Their ancestors were the first Europeans to settle in the Maritimes, Ontario, and the West. However, the British North America Act did not guarantee their French



language rights in 1867. The federal government did almost nothing to help them until the 1960's. Many provincial governments after 1867 tried to eliminate the French Canadian schools and culture. In the 1960's, some provincial governments moved quietly to increase French services to French Canadians. For many French Canadian families, this was too little and too late. They worked in English businesses with their English neighbours. Their children had to go to English schools and watch English language television. Many small French Canadian communities were assimilated.

58. Since 1867, French Canadians outside Quebec have had fewer rights than English Canadians have had inside Quebec. Recently, the Quebec government has taken away many of the rights and privileges of the English Canadian minority in Quebec. The rights of the English minority in Quebec and of the French minorities outside Quebec are very serious problems in Canada today.

### Eastern Canada

#### FRENCH-CANADIANS IN EASTERN CANADA, 1976

Newfoundland	2 760	0.5%
P.E.I.	6 545	5.5
N.S.	36 870	4.5
N.B.	223 780	33.0

59. The first French settlement in North America was at Port Royale on the Bay of Fundy. The French settlers in the Maritimes were called Acadians. The colony of Acadia grew slowly and, in 1713, it was taken over by the British. In 1755, several thousand Acadians were forced from their homes, put on British ships and deported to the south. Their lands were taken over by English immigrants. Many Acadians found their way back to the Maritimes and most settled in north-eastern New Brunswick. The Acadians are about one third of the population of New Brunswick.

60. Sometimes English and French Canadians in New Brunswick have had sharp disagreements. For example, there was a disagreement in the city of Moncton where Acadians make up 35 per cent of the population. In 1972, some of the students in the French high schools and the bilingual university demanded that the city provide services in French and English. Some English-speaking citizens became very upset. They thought that bilingual services would increase the cost of government and increase their taxes. At the same time, they were afraid that this would give French Canadians an advantage in securing jobs with the city government. Some English Canadians who worked for the city were afraid that they might lose their jobs because they did not speak French.

61. In 1972, the Acadians decided to create their own political party, the "Parti Acadien". The Parti Acadien promised to fight for more rights and services for the Acadians. The party did not do very well in the provincial elections in the 1970's. However, the demands of the party encouraged Premier Hatfield and his Progressive Conservative government to act. New Brunswick is

the only province that has passed a law making both English and French official languages. In 1980, Premier Hatfield suggested new laws to guarantee the rights of Acadians in the province.

62. The Acadians have also become very proud of their own culture. In the past, they have been ignored by French Canadians in Quebec. Now, Acadian writers, historians, and singers celebrate their own culture. The new “rock and reel” group called “1755”, has cut several albums and travelled across Canada. Their music mixes French and English words, in the Acadian style, to very lively music. Today, the Acadians in New Brunswick are the strongest French minority outside Quebec. They have the support of the provincial government. The Acadians are confident about the future of New Brunswick and their future as French Canadians.

## Ontario

63. There were French settlements in Ontario long before the United Empire Loyalists came in the 1780's. French Canadians settled along the St. Lawrence, Ottawa, and Detroit Rivers. Over the years, the number of Francontarians increased in eastern Ontario. French Canadian lumberjacks and miners also helped to open northern Ontario. In 1976, there were about 462 100 French Canadians in Ontario.

64. For many years after Confederation, the French Roman Catholics of Ontario were viewed suspiciously by both the English Protestants and Catholics. Between the 1890's and the 1920's, the Ontario provincial government stopped the right of students to attend a French language school. Francontarians faced the danger of assimilation and some communities in southwestern Ontario did gradually disappear.

65. In the 1960's and 1970's, the Ontario government started to improve its services to Francontarians. After 1968, parents of twenty-five elementary students or twenty secondary students could ask for education of their children in French. Unfortunately, a few problems developed, especially in the high schools. In Sturgeon Falls, Essex County, and Penetanguishene, local school boards refused to provide French high schools. The school boards wanted to have one large bilingual high school where students could take their classes in English or in French. The school boards said that this was cheaper than having one English and one French high school. However, Francontarians said that students in bilingual schools usually spoke English. They wanted a French school to improve the students' French. The provincial government of Premier William Davis had to step in and force the school boards to provide French schools.

66. Premier Davis did refuse to make French an official language of Ontario. He was afraid that some English Canadians

“It's stupid; they can all speak English. Why should we waste money on bilingual signs and all the rest.” (in Moncton)

“It is unacceptable that in our own province we cannot die in French, be sick in French, have police services in French, phone in French, eat out in French, in the six main cities of the province and elsewhere.” (La Fédération des Dames d'Acadie du Nouveau-Brunswick, in Moncton)



would become very angry. However, French Canadians may write to the Ontario government in French. Trials in court cases may be held in French and some health services are available in French. The position of French Canadians in Ontario has improved slowly over the last twenty years.

Western Canada

67. French Canadian explorers and furtraders opened up the Prairies. Many French Canadians married Indian women and the Métis people were born. When Canada bought the Northwest from the Hudson’s Bay Company in 1869, there were more French- than English-speaking people on the Prairies.

68. Manitoba became a province in 1870 and the French and English languages were both recognized in law. Protestant and Roman Catholic schools were set up. By 1890, many English Protestants had moved to Manitoba. The Manitoba government stopped printing provincial laws, forms, and debates in both English and French. They used only English. The Manitoba provincial government also eliminated the religious schools and set up one English public school system. The courts and the federal government did nothing to help the French Roman Catholics keep their separate schools. This made it very difficult for the French Canadians in Manitoba to survive. In 1970, the Manitoba government finally allowed the French Canadians to establish their own schools. Then in 1979, the courts said that the Manitoba government’s decision to stop using French after 1890 was wrong. They said that the Manitoba government must use both English and French.

69. French Canadians did not have their language protected when Saskatchewan and Alberta became provinces in 1905. British Columbia did not legally protect French Canadians either. These provinces have made few attempts to help their French Canadian minorities until recent years.

Conclusion

70. Some people think that minority rights are not important. They do not like both English and French on product labels. They think that providing services for French Canadians is a waste of money. Now some French Canadians are talking the same way about services for English Canadians inside Quebec.

71. Canada is not a simple country to run. Minority language rights is a very touchy subject. But Canadians must remember that there are almost 6 000 000 French Canadians in Canada, 1 500 000 of whom live outside Quebec and that there are 800 000 English Canadians who live inside Quebec. These “minorities” are people who should not and cannot be ignored. Some progress is

FRENCH-CANADIANS IN WESTERN CANADA, 1976

Manitoba	54 745	5.4%
Saskatchewan	26 710	3.8
Alberta	44 440	3.0
B.C.	38 430	2.6

“Assimilation is a natural aspect of life, and to take steps to prevent assimilation is undemocratic.”  
(from Toronto)

“It seems to me that one way to preserve the unity of Canada is to have all the schools teach both English and French from kindergarten through Grade 13.”  
(from Windsor)

being made. In February, 1978, all the provinces of Canada agreed that children of the French or English minority have the right to education in their own language. The federal government provides some money to help finance these minority language studies. Also the CBC does have many radio and television stations that provide programmes to minority groups in their own language. Space satellites and cable television will increase these services in the 1980's.

## CANADIAN BROADCASTING CORPORATION

	<i>English Stations</i>	<i>French Stations</i>
Radio—AM	30	14
FM	14	4
Television	17	10

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—7

#### Knowing The People

1. Go to the library and find out more about these three famous people from the early history of New France: Pierre Le Moyne d'Iberville, Marie de l'Incarnation, and Father Brébeuf.

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. French Catholic schools were very important to French Canadian minorities because
  - (a) they kept their children off the street
  - (b) they taught their children English
  - (c) they helped students get better jobs
  - (d) they taught students the religion and language of their parents

### Paragraphs 8—19

#### Knowing the People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Maurice Duplessis —brought in conscription during World War II
- Mackenzie King —led the strike of the asbestos miners
- Louis St. Laurent—leader of the Quebec Liberal Party in 1960
- Jean Marchand —a young lawyer from Montreal who supported the strike in Asbestos
- Pierre Trudeau —said that the big American and English Canadian companies caused the Great Depression
- Jean Lesage —French Canadian Prime Minister of Canada in the 1950's

## Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Corrupt means
  - (a) politicians are paid a salary for their job
  - (b) someone does something for money or favours
  - (c) a person does someone a favour
  - (d) a person takes money from someone else

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The Roman Catholic Church supported the Union Nationale Party because
  - (a) they wanted to protect the French Canadian language and culture
  - (b) they thought life in the cities made people less religious
  - (c) they were worried about the growing English influence
  - (d) all of the above

## Questions

4. How did Duplessis win so many Quebec provincial elections?
5. Why did Duplessis support big companies and attack unions?

### Paragraphs 20 — 24

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Jean Lesage —President of Quebec in 1960
- René Lévesque —Premier of Quebec in 1960  
—a television star who went into politics



### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The Quebec government took over the direction of education from the Roman Catholic Church because
  - (a) students could not read and write French
  - (b) students wanted to become doctors and lawyers
  - (c) the government wanted to train students in trades and business
  - (d) students were not interested in mathematics and science anymore

### Question

3. Why were the years between 1960 and 1966 in Quebec called a “Quiet Revolution”?

### Paragraphs 25-30

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| 1. Lester Pearson | —became leader of the Liberal Party in 1968                 |
| Pierre Trudeau    | —wanted “Equality or Independence” for the people of Quebec |
| Jean Lesage       | —set up the Bi and Bi Commission                            |
| Daniel Johnson    | —was defeated in the election of 1966                       |

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism was set up
  - (a) to study the relationships between English and Italian Canadians
  - (b) to make suggestions on how to improve relations between English and French Canadians
  - (c) to make suggestions on how to protect French culture
  - (d) all of the above
  - (e) some of the above

3. In 1969, the Official Languages Act was passed
  - (a) to make all Canadians learn French and English
  - (b) to encourage Canadians to learn more than two languages
  - (c) to make English and French the two official languages of Canada
  - (d) all of the above
4. In the 1966 election, the Union Nationale received strong support from Quebec farmers because
  - (a) they were against high taxes
  - (b) they wanted the government to slow down on the changes it was introducing into Quebec
  - (c) they were worried about the debt of the government
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

5. Why were many French Canadians dissatisfied with English Canadians by 1963?
6. What did Daniel Johnson want for Quebec?

### Paragraphs 31—39

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| 1. Charles De Gaulle | —was a Quebec nationalist who left the Liberal Party                  |
| Lester Pearson       | —founder of the RIN   |
| Daniel Johnson       | —made a speech in Montreal in 1967 that pleased the separatists       |
| René Lévesque        | —said that President De Gaulle’s speech was unacceptable to Canadians |
| Marcel Chaput        | —did not criticize President De Gaulle’s speech                       |

### Questions

2. (a) Who was Honoré Mercier? Review chapter 5, if necessary.  
(b) What do Mercier, Duplessis, and Lévesque have in common?
3. Why was Lévesque against the FLQ?

## Paragraphs 40—45

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Robert Bourassa —was killed by members of the FLQ
- James Cross —brought in the War Measures Act to control the FLQ
- Pierre Laporte —was replaced by Robert Bourassa as the leader of the Quebec Liberal Party
- Pierre Trudeau —was the British representative who was kidnapped by the FLQ
- Jean Lesage —won the Quebec election of 1970

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Many Canadians supported Prime Minister Trudeau when he brought in the War Measures Act in 1970 because
  - (a) they believed the government had to take strong action
  - (b) they believed that the FLQ was about to start a revolution in Quebec
  - (c) they were afraid more people would be kidnapped
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

3. What did the FLQ do to make many Canadians believe that a revolution was about to begin in Quebec?
4. What rights were taken away from Canadians when the War Measures Act was brought in on October 16, 1970?
5. Do you think Trudeau was right or wrong when he brought in the War Measures Act? Explain.

## Paragraphs 46—56

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Robert Bourassa —won the 1976 Quebec election
- René Lévesque —wants a strong federal government to keep Canada together
- Claude Ryan —passed Bill 22, making French the only official language in Quebec
- Pierre Trudeau —is the Quebec Liberal leader who worked hard to convince the majority of Quebecers to vote “Non” in the referendum

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Many Quebecers voted for the Liberals in the 1973 Quebec election because
  - (a) the Liberals said they were the only ones who could stop the separatists
  - (b) they were afraid that, if the separatists were elected, Quebec would lose businesses and jobs
  - (c) they were afraid of a separatist victory in Quebec
  - (d) all of the above
3. The native peoples living around James Bay were against the James Bay hydro-electric project because
  - (a) they did not need electricity in their homes
  - (b) the project destroyed their hunting, trapping, and fishing grounds
  - (c) they had not been hired to work on the dams
  - (d) all of the above
4. Claude Ryan was against sovereignty-association in the 1980 referendum because
  - (a) he wanted Quebec to separate from Canada
  - (b) he thought no changes were needed
  - (c) he wanted Quebec to remain in Canada
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

5. What did many English Canadians ignore when they celebrated the re-election of Bourassa’s Liberal government in 1973?



6. Why did Bourassa's government become unpopular in Quebec between 1973 and 1976?
7. Why do you think Lévesque promised to hold a referendum on separation before the 1976 Quebec election?
8. (a) Why do you think the federal government appointed the Task Force on Canadian Unity in 1977?  
(b) What recommendations did the Task Force make?

### Paragraphs 57—62

#### Knowing The People

1. Who is Richard Hatfield?

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. French Canadians outside Quebec had difficulties after 1867 because
  - (a) they could not speak English
  - (b) their language was not protected in the B.N.A. Act
  - (c) the constitution required them to learn English in other provinces
  - (d) the law did not permit them to speak French in public
3. The Parti Acadien was created
  - (a) to fight for French Canadian rights in New Brunswick
  - (b) because Acadians wanted to join the province of Quebec
  - (c) to fight for French Canadian rights in Nova Scotia
  - (d) to start a revolution in New Brunswick

#### Questions

4. What problems are English Canadians in Quebec facing today?
5. Why do you think an Acadian rock group called itself "1755"?

### Paragraphs 63—71

#### Knowing The People

1. Who is William Davis?

#### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

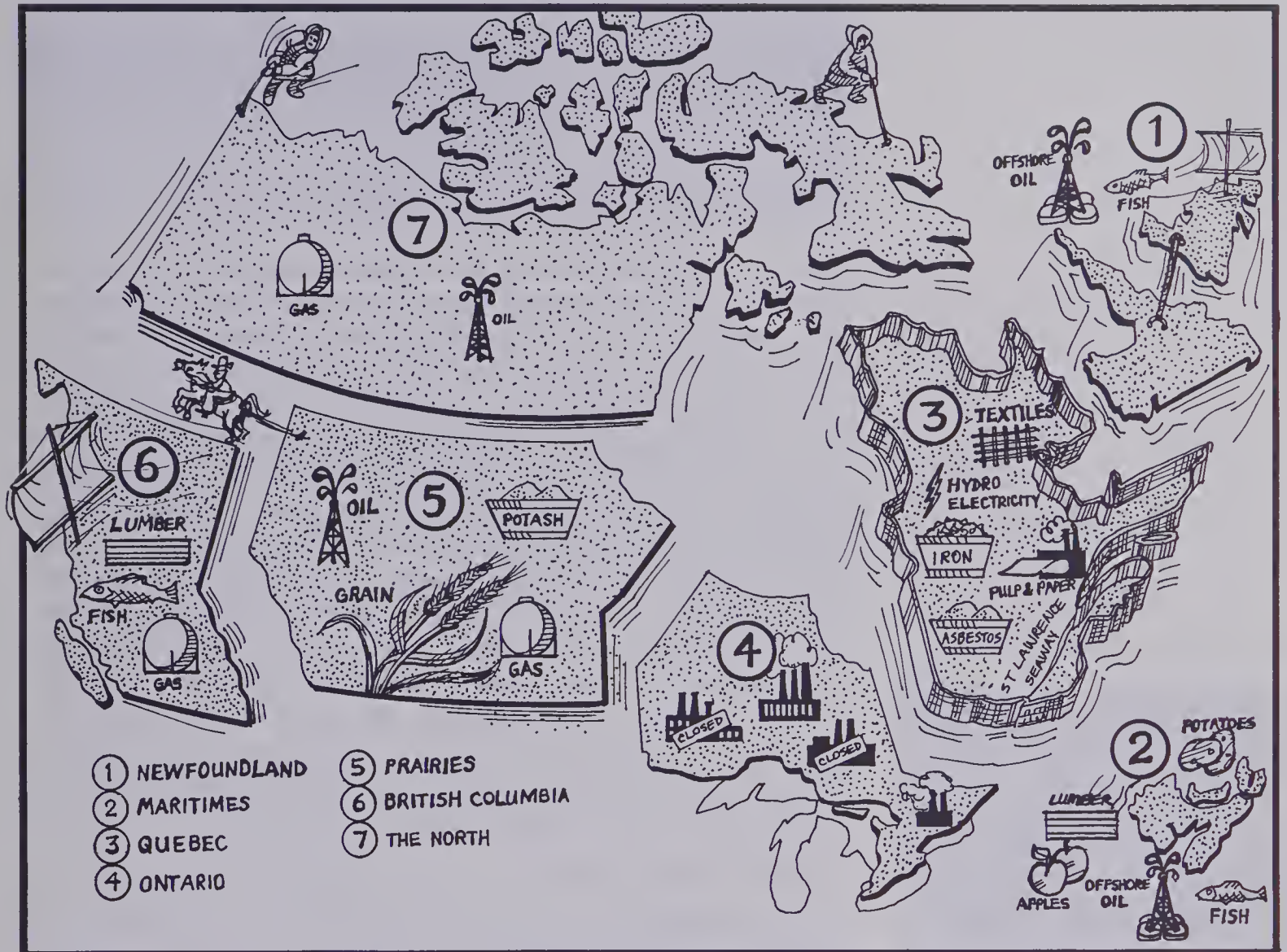
2. Premier Davis did not make French an official language of Ontario because
  - (a) he cannot speak French
  - (b) he was angry with René Lévesque
  - (c) there are very few French Canadians in Ontario
  - (d) he was afraid that the English would become angry
3. Manitoba eliminated French Roman Catholic schools because
  - (a) it did not like Louis Riel
  - (b) many French Canadians had moved to Saskatchewan
  - (c) many English-speaking Canadians moved in and became the majority
  - (d) none of the above

#### Questions

4. What services are provided in French for some Francophones?
5. How has the position of French Canadians in western Canada changed since 1869?
6. What changes have been made in Manitoba since 1970?
7. (a) Should minorities have any rights in a province?  
(b) How are French Canadian minorities different from other language groups?
8. Why can English- and French-speaking minorities not be ignored in provinces like Quebec, New Brunswick, Ontario, and Manitoba?

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

This map of Canada divides the country into seven regions and shows the basic economic resources of each region. Study the map and then discuss the effect of Canada's disintegration as a country if the regions did break apart.



## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

- Discuss with your fellow students what could be done to make French Canadians feel more at home in all parts of Canada.
- What services are available for French Canadians in your province and community? Think about medical, legal, educational, and entertainment services when you are writing your answer.
- How would a French-speaking tourist be treated in your community?
- Who speaks French in your community and how could they help French Canadian travellers? Contact your local tourist information centre, Chamber of Commerce, and municipal council to share your ideas with them.



## CHAPTER SIXTEEN

# Canadian Culture— What Is It?

AIM: What Is a Canadian?

### The Influence of Canada's Geography on Canadians

1. Canada stretches from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific Ocean and north to the Arctic. Canada's people call themselves Canadians and have many things in common with each other. They share the same cold climate, the same types of government, many of the same leaders, and they depend on each other. But Canadians are also different from each other. The way they think and act and the types of jobs they hold are influenced by the geography of the country. The geographies of Atlantic Canada, Central Canada, the Prairies, British Columbia, and the North are very different. It is not surprising that the people living in these places have different beliefs, jobs, and customs. But Canada's fishermen, farmers, factory and office workers, miners, and lumberjacks manage to live with each other. They might disagree on some issues but, so far, they have stayed together in the same country. The geography of Canada allows workers in the various regions of Canada to trade different goods, materials, and ideas with each other. Canada's geography creates differences among Canadians but it also helps to keep Canadians together.

### Canadians are Immigrants

2. Canada is a country of immigrants. Each group of immigrants added something new to Canada. The native peoples were the first immigrants to come to Canada, thousands of years ago from Asia. About 500 years ago, the French settled along the St. Lawrence River. They were followed by the English, who settled in the Maritimes and Ontario. The Scots, the Irish, the Germans, the Chinese, the Russians, the Ukrainians, the Poles, the Italians, the West Indians, the Portuguese, and many others followed. They came to settle in all parts of Canada. These groups had their own languages and cultures—and little understanding of each other.

3. Over the years, most of these immigrants learned English and a few learned French. As they learned to live and work with other Canadians, they too became Canadians. Their children

*Settlers in western Canada, 1890*





learned about Canada and its culture in school. But these children were also encouraged to keep the language and customs of their parents. Canadians believe that immigrants should pass on their **heritage** (past) to their children, and to other Canadians. This makes Canada a more exciting and interesting place to live. However, sometimes, Canadians discriminate against new immigrant groups. They forget that their ancestors were also immigrants. They dislike immigrants simply because they are different. The differences among Canadians are healthy as long as the various peoples in Canada respect each other. If Canadians fail to help and to listen to each other, Canada could break up as a country.

### The American Influence on Canadians

4. Most Canadians are worried about the influence of American culture on Canadians. Some Canadians prefer American television programmes, movies, books, and magazines. The U.S.A. is a “**melting pot**”. It encourages its people to speak the same language, have the same culture, and think the same way. Many Canadians have admired the opportunities and way of life in the U.S.A., and have moved there. However, those who remain in Canada want to be Canadians, not Americans. Canadians see the problems of the larger American nation and learn from them. Canadians are proud of their clean cities, vast lands, and the many different peoples who can call themselves Canadians.

### Radio and Television

5. Radio and television have had an enormous effect on the Canadian way of life. In the 1920's, radio carried the swinging music of the “Roaring Twenties” across North America. Radio made people feel less lonely on the Prairies and in the North. It also started the invasion of American popular culture into Canada.

### The Stranger

*Do you think it's possible to make a  
world where people  
Love each other  
Do you think it's possible to make a  
world where people  
Are happy  
Do you think it's possible to make a  
world, a world  
Of love  
Do you think it's possible to make a  
world where  
There are no more strangers*

*by Pauline Julien*



American stars and American products became household words in Canada — this is still the case today.

6. Early radio programmes featured many live performances which gave musicians, singers, actors, and comedians a chance to reach a wider audience than ever before. With the coming of television, radio stations played more records and presented fewer live performances. Until the late 1960's, few records were cut in English Canada. Few Canadian records were played on radio stations. The American "Top Forty" charts determined what was played on Canadian AM radio stations. This led the federal government and the Canadian Radio-Television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) to set rules to force Canadian radio stations to play more Canadian music. As a result, more Canadian artists cut records and the Canadian recording industry boomed.

7. In the 1930's, the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC) was set up to strengthen Canadian culture and identity. The CBC still presents excellent Canadian shows on both English and French networks. The AM radio programming is similar right across the country. Local shows are mixed with nation-wide programmes. "The National" News, "Morningside", "As It Happens", "Variety Tonight", "Sixty Minutes with a Bullet", and "Sunday Morning" present excellent news, interviews, music, and entertainment. Canadian broadcasters like Barbara Frum win top awards in the radio/television industry. The radio network also presents Canadian singers, musicians, authors, and playwrights to Canadian listeners. The high quality of these programmes attracts many American listeners along the border. The CBC provides excellent coverage of political and cultural events from different parts of the country. It is one of the few ways that Canadians may listen to and talk with each other.



Barbara Frum

Do you think that Americans who live along the border and who listen to CBC programmes might become "Canadianized"?

8. When television was new, in the late 1940's, Canadians along the American border installed aerials to watch the American stations in Seattle, Detroit, Cleveland, and Buffalo. In September, 1952, the CBC broadcast the first Canadian television programme. The English language network has had great difficulty competing with American programmes. The CBC is most successful in news coverage, such as "The National", in current affairs shows like "Newsmagazine", "Front Page Challenge", and "This Hour Has Seven Days", and in musical programmes like "Juliette", "Don Messer's Jubilee", "Holiday Ranch", and "Country Hoe-down". The greatest situation comedy was "The Plouffe Family", which was first written and produced by Roger Lemelin in French, and later in English. More recent successes include "King of Kensington" and an adventure show, "The Beachcombers". The most popular Canadian programme on the CBC over the years has been "Hockey Night in Canada".

9. The main reason why English Canadian television has trouble competing with American programmes is the cost. Putting a television series together is very expensive. It is cheaper for Canadian television stations and networks to buy American and British programmes than to produce Canadian shows. This means less work for Canadian writers, actors, and directors. There are many talented Canadian actors and directors. Some, like Glenn Ford, Lorne Green, Geneviève Bujold, William Shatner, and Norman Jewison have found work in the United States. A few stay in the U.S.A. because there are more job possibilities. In 1979/1980, the federal government gave the CBC \$477 400 000 toward the costs of producing Canadian programmes. As well, through the CRTC, the federal government has set limits on the number of American programmes that may be carried on Canadian stations. Content rules try to strengthen Canadian culture by providing more time for Canadian productions.

The first private network, the Canadian Television network (CTV), was created in 1961.

10. Television has had a deep effect on Canadians. In the 1970's, children watched about four hours of television every night, and most of the programmes were American. In 1980, 97 per cent of Canadian families owned a television. Television sets are the centre of many living rooms; many family meals are eaten in front of the television. Arguments start over which programme will be watched. Some people say that television is a dangerous babysitter that brainwashes children. An Ontario Royal Commission, led by Judy LaMarsh, has studied the effects of television violence on children. Teachers often blame television for students' short attention span in class and for their unfinished homework. Defenders of television say that it is very educational and they point to excellent programmes on music, art, history, and famous people. The debate on the value of television will continue through the 1980's.

What effect, do you think, cable television companies have had on Canadian television viewing habits?

## Sports

11. The geography of Canada and the various heritages of the people have influenced the development of Canadian sports. Canada's national game is lacrosse which was first developed by

*The game of lacrosse*







*Barbara Ann Scott*

*Ken Read*



*Paul Henderson, Moscow*



Canada's native peoples before European settlers arrived. A webbed stick is used to pass a ball from player to player and the object is to score goals. It is a rough, fast, exciting sport but it has not become a popular professional sport. The game remains a popular amateur sport.

12. The cold Canadian winters have led to the development of skating, skiing, curling, and hockey.

13. Canadians have a good reputation in figure skating. World championships have been won by Barbara Ann Scott (1947 and 1948), Donald Jackson (1962), Petra Burka (1965), and Karen Magnussen (1973). Canadians like Toller Cranston have greatly influenced the sport of figure skating throughout the world.

14. Canadian skiers have done very well in world competitions. Lucille Wheeler won two world championships in 1958 and Ann Heggtveit won an Olympic Gold Medal in 1960. Nancy Greene of British Columbia won two World Cup titles in 1967 and 1968 and an Olympic Gold Medal in 1968. Canadians are still succeeding in world competitions. In 1980, the Canadian men's downhill ski team was considered to be one of the best in the world. Skiing is one of Canada's most popular sports.

15. Curling is a sport for people of all ages. Young and old, women and men, match their skill in throwing their curling stones, called "rocks", to the circle. Canada has also been very successful in curling competitions with other countries and Canadian teams have won the Silver Broom, the symbol of the world championship.

16. Hockey is the most popular game in Canada. The game has spread to the United States and Europe as well. Canadians used to be the only players in the National Hockey League. However, fourteen of the twenty-one teams are now in American cities and more American, Swedish, and Czechoslovakian players are playing in this top league. In the 1970's, the Soviets, Czechs, and Swedes proved that they could match the best Canadian teams. The Canadian team won the 1972 Canada Cup but the Soviets have controlled world play since then. The Americans proved their growing skill by upsetting the Soviet hockey team in the 1980 Winter Olympics.

17. A strong American influence can be seen in the sports of golf, tennis, swimming, basketball, baseball, football, and track and field. In American schools, more attention is given to athletic training. As a result, there are many American athletes with well developed skills—who are eager to compete. To protect Canadian football players and to keep some Canadian content in the game, the Canadian Football League (CFL) puts a limit on the number of Americans who may play on one team. On a thirty-four player team, there may only be fifteen imports or non-Canadian players. This gives at least nineteen Canadians a chance to play football on



LEFT: *Debbie Brill*

RIGHT: *Harry Jerome*

each team in the league. The CFL also gives an annual award to the most outstanding Canadian player. There are five CFL teams in western Canada and four in eastern Canada. Every November, the top team from the West plays the top team from the East for the national championship. The winning team receives the Grey Cup, which was donated by Governor-General Earl Grey.

18. Many young Canadian men and women accept athletic scholarships to American universities. An athletic scholarship pays for a student's university education if the student competes in a university sport. In the past, only one Canadian university, Simon Fraser in B.C., gave athletic scholarships. The universities thought that students should go to school to learn and should play sports for fun. They thought that athletic scholarships put sports first and only trained people to become professional athletes. Instead, they wanted to encourage all people to play sports for exercise, health, and pleasure. The Canadian universities have been forced to reconsider their position because so many young Canadian athletes have been leaving for the U.S.A. In the 1980's, all Canadian universities may be offering athletic scholarships. Until now, Canadian athletes have been like many Canadians in all fields—medicine, engineering, science, and the skilled trades—who have had to ask themselves, "Should I go to the United States or should I stay in Canada?"

19. One sport that is growing rapidly in Canada is soccer. Canada's many recent immigrants have brought their enthusiasm for the most popular game in the world to this country. The introduction of professional soccer with the North American Soccer League has made the game very popular. In 1976, Toronto won the league championship and, in 1979, the Vancouver Whitecaps were victorious.

20. Our cold climate and excellent foods have produced many overweight and unhealthy people. In the past, Canadians have preferred to watch others compete in spectator sports. Recently, Canadians have become more aware of the importance of physical exercise for a healthy life. Canadians are beginning to jog, run, swim, cycle, play tennis and squash, and cross-country ski. Physical fitness keeps people more alert and helps them enjoy life.





*Buffy Sainte-Marie*



*Gordon Lightfoot*



*Oscar Peterson*



*René Simard*

## The Performing Arts

### Music

21. It is difficult to imagine a world without music. Every day, most of us listen to some type of music. Some of the music we hear is written and sung by Canadians. Composers (people who write music) usually write about their feelings or beliefs. Musicians and singers add their own personalities and feelings to the music. Canadian composers and singers come from all over Canada and the way in which they interpret music often says something about Canada and its people. It has been said that music is an international language. However, certain types of music appeal to different people.

### Popular Music

22. Popular music appeals to the greatest number of people. Canadians can listen to the music of many other countries. Canadian composers and singers must compete for popularity. Many have successfully competed and have become well known in their own country—and outside it.

23. Buffy Sainte-Marie is a Canadian Indian, born in Saskatchewan. Through her songs, she has helped Canadians to better understand the discrimination experienced by North American Indians. Anne Murray comes from Nova Scotia, and she sings about feelings of love and beauty. Gordon Lightfoot is from Ontario and his songs describe Canadian geography and history, and his feelings for Canadian people. Joni Mitchell comes from Saskatchewan and her songs have made her very popular. Stompin' Tom Connors from Prince Edward Island writes and sings country and western music. Murray McLauglan, Burton Cummings, Neil Young, Sylvia Tyson, Dan Hill, Bruce Cockburn, and Gino Vanelli, are some of the many popular Canadian songwriters and singers. Oscar Peterson is a Canadian jazz pianist who is well known throughout the world.

24. There are many songwriters and singers from Quebec. Gilles Vigneault, in his song "Mon Pays" (My Country), writes about his feelings for his province. Robert Charlebois, Pauline Julien, René Simard and Ginette Reno are only a few of the many French Canadian performers. Their songs show their pride in Quebec and reflect the nationalism of many French Canadians.

### Classical Music

25. Most of Canada's larger cities have their own symphony orchestras. Musicians must have years of training before they are good enough to be hired by a symphony orchestra. These orchestras usually play in concert halls before large audiences. They play the music of great European composers like Vivaldi,



*Toronto Symphony Orchestra*

Bach, Mozart, Schubert, Tschaikowsky, and Stravinsky. The music by these great composers is called classical music. Canadian composers like Harry Somers (one of his most famous works is *Louis Riel*), Barbara Pentland, Violet Archer, and André Gagnon, are also played by Canadian symphonies. Famous Canadian conductors of symphony orchestras include Boris Brott and Mario Bernardi. Canada's most famous classical pianist is Glenn Gould, who has a world reputation for his piano interpretations.

## Opera

26. Some composers write operas which tell a story through songs. It takes many years of voice training before an opera singer becomes famous. The Canadian Opera Company gives performances of many of the great opera composers like Verdi, Puccini, Bizet, and Wagner. Canadian operas by Charles Wilson, Healey Willan, and Frank Morrison are also performed. Such Canadian opera singers as Maureen Forrester, Teresa Stratas, Lois Marshall, and Jon Vickers are known throughout the world.



*Maureen Forrester*

## Ballet

27. Every year, thousands of Canadians watch ballet dancers tell a story through music and dance. The costumes worn by ballet dancers add to the story-telling. A ballet dancer needs many years of hard training and work; training usually begins at about five years of age. The National Ballet School of Canada was set up in 1959 to train Canadian ballet dancers. The most famous ballet companies in Canada include the National Ballet of Canada, the Royal Winnipeg Ballet, and Les Grands Ballets Canadiens. Karen Kain and Frank Augustyn are two of Canada's greatest ballet dancers. One of Canada's most famous ballets is *The Ecstasy of Rita Joe* about a poor Indian girl.

## Plays

28. Have you ever performed on your school stage? Some people forget their lines in the fear and shock of suddenly being on





LEFT: Rehearsal at Stratford

RIGHT: Kain and Augustyn in *Giselle*



Michel Tremblay

### Other Canadian Playwrights

Carol Bolt	James Reaney
John Coulter	Erika Ritter
Rex Deverell	

### Some Famous Canadian Actresses and Actors

Kate Reid  
 Frances Hyland  
 Jackie Burroughs  
 Martha Henry  
 Christopher Plummer  
 William Hutt  
 Douglas Rain  
 Richard Monette

stage in front of an audience. Professional actors and actresses say that learning the lines is the easiest part of a play. The excitement happens when you are on stage. The reaction of the audience is very important. The gasps, the laughter, and the applause of the audience always contribute to the excitement of a live performance.

29. In recent years, Canadian playwrights have written very successful plays. For example, George Ryga has written about the problems of the native peoples in modern Canada. Michel Tremblay has written plays about the life of poor French Canadians in Montreal. David Freeman has written about the problems of the handicapped and underprivileged in our modern society.

30. Plays have received a great boost in Canada with the building of new theatres. The Stratford Shakespearean Festival started in 1953 in Stratford, Ontario, and has become famous around the world. As well as plays by William Shakespeare, the theatre also performs plays by Canadian writers. The Shaw Festival at Niagara-on-the-Lake, Ontario, follows a similar pattern. It presents plays by George Bernard Shaw and others. The Charlottetown Festival Theatre in Prince Edward Island and the Neptune Theatre in Halifax, Nova Scotia, are two of the leading theatres in eastern Canada. Western Canada has many theatres, including the Manitoba Centre in Winnipeg, the Vancouver New Play Centre, and the new Citadel Theatre in Edmonton, Alberta.

31. Cities like Toronto and Vancouver have many small theatres and companies of actresses and actors. They produce a great number of plays, including many by Canadian writers. Frequently, these companies tour towns and cities throughout English Canada. These performances allow Canadians to share the writers' and performers' views on life—its joys and misfortunes.



## Movies

32. For years, Canadian actors and actresses have moved to the U.S.A. to try and become movie and television stars. Some of them have succeeded. These include Mary Pickford, Lorne Green, Raymond Massey, Donald Sutherland, Marie Dressler, and Geneviève Bujold.

33. Many Canadian actors and actresses started their acting careers at places like Stratford, and at the CBC. But they found few opportunities in Canada to develop their talents beyond a certain point. Canada has not developed a strong film industry. Canadians still prefer to watch American and foreign-made films. In 1939, the National Film Board of Canada (NFB) was set up by the federal government to produce Canadian films. Since then, the NFB has won many international awards for its short films. But the NFB has not been successful in producing feature films that are able to compete with American films.

34. Recently, attempts have been made to encourage a Canadian film industry. The Canadian Film Development Corporation (CFDC) was set up by the government in 1967 to help produce films in Canada. The government gives money and tax concessions to producers who make their films in Canada. These producers must hire a certain number of Canadians when they make their films in order to receive these government benefits. This has encouraged some Canadian talent to stay in Canada. Canadian film directors like Don Shebib and Claude Jutra have made successful films. Don Shebib made such films as *Goin' Down the Road* about the experiences of two Maritimers in the city of Toronto. Claude Jutra has shown French Canada in such movies as *Mon Oncle Antoine* and *Kamouraska*.

LEFT: Claude Jutra

RIGHT: Christopher Plummer

Donald Sutherland



## Literary and Visual Arts

### The Printed Word

35. Canadians have had to fight hard to survive. In settling this land and struggling to make a living they have had similar





*Gabrielle Roy*



*Margaret Atwood*



*Pierre Berton*

experiences. Despite their different backgrounds, they have found ways to speak to each other and to share their experiences.

36. Gabrielle Roy has described the life and character of French Canadians. Hugh MacLennan has written about the divisions between English and French Canadians in Quebec. Mordecai Richler has explored the problems facing poor Jewish immigrants in Montreal. Margaret Laurence and Margaret Atwood have written about the challenges faced by Canadian women as they try to develop as individuals. The struggles between animals and man, in eastern and northern Canada, have been described by Farley Mowat in his books.

37. Canada's past has excited the imagination of several writers. Pierre Berton has likely done more to make Canadians aware of their past than any other person. Through his books on the Klondike, the building of the CPR, the Dionne quintuplets, and his stories of the frontier, he has tried to excite Canadians about their past. His radio and television programmes have added force to his stories about the men and women who built Canada. Timothy Findley described the physical and mental horrors of the First World War. Roch Carrier wrote about the French Canadian attitudes toward World War II, conscription, and English Canadians. Robertson Davies has written a series of three books on growing up in Ontario.

38. Canada's poets like E.J. Pratt, Earle Birney, Milton Acorn, Irving Layton, Leonard Cohen, and Gwendolyn MacEwen have also tried to express the Canadian identity. Poetry and prose write about the same subjects but express them in different ways.

39. Canadian writers and poets have had to compete in the book-buying market with American and British writers. In 1951, the Royal Commission on Arts and Letters recommended that the federal government help Canadian writers. The Canada Council was set up and it has given some support to many students and writers, and has helped to publish their books. Many American publishing companies have bought out Canadian companies and set up branch plants in Canada. Publishing companies decide which books they will print and sell to the public. Since sales are so important, a relatively unknown Canadian author may not be considered as a "good seller". The federal and provincial governments have tried to make certain that Canadian writers can still be published in Canada.

40. In the past, Canadians have spent a lot of time wondering "What is a Canadian?" and "Is there a Canadian culture?". Recently, young Canadian writers in all parts of the country have set out to tell their stories and express their feelings without worrying about these questions. Since World War II, hundreds of new writers have appeared in both English and French. They have written about human problems and Canadian experiences.

## Painting and Sculpture

41. Art has always been important to society. Painting and sculpture can be seen in homes, offices, galleries, parks, subways, and schools. A piece of art gives the viewpoint of a particular artist.

42. There are many styles of Canadian art. One type of art is created by the native peoples. Canadian Indians produce many types of wood sculpture and bright paintings. The Eskimos or Inuit are famous for their soapstone carvings and their paintings and prints. This style of art usually shows the experiences and beliefs of the native peoples. Animals, spirits, and hunters are often seen in their art.

43. In the nineteenth century, two famous European artists came to Canada. They painted what they saw, but in a European manner. Paul Kane's paintings showed Canadian Indians and their way of life. Cornelius Krieghoff painted beautiful scenes of Canadian life which have become very famous. But a Canadian style of painting did not really develop until the early part of the twentieth century. Until this time, Canadian artists had copied the styles of European artists. Tom Thomson and other painters, called the Group of Seven, led the way in creating a Canadian style of painting. They painted the Canadian North in the bright and vivid colours of that land. About the same time, Emily Carr was painting scenes of British Columbia in a similarly vivid way. At first, many Canadians did not like this new style of Canadian art. These painters were not accepted in Canada until their works had received praise in Europe.

44. Today, there are many Canadian artists who are describing their country in their art. J.F. Lansdowne and Glen Loates paint birds and animals with great attention to detail. Others, such as Molly Bobak, Lionel Le Moine Fitzgerald, and Maurice Cullen have painted scenes of Canadian cities. David Milne, Jacques de Tonnancour, and Albert H. Robinson have done beautiful landscapes while Jean-Paul Lemieux, Horatio Walker, and William Kurelek are known for their scenes of everyday life in Canada. The "magic realism" art such as that of Alex Colville and Christopher Pratt shows every day objects but with a supernatural quality. Harold Towne and Kazuo Nakamura are well-known abstract artists. Wood engraving, etching, wood cuts, and sculpture are other forms of art which are being used successfully by Canadian artists. Canadian art is now accepted as an important part of our culture—and as an investment. As artists become better known, their work becomes more valuable. Each year, Canada's art schools train talented artists and designers. More of Canada's identity is being found in the work of its artists—not only in pieces of art but in design and commercial products.

## Other Canadian Artists

Jack Bush  
Charles Comfort  
Jack Shadbolt  
Jean-Paul Riopelle  
Ken Danby  
Jack Chambers  
Michael Snow  
Jack Nichols  
Robert Harris  
Joyce Wieland  
Greg Curnoe  
Guido Molinari

## Some Canadian Sculptors

Louis Philippe Hébert  
Elizabeth Wyn Wood  
Gerald Gladstone  
Robert Murray  
Frances Loring  
Louis Archambault  
Armand Vaillancourt

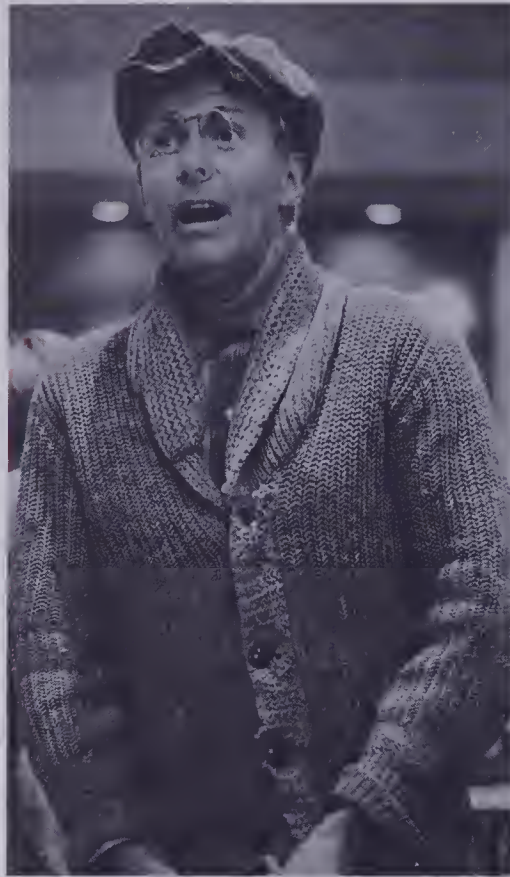


*Maryon Kantaroff displays some of her sculpture*



"There's no point in fightin' yer inflammation 'cause the guvermint's all fer it. There's no guvermint in the world wants to stop it 'cause that's the business they're in. They borrow money from you now, and they pay it back 10 years later, when it's worth half or a quarter as much"

*Charlie Farquharson*



*Charlie Farquharson*



*Barbara Hamilton*

## **Humour**

45. One sign of a growing Canadian culture is our ability to laugh at ourselves. For many years, there were few Canadian humourists—people like Thomas Haliburton and Stephen Leacock were alone in their work.

46. Radio provided a new outlet for Canadian humour. The "Happy Gang" presented many skits on CBC radio. In the late 1940's, a new comic appeared on the Maritimes network. Max Ferguson used his voice to create Rawhide and a full cast of other characters. The show became so popular that Ferguson was moved to Toronto and broadcast his show to all of eastern Canada for five years. Later, Ferguson had a show on the national network in which he changed news stories into funny skits. Politicians were favourite targets of his jokes.

47. CBC radio has also sponsored other comedy shows. "Inside from the Outside", starring Barbara Hamilton, "Dr. Bundolo's Pandemonium Medicine Show" from Vancouver, and the "Royal Canadian Air Farce", have entertained audiences for years. For a while, "Sunday Morning" featured the political humour of Nancy White. Some comedians have performed on Canadian television but none of them has a regular programme. John Wayne and Frank Schuster have done many television specials over the years. Their absurd skits and slapstick humour continue to amuse Canadians.

48. Perhaps the two most famous Canadian comedians are Don Harron and Dave Broadfoot. Don Harron, alias Charlie Farquharson, gained great fame on the American television show, “Hee Haw”. *Charlie Farquharson’s History of Canada* and his *Jogfree of Canada* present comical written descriptions of Canada’s past and present. Dave Broadfoot is a great stand-up Canadian comedian. Two of his characters are very popular—the MP for Kicking Horse Pass and Sergeant Renfrew of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police with his dog Cuddles.

49. Other English Canadians have written amusing books on Canada. Max Braithwaite has written about his life on the prairies between 1910 and 1940. Eric Nicol has written a *History of Canada* that is not always historically accurate. Mark M. Orkin has poked fun at English Canadians’ use of words in his book *Canajan, Eh?*.

50. It is important for Canadians to learn to laugh at themselves. Humour and jokes should not be used to attack others or to encourage hatred between peoples. Humour should be used to help us accept and appreciate our differences. If we can see the jokes on ourselves, it will help us to understand that other people may see us differently. Perhaps we will learn to be less proud as individuals and more willing to compromise. Sharing culture and laughter makes better friends.

**ALBIRDA** Province of the western end of the prairie, q.v. Noted for its natural resources, among them gas and oil. There is a school of Fie Narts at Bamf.

**EM PEE** A member of the House of Commons q.v.

**MARE CAN** Of or pertaining to the United States, its inhabitants or language

**WINNER** The principal Canadian season, immediately preceding summer.

from “*Canajan, Eh?*”  
by Mark M. Orkin

## UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

### Paragraphs 1—4

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

- A heritage is
  - the money received by the Alberta government when it sells oil and gas
  - the culture and language of parents and ancestors
  - a coin collection with pictures of the past printed on the coins
  - none of the above
- A “melting pot” describes
  - a type of stew
  - a ceremony
  - a society where all people are encouraged to speak the same language and have the same culture
  - a situation where people keep the heritage of their ancestors

## Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

- Canadians have many things in common because
  - they have the same climate
  - they have the same type of government
  - they depend on each other for goods, materials, and ideas
  - all of the above

## Questions

- How does the geography of Canada make Canadians different from each other?
- Do you think that the children of immigrants should be encouraged to keep their heritage? Why?



## Paragraphs 5—10

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Barbara Frum —singer on CBC television  
Roger Lemelin —studied the effects of television violence on children  
Judy LaMarsh —CBC radio interviewer and broadcaster  
—wrote "The Plouffe Family"

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The CRTC limits the number of American programmes that Canadian stations may show because
  - (a) they want to protect the Canadian language
  - (b) they want to allow more time for Canadian programmes
  - (c) they think that American shows are inferior
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

3. How many people in your class listen to CBC radio?
4. What is your favourite radio programme and station? Why?
5. (a) What are the advantages of watching television?  
(b) What are some of the dangers?

## Paragraphs 11—20

### Knowing The People

1. Name the Canadians who have won world championships in skating and skiing.
2. Check an almanac or encyclopedia in your school library to find the winners of Canadian and world championships in the sports which interest you.

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The CFL limits the number of American players on each football team because
  - (a) they want to give Canadian players a chance to play football in Canada
  - (b) American players would take too much money out of Canada
  - (c) Canadian fans do not like American players
  - (d) American players get lost on the larger Canadian football fields and would run into each other
4. (a) If you were offered an athletic scholarship, would you accept or reject it? Why?  
(b) If you were offered two athletic scholarships of equal value from a Canadian and an American university, which would you accept? Why?
5. (a) Why are some sports called spectator sports?  
(b) What are some examples of spectator sports?

## Paragraphs 21—34

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. (a)  
Buffy Sainte-Marie —directed the films *Mon Oncle Antoine* and *Kamouraska*  
Oscar Peterson —writes and sings songs about Canada's geography, history and people  
Claude Jutra —is a well known classical pianist  
Tom Connors —writes and sings country and western music  
Glenn Gould —writes and sings songs about the native peoples  
Don Shebib —is a popular jazz pianist  
George Ryga —wrote a play about the problems of the native peoples  
Michel Tremblay —is the Canadian director who made *Goin' Down the Road*  
Gordon Lightfoot —wrote about the life of poor French Canadians in Montreal

- (b) Look at the names of Canadian playwrights, actresses, and actors listed in the margin of the text. Write the names of the people whom you recognize in your notebook. Select one name that you do not recognize from each list. Using the library resources, try to find out some facts about the careers of these people.

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. Many Canadian actors and actresses moved to the U.S.A. because
  - (a) they wanted to become movie stars
  - (b) they found few jobs in Canada
  - (c) they were not able to develop their talents in Canada
  - (d) all of the above
3. The National Film Board of Canada was set up in 1939 to
  - (a) give awards to the best Canadian actors actresses
  - (b) to win international awards in short films
  - (c) to film the events of World War II
  - (d) to make Canadian films

### Questions

4. List the types of music you like and dislike. Compare your answers to those of the rest of the class.
5. Name two Canadian conductors. They can be different from those named in the text.
6. Using the library, find the name of an opera written by each of two composers of your choice.
7. How are live performances of plays different from television shows and movies?
8. Have you ever seen a play performed in a theatre? If so, describe the theatre and the play.
9. What has the government done to support the Canadian film industry? Do you think that government support is helping the film industry?

### Paragraphs 35—44

#### Knowing The People

1. Re-read the section on the printed word (paragraphs 35-40) and write down the names of the writers that you recognize. Find out about those you do not recognize.
2. Who is your favourite Canadian writer and your favourite poet? Bring a poem that you like to class. Discuss why it represents Canada for you.

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Some Canadian art is regarded as an excellent investment because
  - (a) there are more Canadian artists
  - (b) designers appreciate Canadian art
  - (c) prices keep increasing as artists become better known
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

4. What are some of the topics discussed by Canadian writers?
5. (a) If you were going to write a poem, story, or novel, what would you write about? Would you write about something that has happened to you or to your family? Would you write about something from Canada's past? Explain your choice of topic.  
(b) Suppose you decided to write an exciting historical novel which could later be made into a movie. Which period of Canadian history would interest you as a theme?
6. Why do the federal and provincial governments try to help writers and artists?

### Paragraphs 45-50

#### Knowing The People

1. Who is your favourite Canadian comedian?
2. If you have never read or heard any of the Canadian comedians mentioned in the text, find one of their books or listen to one of their records or radio programmes. Write a brief review of their performance or book.

### Questions

3. Why is radio so effective in amusing audiences?
4. (a) Why is it rude to tell jokes about religious, racial, or ethnic groups.  
(b) Why do people from these groups not find such stories funny?  
(c) How do you feel when people tell jokes about the cultural group to which you belong?  
(d) How would you feel if Americans told nasty jokes about Canadians in your presence?
5. How may humour help to bring Canadians together?



## USING SOURCES

1. In the "Canadian Railroad Trilogy", Gordon Lightfoot writes and sings about the building of Canada's first railroad and the people who built it. After reading the song, answer the questions that follow.

### Canadian Railroad Trilogy

There was a time in this fair land  
when the railroad did not run,  
When the wild majestic mountains  
stood alone against the sun.  
Long before the whiteman, and  
long before the wheel.  
When the green dark forest was  
too silent to be real.

But time has no beginnings and  
history has no bounds,  
As to this verdant country they  
came from all around.  
They sailed up on her waterways  
and they walked the forests tall.  
Built the mines, mills and factories  
for the good of us all.

For they looked in the future and  
what did they see.  
They saw an iron road running from the  
sea to the sea.

Bringing in the goods to a young  
growing land.  
All up from the seaports and into  
their hands...

Bring in the workers and bring up  
the rails.

We gotta lay down the tracks  
and tear up the trails.

Open her heart let the Lifeblood  
flow.

Gotta get on our way, 'cause we're  
movin' too slow.

Behind the blue Rockies the sun  
is declining.

The stars they come stealin' at the  
close of the day.

Across the wide prairie our loved ones  
lie sleeping.

Beyond the dark forest is a place  
far away.

We are the plow-boys who work upon  
the railway.

Swingin' our hammers in the bright  
blazin' sun.

Livin' on stew and drinkin' bad  
whiskey.

Layin' down track 'til the long  
days are done.

Yeah, bendin' our backs 'til the  
railroad is done.

Now the song of the future has  
been sung,

All the battles have been won,

On the mountain tops we stand,

All the world at our command,

We have opened up the soil

With our tear drops and our toil.

## Questions

1. How does Lightfoot describe the reasons for building the railway?
2. Find the phrases that describe what it was like to be a worker on the railway.
3. How did Lightfoot capture the historical significance of the first railway across Canada?

## DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

1. Arrange to visit your school library or music department to hear samples of each type of music discussed in this chapter.
2. Visit an art gallery and find out which of the paintings and sculptures have been created by Canadian artists.

## EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

You will each have a sense of a Canadian identity—of what it means to you to be a Canadian. This sense may relate to the region in which you live and its particular landscape; it may relate to your recent arrival in this country and your first impressions of Canada; it may relate to what you know about your ancestors' early settlement in Canada; it may relate to a piece of music you like. Try to express your ideas of what being a Canadian means. Your ideas may be expressed in a short story, a poem, music, a drawing, or a short dramatic presentation to the class. Are there similarities in your sense of Canadian identity and those of the rest of the class? What are the differences? Why are there some differences? Do you think that problems are created when people have different ideas of the meaning of their national identity?

# UNIT FOUR

## Government and Law





## CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

# Government and Law

AIM: How Do Canadians Govern Themselves?

### Rules

1. The next time you walk down a street, look at all the traffic signs and lights that tell drivers and pedestrians what to do. Most people stop at red lights and start when the lights turn green, without even thinking about it. Every day, each Canadian obeys hundreds of rules automatically. Without rules, people would not be able to work and live together, easily and peacefully.

### Laws

2. Some rules that Canadians obey are called **laws**. A law is a legal rule that is enforced by the police and/or the courts. If a law is broken, the person who broke the law can be punished. Laws are made by governments which decide on the amount of punishment a person may receive. Usually the more serious offences have heavier punishments.

### The Need for Rules and Laws

3. There is a need for rules whenever there is more than one person involved in any situation. People need rules to know what they should do. If there were no rules, people might hurt themselves or other people. If students were not required to attend school each day, many would probably not attend regularly. In such a situation, many young people might grow up without the skills they require. The laws that make students attend school to a certain age help young people to develop. They also make sure that Canada has citizens who can find jobs and can help run their community and country.

### Democratic Government

4. Canada is a **democracy**—the Canadian people elect the leaders whom they want to make the laws. The Canadian people elect **representatives** who try to make laws that are fair for the greatest number of Canadians. Canadians help to control the government by voting.

### Values

5. All people have **values** that determine what they believe is right and wrong. People receive their values from many places.



Young people learn what is right and wrong from their parents, television, friends, churches, schools, and other groups. Most Canadians share and agree on certain values. They believe in democracy and the rule of law. They believe that people should obey laws and settle their disagreements peacefully. They are against the use of violence to gain change. Most Canadians believe that if certain people or groups want laws changed, they must try to convince other Canadians that the change is needed. If a large number of people agree, they can ask their representatives in the government to change the law.

### Issues, Pressure Groups, and Compromises

6. Canadians agree that certain values are important but they perhaps disagree on the importance of other values. Important matters on which they disagree are called **issues**. When large groups of people oppose each other on certain issues, they try to make the government pass laws that suit their point of view. Capital punishment is an important issue in Canada. Some Canadians feel so strongly about this issue that they join a **pressure group** to try and influence the government. A pressure group is made up of individuals who have something in common with each other. Individuals join this group because they know they will have more influence if they work together. The police are important members of a pressure group that is trying to convince the government to bring back capital punishment for dangerous criminals.

7. On some issues the government might pass a law that is a **compromise** between both pressure groups. Both sides achieve something but fail to gain everything they wanted.

### The Canadian Bill of Rights

8. The Canadian Bill of Rights is a law that was passed by the Canadian government in 1960. It outlines some values that Canadians think are very important. This law states that all Canadians have certain rights that cannot be taken away from them except during an emergency. This law tries to make sure that all Canadians are treated fairly. Equal treatment of people regardless of colour, race, or sex is one of the important values in a democratic society.

### How Does The Canadian Government Work?

#### Making Laws

9. If people are going to live together in peace, they need laws to guide them. The first job of government is to make laws. Laws may be made in many ways. In some countries, one person may make laws. A dictator like Adolf Hitler did this. In other countries, a small number of people may make laws. It is





impossible to let every person in a country vote on every law. In a democracy, the people must decide who will make the laws. Canadians elect representatives to make laws for them. If Canadians dislike the laws passed by the representatives, they may vote for new representatives in the next elections. This happened when Joe Clark and the Progressive Conservatives lost to Pierre Trudeau and the Liberals in the 1980 federal election. Making laws is called the **legislative** function.

### Carrying Out Laws

10. Making a law is just the beginning. Someone must carry out and enforce the laws made by the representatives. The Prime Minister of the country or the Premier of a province and their Cabinet Ministers are responsible for carrying out the law. To help these elected representatives, the government hires many **civil servants** such as secretaries, inspectors, police officers, and scientists to make the law work. If the representatives pass a law to protect rivers and lakes from pollution, civil servants must then test the water and decide the level of pollution. A Cabinet Minister may order a company to stop production, if it is adding to the pollution problem. In this way, the Prime Minister, the Cabinet, and the civil servants carry on the day-to-day government of the country. The carrying out and enforcing of laws is called the **executive** function.

### Interpreting Laws

11. Sometimes, people disagree on the meaning of laws and/or on the way in which they are enforced. How may these disagreements be settled peacefully and fairly? Someone must decide what the law means and if a person has broken the law. Judges in the courts settle many disputes between individuals such as the ownership of a fence dividing their properties. Judges also settle disputes between the government and individuals, such as deciding whether the police officer was correct in charging someone for theft or for speeding. Interpreting what the law means and applying it in specific cases is called the **judicial** function.

### Why Does Canada Have Several Levels of Government?

12. Clearly, Canadians need a government to help them make laws and create a better society. Why do Canadians have so many governments—federal, provincial, and municipal?

13. Canada is a very large country. One government would have great difficulty meeting the needs of all Canadians. Different ethnic groups like the French and the native peoples, different workers like nurses and miners, and different provinces like Newfoundland and Manitoba, have different needs and interests.



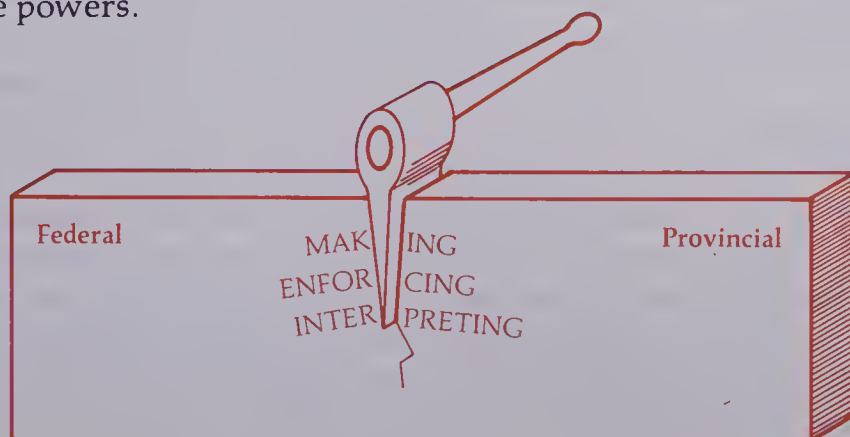
## Confederation

14. In 1867, the Fathers of Confederation recognized this problem. They knew that all Canadians needed one government for defence and trade. They also knew that Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Quebec, and Ontario had very different local interests. Under the leadership of Tupper, Tilley, Cartier, Macdonald, and Brown, they decided to create a federal system of government with two separate levels. This is called **federalism**. The federal or national government in Ottawa was given the power to make certain laws for the entire country. Each provincial government was given the power to make other laws for the people living in each province. Provincial laws, such as the drinking age, could be different in each province. These powers were written down in our **constitution** called the British North America Act. A constitution is a law that explains how a country will be run.

### Dividing the Powers

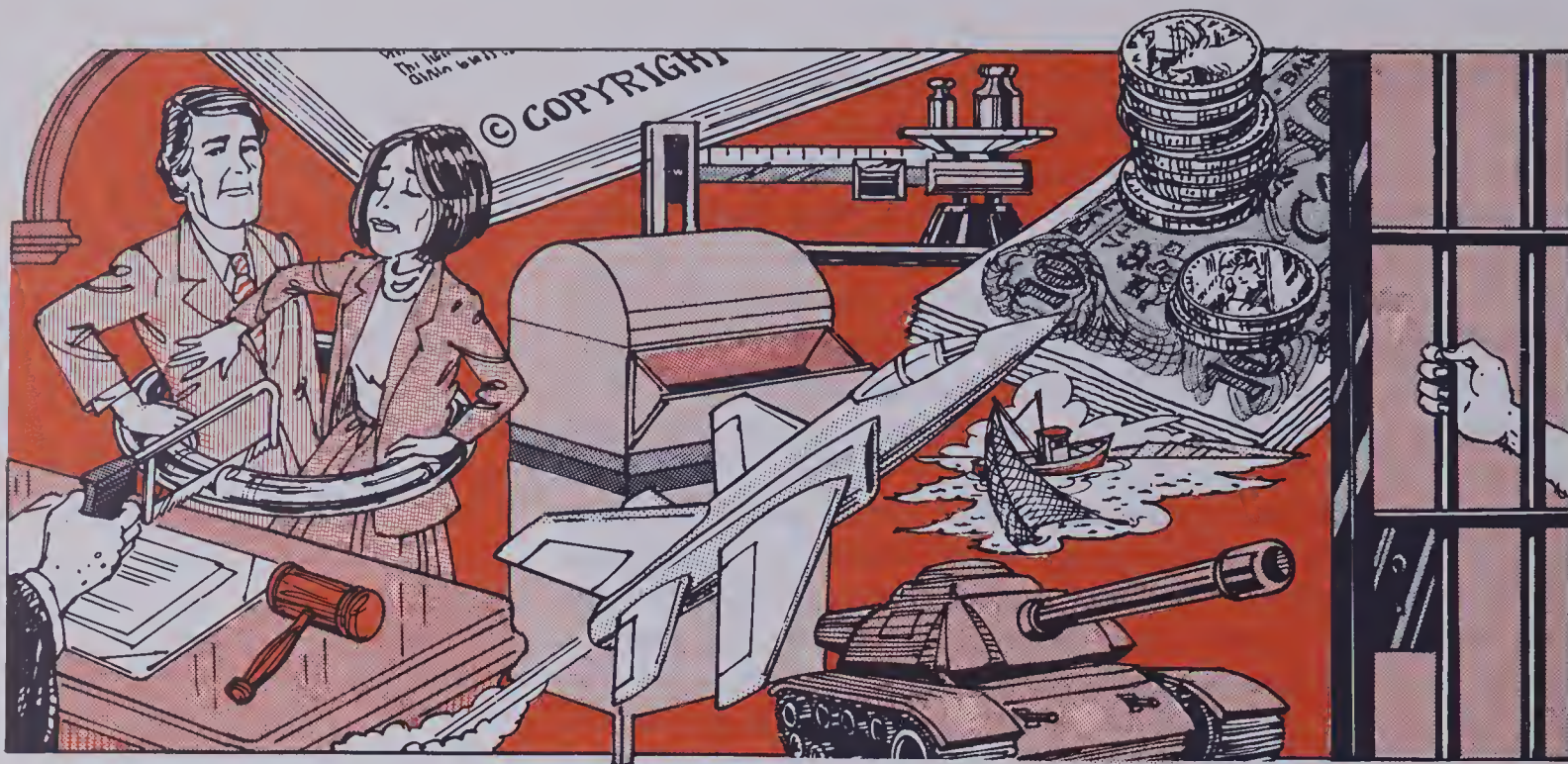
15. In 1867, the Fathers of Confederation wanted to make the federal government very strong. The federal government was given the power over trade, defence, money, criminal law, Indians, and many other things. The federal government was given more taxing power than the provinces. The federal government also had the power to take over projects such as railways, mines, oil wells, or hydro-electric plants in a province. The federal government was even given the right to **veto** or stop a province from making a law.

16. The Fathers of Confederation gave the provinces powers which they thought were less important to the country as a whole—but very important to individual areas. These included education, hospitals, land, cities, and municipalities. Over the years, these provincial powers grew in importance and in cost. Health, education, highways, cities, and the natural resources under the land became very important. The provinces demanded more power and more tax money from the federal government to make and carry out laws in these areas. Today, many provincial governments want a new constitution which will give them even more powers.



## FEDERALISM





FEDERAL POWERS

### The Federal Government

17. Ottawa is the capital of Canada and the headquarters of the federal government. The federal government includes the House of Commons, the Prime Minister and Cabinet, the Senate, the Queen and Governor-General, civil servants, courts and judges. Make a list of the powers and responsibilities of the federal government from the sketch.

#### Parliament

18. The power to make federal laws for Canada is shared. The House of Commons, the Senate, and the Queen or her representative must agree before something can become a law. Together they are called the federal Parliament, which is in Ottawa.

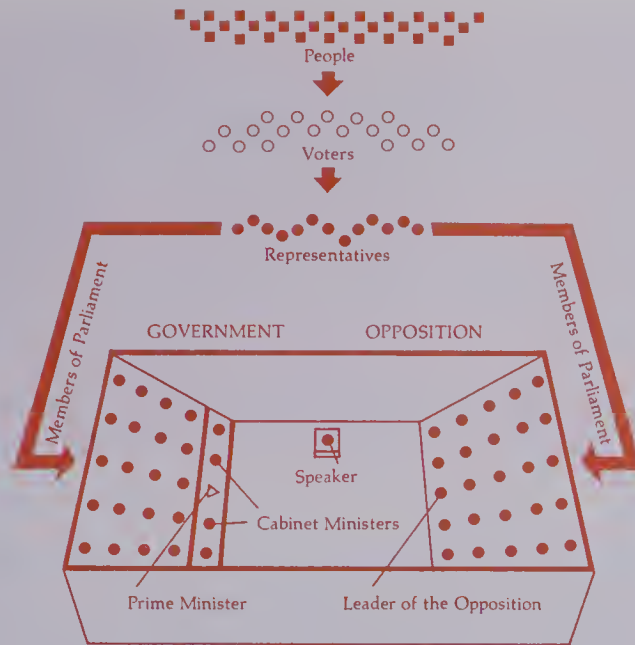
#### The House of Commons

19. The voters send their elected representatives to sit in the House of Commons and make laws. Each Member of Parliament (MP) represents one **riding** or area of Canada. There are 282 ridings in Canada and, therefore, 282 MPs elected to the House of Commons from all parts of Canada.

20. The MPs suggest new laws called **bills**. Each bill is **debated** or discussed and then the MPs vote for, or against, the bill. A **majority**, or more than half, of the MPs present, must vote in favour of the bill before it can be passed. If a majority vote against the bill, it is defeated. A bill must be discussed and passed three times in the House of Commons. This gives individuals or groups a chance to suggest changes in a bill to the MPs. A bill must also pass the Senate and be signed by the Governor-General before it becomes a federal law.

Hon. Edward Schreyer and his wife, Lily, at the Governor-General installation ceremonies, Ottawa





21. Most MPs in the House of Commons belong to a political party—Liberal, Progressive Conservative, New Democratic, or Social Credit. Usually the party with the most MPs becomes the government party. The leader of the party with the most MPs becomes the Prime Minister (P.M.) It is the responsibility of the P.M. to select about twenty-five to thirty MPs from the government party to lead the different government departments such as Transport, Energy, Defence, Health and Welfare. These MPs are called Cabinet Ministers. The Prime Minister tries to select Cabinet Ministers from every province, both sexes, and different religions and language groups. The Prime Minister and the Cabinet Ministers are responsible to all the MPs in the House of Commons for the way in which they run the government.

22. MPs from other political parties sit on the opposite side of the House of Commons from the government party. They are called the opposition parties. The leader of the second largest party in the House of Commons is called the Leader of the Opposition. The Leader of the Opposition hopes to impress the voters, elect the most MPs in the next election, and become the next Prime Minister. The opposition MPs ask questions of the Prime Minister and Cabinet Ministers during Question Period in the House of Commons. They also criticize the government party's ideas and actions. Most bills in the House of Commons are introduced by Cabinet Ministers.

23. When the government party has a minority, or less than half, of the MPs in the House of Commons, it is called a **minority government**. Such a government must listen to the opposition parties. If the government party does not listen, the opposition parties may join together, out-vote the government MPs, and defeat the bill. This is called a **vote of non-confidence**. P.M. Joe Clark and the minority PC government were defeated in this way on December 13, 1979, and a new election was held.

1979 FEDERAL ELECTION	
Government Party	Opposition Parties
136 Progressive Conservative MPs	114 Liberal MPs
	26 NDPs
	6 Social Credit MPs
Total: 136 MPs    146 MPs	



## DEFEAT OF P.M. CLARK IN THE HOUSE OF COMMONS

(Vote of Non-Confidence)

	NAYS (For the Gov't)	YEAS (Against the Gov't)	Not Voting
Progressive Conservative	133		3
Liberal		112	2
New Democratic		27	
Social Credit			5
Totals	133	139	10

### 1980 FEDERAL ELECTION

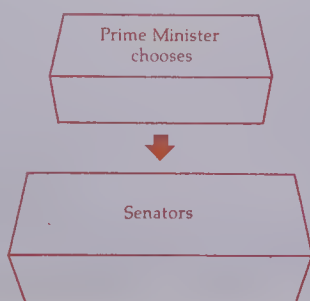
Government Party	Opposition Parties
146 Liberal MPs	103 Progressive Conservative MPs 32 NDP MPs
Total 146 MPs	135 MPs

24. When the Prime Minister and the government party have a majority of the MPs in the House of Commons, they do not have to worry as much about the opposition parties. Pierre Trudeau and the Liberals elected a majority of the MPs to the House of Commons in the February 18, 1980 federal election. Prime Minister Trudeau and the Liberal government did not have to worry about being defeated in the same way as Joe Clark and the Progressive Conservatives did. Prime Minister Trudeau had a majority government. As long as all the Liberals voted together, they were able to pass all their bills. This gave the Liberal government a great advantage in the House of Commons.

### The Senate

25. The Senate helps to make federal laws. There are 104 Senators in the Senate. These men and women debate bills and they must vote on each bill three times. Some new bills are introduced by Senators but most of the bills that they discuss are sent to them from the House of Commons. Senators frequently improve the wording of bills which have been rushed through the House of Commons. This sometimes protects us from poor laws. All bills to spend money must be introduced in the House of Commons first. The House of Commons is the most important and powerful part of Parliament because it is elected by the people.

26. Senators are not elected by the people. The Fathers of Confederation in 1867 were suspicious of democracy. They decided that only men over thirty years of age and worth at least \$4000 could be appointed to the Senate. After 1930, women could be appointed to the Senate but the age and property requirements still remain.



27. Senators are selected by the Prime Minister and appointed by the Governor-General. They are supposed to represent their region and province in the federal government at Ottawa. However, the Prime Minister usually selects loyal members of the same political party to be Senators. Between 1935 and 1980, the Liberals have been in power for about thirty-nine years and the

Progressive Conservatives have been in power for about six years. There are more Liberal senators than PC senators.

28. The Prime Minister also appoints at least one Senator as a Cabinet Minister. This Senator speaks and answers questions on behalf of the Cabinet in the Senate. However, if the government party did not elect any MPs from a province, the Prime Minister usually appoints a Senator from that province to the Cabinet. Joe Clark appointed two Quebec Senators as Cabinet Ministers in 1979. Pierre Trudeau appointed three Senators from British Columbia, Alberta, and Saskatchewan as Cabinet Ministers in 1980 for the same reason.

29. Many people want to see changes in the Senate. Some people would like to see the Senate abolished. Others want the Senators to be selected by Premiers or the provincial legislative assemblies. Some people want Senators to be elected by the voters during provincial or federal elections. Canadians are discussing the Senate as they try to create a new constitution.

### The Monarchy

30. Queen Elizabeth II is the Queen of Canada and the head of the Canadian government. The Queen represents Canada's long and close ties with Great Britain over several hundred years. Elizabeth II is also the Queen of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and the head of the British Commonwealth of Nations. The Queen inherited her crown from her father, King George VI, when he died in 1952. She will be followed by her eldest son, Prince Charles. Hundreds of years ago, strong monarchs like William I (1066) and Elizabeth I (1558) had enormous power. However, after King Charles I was beheaded by Parliament's armies in 1649, the power of the monarch gradually decreased. Power to raise taxes and to make war shifted to the elected representatives of the people in the House of Commons. Today, the monarch provides colour and ceremony in her public appearances.

31. Queen Elizabeth II lives in Great Britain and visits Canada occasionally. She appoints the Governor-General to represent her in Canada. The Prime Minister selects the Governor-General. Edward Schreyer was appointed Governor-General of Canada in 1979. The Governor-General must sign bills passed by the House of Commons and the Senate. This makes the bill a law which must be followed by all Canadians. The rest of the time, the Governor-General tours Canada, makes public speeches, opens new buildings, entertains foreign leaders, and serves as the ceremonial head of the government. In all important matters, however, the Governor-General must follow the advice of the Prime Minister. The P.M. is the most powerful person in Canada because the P.M. has the support of the majority of the people's elected representatives in the House of Commons.

### 1980 PARTY STANDINGS IN THE SENATE

Liberal	71
Progressive Conservative	27
Social Credit	1
Independent	3
Vacant	2
<b>Total</b>	<b>104</b>

### 1980 SEATS IN THE SENATE BY PROVINCE AND REGION

#### Provinces

Newfoundland	6
Prince Edward Island	4
Nova Scotia	10
New Brunswick	10
Quebec	24
Ontario	24
Manitoba	6
Saskatchewan	6
Alberta	6
British Columbia	6
Yukon	1
North West Territories	1
<b>Total</b>	<b>104</b>



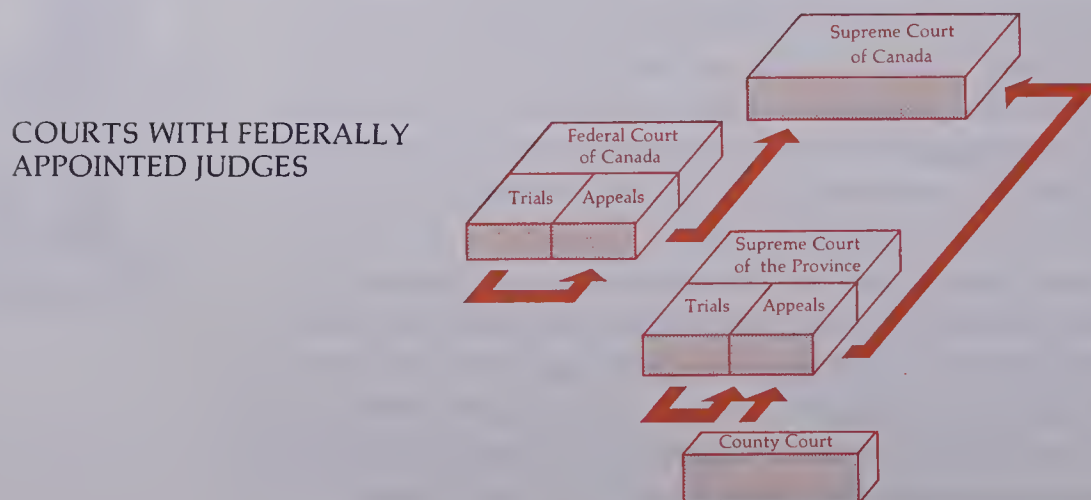


## Federal Civil Servants and Judges

32. The Prime Minister and the Cabinet Ministers are responsible for carrying out and enforcing the laws passed by Parliament. However, the Minister of National Revenue cannot handle all the income tax returns by himself. The Minister of Defence cannot inspect all the people in the Canadian Armed Forces and the Minister of Transport cannot inspect every aeroplane and train. Thousands of civil servants work full-time for the federal government to administer and enforce thousands of federal laws. Civil servants are hired because of their abilities. Sometimes they must write examinations to secure their jobs. They report to their superiors and then these civil servants report to the Cabinet Minister in charge of their department.

33. Why are there so many federal civil servants? In 1867, there were 12 government departments and 330 civil servants. In 1974, there were 27 government departments with 333 000 civil servants. In 1867, Canadians did not have old age pensions, unemployment insurance, family allowances, income tax, airports, films, atomic power plants, or communications satellites. As Canadians demanded more services, the government passed more laws and hired more civil servants to carry out these laws. Canadians frequently complain about the size, cost, slowness, and red tape or paper work of the government. Rarely do they volunteer to do without the services provided by these civil servants.

34. The federal Cabinet selects the judges for the county courts, for the provincial Supreme Courts, for the federal court of Canada, and for the Supreme Court of Canada. The Prime Minister has the final say in selecting these judges and the Governor-General appoints the judges to their positions. Although judges are appointed and paid by the government, they are different from civil servants. Judges hold their jobs without fear of pressures or threats from politicians. Judges cannot be removed from their jobs unless they act irresponsibly. They keep out of politics after their appointments. This is important because



judges must be very fair in hearing charges made by the government against citizens. Citizens must believe that judges will treat them fairly and honestly. Some people think that powerful officials like judges should be elected to their position. However, other people argue that judges who are running for re-election would be tempted to make only popular decisions. In Canada, we try to keep judges free from the pressures and demands of both the political parties and the voters.

35. The federal government also builds and runs the penitentiaries. People sentenced to two or more years in prison spend their time in federal penitentiaries.

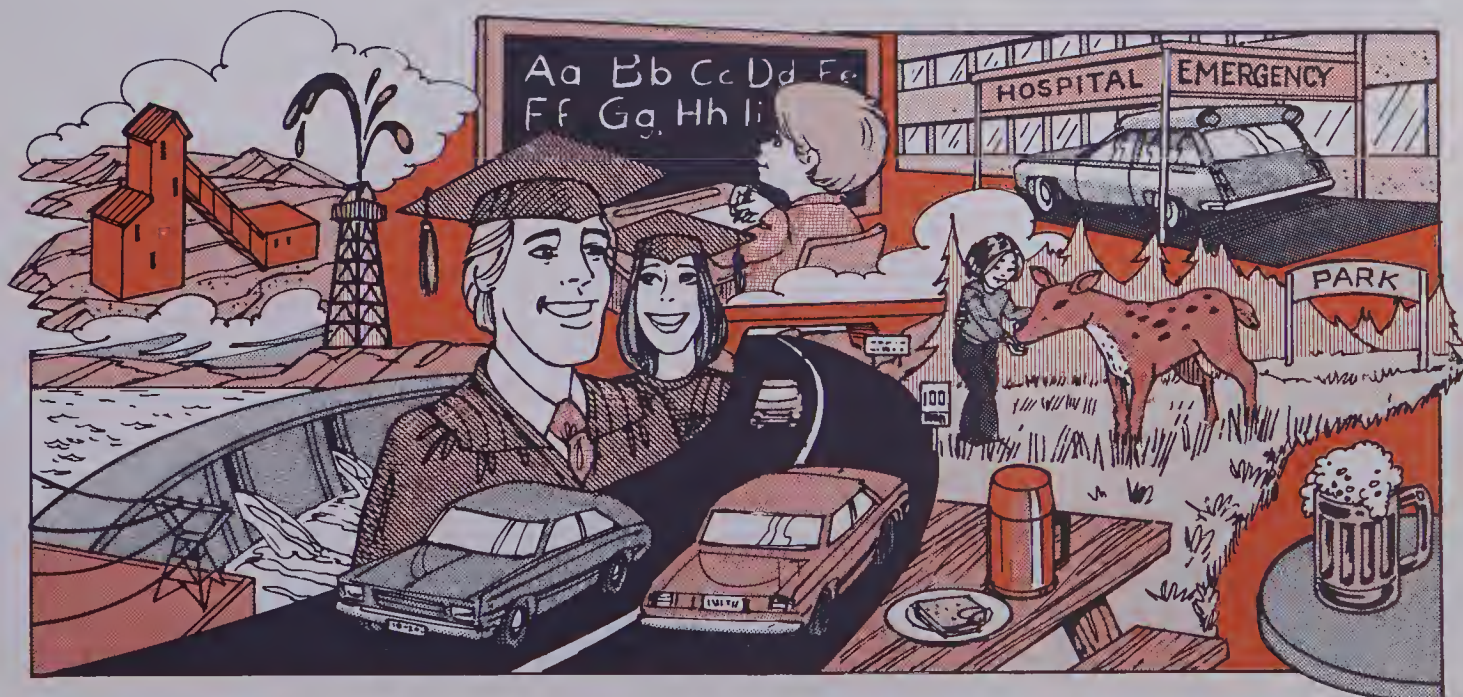
### Provincial Government

36. There are ten provinces in Canada. Each province has a provincial government in the capital city of that province. Each provincial government has an elected assembly, Premier and Cabinet, Lieutenant-Governor, civil servants, judges and courts. Make a list of the powers and responsibilities of the provincial governments from the sketch. The Yukon and the North West Territories are not provinces. They are territories under the control of the federal government. They have territorial councils which include some representatives elected by the residents and some councillors appointed by the federal government.

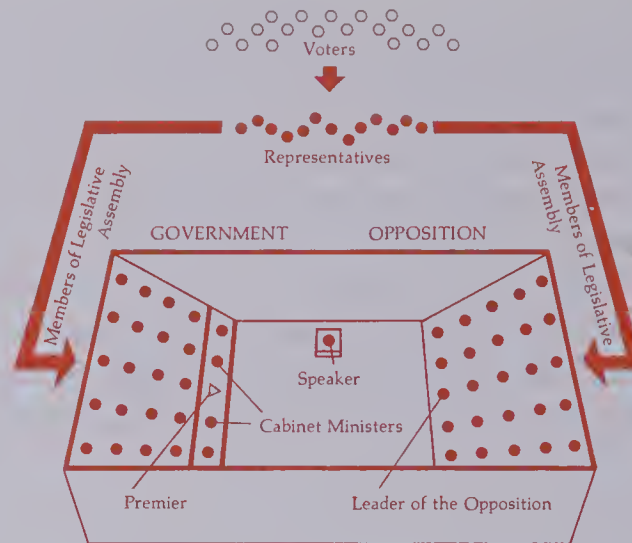
### The Legislative Assembly

37. The voters in provincial elections elect representatives to sit in the Legislative Assembly who will make laws just for that province. Each province decides how many Members of the Legislative Assembly (MLAs) they will have. The number of MLAs is different in each province. Provinces with larger populations usually have more ridings and so elect more MLAs.

### PROVINCIAL POWERS







## PASSAGE OF A BILL INTO LAW

### House of Commons

#### First Reading

- a bill is introduced by a Cabinet Minister or private member (MP)
- first vote is taken

#### Second Reading

- the bill is introduced again and is debated in general
- second vote is taken

#### Committee Stage

- the bill is usually sent to:
  - (a) Select Committee
  - (b) Standing Committee
  - (c) or Committee of the Whole House.
- the bill is studied in detail and changes (amendments) are usually made here; each section may be voted on separately

#### Third Reading

- the bill is briefly debated
- third vote is taken

### Senate

A bill goes through three readings and committees as in the House of Commons

#### Governor-General

Signs the bill to make it law

#### Provincial Bills

At the provincial level, a bill passes through three readings and committees as in the House of Commons. There is no Senate in the provinces. The Lieutenant-Governor signs provincial bills into law.

38. The MLAs suggest new laws for the province and these are called bills. Each bill is debated in the Legislative Assembly. A bill must receive the votes of a majority of the MLAs present to be passed. If a bill passes three times, it is sent to the Lieutenant-Governor who signs the bill to make it a provincial law.

39. Most MLAs in the Legislative Assembly belong to a political party—Progressive Conservative, Liberal, New Democratic, Social Credit, or Parti Québécois. Usually, the party with the most MLAs becomes the provincial government party. The leader of this party becomes the Premier of the province. The Premier selects a number of MLAs from his party to head the different departments of the provincial governments such as Education, Health, Consumer Affairs, Tourism, and Highways. These MLAs are called Cabinet Ministers. The Premier and the Cabinet Ministers are responsible to all the MLAs in the Legislative Assembly for the way in which they run the provincial government.

40. MLAs from other political parties sit on the opposite side of the Legislative Assembly from the government party. They are called the opposition parties. The leader of the second largest party

### NUMBER OF MLAs ELECTED IN EACH PROVINCE

	MLAs	1976 Population
Newfoundland	52	541 000
Prince Edward Island	32	122 000
Nova Scotia	52	846 700
New Brunswick	58	683 200
Quebec	110	6 176 000
Ontario	125	8 264 475
Manitoba	57	1 032 400
Saskatchewan	61	932 000
Alberta	79	1 826 000
British Columbia	57	2 523 400

in the Legislative Assembly is called the Leader of the Opposition. Leaders of the Opposition hope that their party will win the next provincial election. Then the Leader of the Opposition can become Premier of the province. The Leader of the Opposition and the opposition MLAs ask questions of the Premier and the Cabinet Ministers. They criticize and try to change bills brought to the Legislative Assembly by the government party. When the government party has a majority of the MLAs, it can easily pass its bills into law. Premier Peter Lougheed and the Progressive Conservatives have had large majorities in the Legislative Assembly of Alberta. However, when the government party has a minority of the MLAs, it must try to work with the opposition parties. Premier William Davis of Ontario has led two minority governments in 1975 and 1977. A minority government always makes the job of a Premier more difficult. But, in any situation, the Legislative Assembly is the most powerful part of the provincial government.

### The Monarchy

41. The Queen and the Governor-General are represented in each province by a Lieutenant-Governor. The Prime Minister of Canada selects a Lieutenant-Governor and the Governor-General makes the appointment. The Lieutenant-Governor has the power to veto or refuse to sign provincial bills into law on the orders of the Prime Minister. However, the federal government uses this power rarely. Generally, the Lieutenant-Governor accepts the advice of the Premier and signs all the bills that have been passed in the Legislative Assembly. This makes the bills provincial laws. Most of the Lieutenant-Governor's time is spent providing colour and dignity to public events. The Premier is the most powerful person in the provincial government because the Premier has the support of the people's elected representatives in the provincial Legislative Assembly.

### Provincial Civil Servants and Judges

42. The provincial Premier and Cabinet Ministers are responsible for carrying out and enforcing laws passed by the Legislative Assembly. However, the Minister of Education cannot read and approve all the new school books that have been written in any one year. The Minister of the Environment cannot test the pollution levels in every river and lake in the province. Thousands of civil servants work for provincial government departments administering and enforcing provincial laws.

43. The Premier of a province selects provincial court judges and the Lieutenant-Governor appoints them. Once the judges are appointed, they keep out of politics. The provincial governments build and operate the criminal and civil courtrooms. They also operate the provincial jails which hold people who are sentenced to under two years in prison.



### COURTS WITH PROVINCIALY APPOINTED JUDGES

PROVINCIAL COURT  
Criminal Division

PROVINCIAL COURT  
Family Division

SMALL CLAIMS OR  
DIVISION COURT

CORONER'S COURT OR  
INQUEST

SURROGATE COURT



## Municipal Government

44. The provincial governments have the power to set up municipal governments in local communities. The municipal governments look after local matters. The headquarters of the municipal government is found in the city, town, or community hall. Look at the sketch and list the responsibilities of most municipal governments.

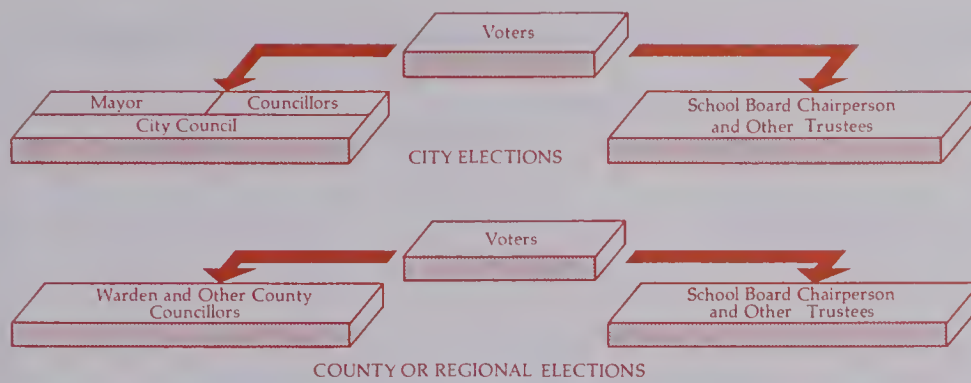
45. The provinces organize municipal governments in many different ways. They may be villages, towns, cities, townships, counties, districts, or regions.

46. In towns and cities, the voters are divided into areas called wards. The voters in each ward elect one or two councillors or aldermen to sit on city council. The councillors make laws for the city called **by-laws**. All the voters in a city also vote for a mayor to lead the city council. The mayor is responsible for carrying out the by-laws passed by the city council. These by-laws cover parks, pets, swimming pools, bus tickets, noise levels, land use, garbage collection, snow removal, and many other local concerns. The mayor and council hire many civil servants to provide these services. Municipal governments have to raise money to pay for these services. They sell licences and tickets and charge rates for water and hydro services. Municipalities also tax the property of homeowners and businesses.

47. County and regional governments do not have to provide as many services to their residents. The voters in these communities elect township, county, or regional councillors. The councillors pass by-laws for the municipality. One councillor is elected by the councillors to act as the Warden of County Council.

### MUNICIPAL POWERS





48. Education is a power that the provinces share with their municipalities. Education is kept separate from other local matters. The voters elect trustees to sit on the local Board of Education. The trustees are elected from the wards or divisions in the municipality. The trustees elect one of their members to serve as Chairperson. The trustees set school policies on safety, field trips, hours, holidays, and discipline, based on provincial rules. The Boards of Education receive money from the provincial government and taxes from local property owners. This money is used to buy books, sporting equipment, and machines, and to pay the salaries of the teachers and staff. Education is the most expensive service provided by municipal government. This shows the high value that Canadians place on education.

## The Citizen and Politics

### Voting

49. A person who is a Canadian citizen and who is at least eighteen years old is **eligible** (has the right) to vote in Canadian elections. However, Canadians in mental hospitals or jails cannot vote. A **citizen** has certain rights and responsibilities in Canada. A person who is born in Canada becomes a citizen automatically, but an immigrant who comes to Canada will have to wait three years before being able to apply for Canadian citizenship. They cannot vote in Canadian elections until they become Canadian citizens. The right to vote in elections is also a responsibility. If no one bothered to vote, Canada would not be a democracy for long and Canadians would lose control over their governments.

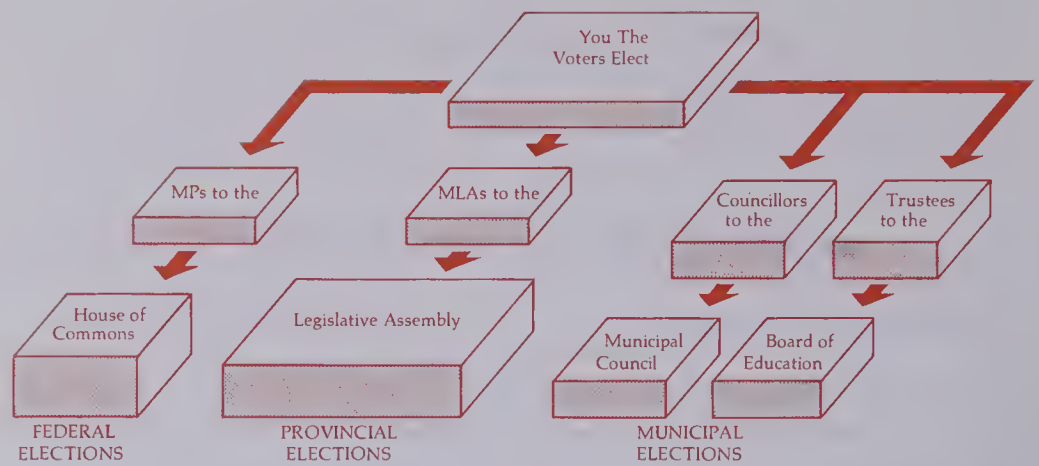
### Representation by Population

50. In federal elections, there are 282 ridings and each riding elects one Member of Parliament. To guarantee **representation by population**, each riding has approximately the same number of voters, about 85 000. Since each riding must have the same number of voters, ridings vary in size, according to the number of people living in an area.

### Different Elections in Canada

51. Many people are confused about elections in Canada. Sometimes, several elections are held in a short period of time for





different **candidates**. A candidate is a person who is trying to be elected to a certain position. Canadians are expected to vote in three separate elections because there are three levels of government in Canada. Canadians are expected to vote for the candidates they prefer at the federal, provincial, and municipal levels of government. In a federal election, Canadian citizens vote for the candidates they want to elect as Members of Parliament. In a provincial election, the voters in the province elect the Members of the Legislative Assembly. Voters are also expected to elect aldermen or councillors to their municipal government. Citizens might end up voting in three different elections in a given year.

### The Way People Vote

52. Canadians vote in secret to make sure that no one tries to influence the way they vote. On voting day, the voters go to a place called a polling station. When they arrive at the polling station, their names are crossed off the voters' list which is a list of the eligible voters. The voters are then handed a ballot which lists the names of the candidates in alphabetical order. Each voter takes the ballot into a polling booth and secretly places an "X" beside the name of one candidate—the one the voter wants elected. The voter then folds the ballot and hands it to the Deputy Returning Officer who is in charge of the polling station.

53. The ballot is then placed in the ballot box. This is called voting by secret ballot. When the polling station closes at the end of the day, the ballot box is opened and the votes are counted. The results from all the polling stations in a riding are added together. The candidate who receives the most votes in the riding wins the election.

### Running for Election

#### Joining A Political Party

54. If Canadian citizens want to become involved in politics, they will usually join a political party. A person pays a small fee and receives a membership card from the political party. The influence





ELECTORAL MAP OF  
WESTERN CANADA BEFORE  
1979 ELECTION



SEATS IN THE HOUSE OF  
COMMONS BY PROVINCE AND  
TERRITORY



of one person is very small in a country as large as Canada. An individual can hardly hope to directly influence such a large number of citizens. Individuals often join organizations that share their opinions on certain matters. The influence of many people is greater than that of one. An individual joins the political party which shares that person's opinions on most issues. Members of a political party work hard to help their party win elections. If their party is elected, their opinions may be made into laws.

55. Membership in a political party allows a person to vote at a nomination meeting where that party's candidate is chosen for a particular riding. Only members of the political party can take part in this vote. A major federal political party will hold 282 nomination meetings to choose its candidates in each of the 282 ridings. There are three major political parties in Canada and most ridings have a candidate from each party. This means that at least three candidates' names will appear on the ballot.

56. It is very important for voters to find out all they can about the candidates before any election. Once candidates are elected, they will help to make laws that everyone must obey. During an election campaign, candidates try to persuade voters to vote for them by making speeches and by going to voters' homes to explain what they think about certain issues. Voters sometimes vote for a candidate because of the person's appearance, qualifications, speaking ability, or background. Sometimes, they vote for a candidate because they like that candidate's party or party leader.

### The Elections of the Prime Minister and Premiers

57. The political party that manages to elect the greatest number of its candidates usually forms the government. The leader of the party that wins the federal election becomes the Prime Minister of the country. Anyone may become the Prime Minister of Canada—if three elections are won. A person must first win the leadership of a political party, then the party must elect the most MPs, and, finally, that person must be elected as an MP to the House of Commons.

58. Similarly, in provincial elections, the party that elects the most candidates wins the election and becomes the government. The leader of that party will become the Premier of the province. In order to become a provincial Premier, a person must also win three elections: election as leader of a political party, election as an MLA, and the party must elect the greatest number of representatives to the Legislative Assembly.

59. A leadership convention is a three or four day meeting held to choose the leader of a political party. Before it takes place, the party members in each riding meet to elect five or six delegates to attend the leadership convention. In the case of a federal leadership convention, thousands of party delegates from all over

*Liberal convention, 1968*



the country attend the meeting. After listening to the speeches of the candidates for the job of party leader, the delegates vote for the person of their choice. The delegates try to choose someone who will be strong as a leader and as a Prime Minister. Usually that person has been a member of the political party for many years and has worked hard for the party. Most leaders have had previous experience as elected representatives. The leader must be a good speaker, both in person and on television.

60. When a federal or a provincial election takes place, the party leaders use television, radio, and the newspapers to campaign for their party and its policies. Since many voters vote for the candidate of a political party because they like the party leader, it is important for political parties to have leaders who are supported by a large number of Canadians.

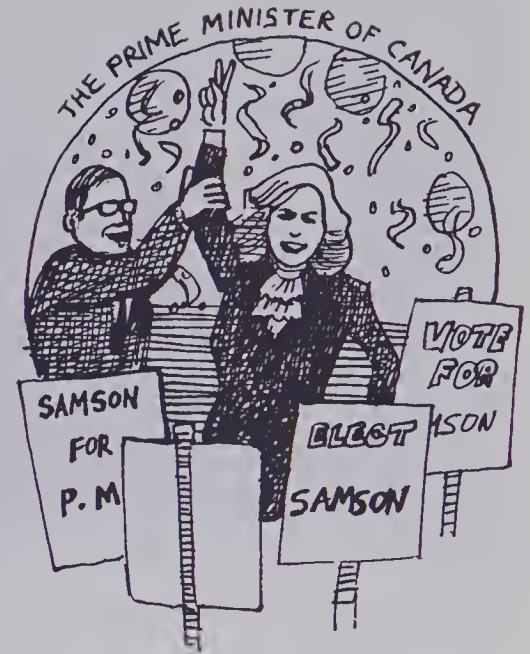
### What Political Parties Are In Canada?

61. The three major political parties in Canada, the Liberal Party, the Progressive Conservative Party, and the New Democratic Party, agree on certain things. For example, they agree that violence should not be used to gain changes and that changes should only be made if they have the support of the people. But the three parties attract different members because they disagree on some issues.

62. The three major parties have candidates in federal elections and in provincial elections. But the parties have different leaders and candidates at each level of government. For example, in 1980, Ed Broadbent was the federal leader of the NDP and an MP in the House of Commons, while Allan Blakeney was the provincial leader of the NDP and an MLA in the Legislative Assembly in Saskatchewan. The two oldest parties in Canada are the Liberal and Progressive Conservative Parties. The differences between these parties go back to the time Canada became a country in 1867.

### The Liberal Party

63. The first leader of the Liberal Party was Alexander Mackenzie and he was Prime Minister of Canada from 1873 to 1878. The Liberal Party favoured closer relations with the U.S.A. It wanted to increase trade between Canada and the U.S.A. by lowering tariffs on goods traded between the two countries. The Liberals hoped that if there were more trade, there would be more jobs for the Canadian people. The next Liberal leader who became Prime Minister was Wilfrid Laurier from the province of Quebec. He was Prime Minister from 1896 to 1911. He also supported the idea of lower tariffs. He thought that Canada should develop on its own and not depend so much on Britain. Wilfrid Laurier opposed the conscription of Canadian men during World War I and supported French Canada's opposition to conscription.







*P.M. Trudeau and his 1980 Cabinet*

William Lyon Mackenzie King was the next Liberal Prime Minister of Canada and he was Prime Minister for longer than anyone else. He served as Prime Minister for 22 years between 1921 and 1948. Louis St. Laurent and then Lester B. Pearson followed King as Liberal Prime Ministers. In 1968, Pierre Trudeau succeeded L.B. Pearson as leader of the Liberal Party and Prime Minister of Canada. Trudeau served as Prime Minister from 1968 to 1979 and from 1980 to 198-.

64. The Liberal Party receives limited support in the western part of Canada. Most of their support comes from the provinces of Ontario and Quebec. In the election of 1980, the Liberals elected 74 of the 75 MPs from Quebec.

### **The Progressive Conservative Party**

65. The first Prime Minister of Canada was John A. Macdonald and he was also leader of the Conservative Party. He was Prime Minister from 1867 to 1873 and from 1878 until he died in 1891. At first, the Conservatives received strong support in both English and French Canada. However, they lost support in Quebec when they allowed Louis Riel, a French Roman Catholic Métis, to be executed in 1885. The Conservatives favoured high tariffs on goods coming into Canada to protect Canadian businesses from cheaper foreign goods. They also wanted closer ties to Britain than the Liberals. Robert Borden defeated Wilfrid Laurier in the election of 1911 and remained Prime Minister until 1920. Borden led Canada through World War I but the Conservatives lost more support in Quebec when they introduced conscription in 1917. In 1930, another Conservative leader, R.B. Bennett defeated W.L. Mackenzie King and became Prime Minister. Bennett was defeated in 1935 because he was not able to solve the problems created in Canada by the Great Depression. The Conservatives did not manage to elect another Prime Minister until 1957 when John G. Diefenbaker came to power. In

1958, Diefenbaker and his Progressive Conservatives swept to a great victory, winning 208 of the 265 seats in the House of Commons. After the defeat of the Progressive Conservatives in 1963, they did not win a federal election until 1979 when Joe Clark was elected Prime Minister.

66. The Progressive Conservatives receive little support in Quebec but strong support in the West. The Maritimes and Ontario divide their support between the Liberals and the Progressive Conservatives.

### The New Democratic Party

67. The Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (CCF) was formed in 1932 during the Great Depression. There was a great deal of unemployment and the people who created this new party were looking for new ways to solve Canada's problems. They wanted to increase pensions for older people, have unemployment insurance for workers, and give more benefits to poor people. The CCF wanted the government to take over the ownership of large companies and put higher taxes on the rich. The first leader of the CCF was J.S. Woodsworth.

68. The CCF was not able to gain strong support from many working people in Canada. However, many of its ideas have been taken up by the Liberal and Progressive Conservative Parties. In 1961, the CCF joined with the large unions to create a new political party called the New Democratic Party (NDP). The first party leader was Tommy Douglas. The NDP has never received the same support that Canadian voters have given to the Liberal and Progressive Conservative Parties. The NDP is weak in Quebec and the Maritimes, but does have some support in Ontario. The NDP has strong support in the West. Ed Broadbent was elected leader of the federal NDP in 1975.

### Other Parties

69. There are some smaller political parties in Canada but none of them elected MPs to the House of Commons in the 1980 federal election. These parties include the Social Credit Party, the Libertarian Party, the Rhinoceros Party, and the Communist Party. Some small parties also run candidates in provincial elections. The Social Credit Party formed the provincial government in British Columbia under the leadership of Bill Bennett and the Parti Québécois formed the government in Quebec under the leadership of René Lévesque.

### The Citizen and the Government

70. There are more than 23 000 000 Canadians. They share the second largest country in the world. They have three levels of government with thousands of politicians and hundreds of



thousands of civil servants to serve them. If you look up "government" in your telephone directory, you will see many departments and offices listed. Because the governments are so large, it is sometimes very difficult for individual citizens to find information. Letters and phone calls are transferred from one civil servant to another. Who can answer your questions? Some citizens just give up. How can a citizen deal with the governments?

### Individual Action

71. There are a number of things that a citizen can do when dealing with the government. Citizens should try a direct approach first. If this fails, they may freely turn to their elected representatives, reporters, consumer groups, the Ombudsman, or the Human Rights Commissioner. If citizens have very serious problems, they frequently hire a lawyer to help them.

72. The direct approach is simple. Decide which level of government is responsible for your problem—federal, provincial, or municipal. If you need a passport, it helps to know that the federal government is responsible for external affairs and immigration. If you want to apply for a drivers' licence, it helps to know that the provinces are responsible for highways and licences. If you want to apply for a job as a swimming pool lifeguard, it helps to know that parks and recreation are mainly municipal responsibilities. Check the telephone book or Canadian directories in your local library for the telephone numbers and addresses of the different government departments.

73. If you are not in a hurry, it is better to ask your questions in a letter. The civil servants will answer in writing. If the direct approach fails, you can turn to some other people who will help you.

74. Elected representatives are usually eager to help the voters who live in their area. Phone or write your MP, MLA, Councillor, or Trustee. Again, it is important to know with which level of government you are dealing. The elected representatives know how the government system works. They can contact a senior civil servant in the department, ask questions, and speed up the answers. Politicians can also ask questions in public in the House of Commons, Legislative Assembly, or council meeting. One of the advantages of living in a democratic country is that citizens have freedom of speech. They can ask questions freely and complain about the government without fear. The elected representatives also have freedom of speech and they may question and criticize the government leaders. This will put pressure on the leaders and civil servants to take some action. Remember, the politicians are your elected representatives.

75. Citizens may also turn to the news media. Many people write letters to newspaper editors and columnists or to radio and

television stations. Freedom of the press in a democracy allows the newspaper, radio, and television reporters to ask questions and criticize the governments. Why did the police arrest this citizen? Why did these citizens lose their pensions? Why were these citizens evicted from their homes? Why was this citizen not hired? Government leaders and civil servants usually answer reporters' questions quickly and politely. Critical news stories may turn the public against the government department or leader.

76. In addition, some organizations in society handle consumers' complaints. The Consumers' Association of Canada and the Automobile Protection Association investigate consumer complaints about poor or dangerous products. For example, if a person has a car with bad brakes, the person may want help in forcing the manufacturer to make repairs or pay for damages. These associations also refer problems to the right government departments, such as the Department of Consumer and Corporate Affairs, for action.

77. Some provincial governments have appointed a special civil servant to handle citizens' complaints. This person is called the **Ombudsman**. Citizens may write to the Ombudsman about any difficulties which they have with the provincial government. The Ombudsman investigates the complaints and may order the department to correct the problem. There is no Ombudsman for the federal or municipal governments.

78. Citizens may also take action if they think that they have been discriminated against. **Discrimination** means that a person is not treated fairly because of race, national origin, colour, religion, or sex. Discrimination is illegal under the Canadian Bill of Rights and the provincial Human Rights Codes. The federal and provincial governments have appointed Human Rights Commissions to investigate charges of discrimination. All Canadians have the right to be treated equally and fairly. Canadians found guilty of discriminating against another person, will be required to change their policy and pay for any damages.

### Pressure Groups

79. Individual citizens often feel helpless when they have a problem with the government. Citizens have a better chance of protecting their rights or winning changes in the law if they work together. In a democracy, citizens have freedom of association which allows them to join together and work peacefully for legal changes in the laws or the government. Organized groups of citizens working together for legal changes are called pressure groups. Women Against Rising Prices or WARP was organized by some women who were opposed to rising prices and inflation in the 1970's. Pressure groups do many things to gain attention and support. They hold public meetings, make speeches, print bumper stickers, wear buttons, and buy advertisements. Members of the



pressure group write letters and visit the government leaders and representatives. Sometimes, pressure groups win the support of the public and persuade the politicians to change the laws. On other occasions, they fail to win any changes. While groups of citizens have the right to state their demands, final power to change laws must remain with the elected representatives of the people.

### Demonstrations, Riots, and Terrorism

80. Citizens have the right to assemble or gather together. This is a very important freedom in a democracy. It allows people to express their support or opposition to a law or a government. Citizens may organize public meetings, marches, and demonstrations as long as they are legal and peaceful. If the citizens want to march through the streets, they may have to receive the permission of the municipal government or local police. When they have permission, the police will direct and control the traffic while the citizens parade through the streets.

81. Sometimes, peaceful demonstrations go out of control and violence breaks out. A sudden and unplanned use of violence by a group of citizens is called a riot. When this happens, a municipal government official such as the Mayor reads the Riot Act. This law requires all citizens to leave the streets immediately and allows the police to arrest any citizens who refuse to leave. A citizen found guilty of breaking the Riot Act may be sent to prison for life. In the past, some Canadians have rioted over religion, language, race, strikes, politics, and even hockey games. The Riot Act is there to protect the rights and property of all citizens from a mob of violent people.

82. A few people actually believe in the use of violence to force changes in the law or government. They may rob banks, throw bombs, hijack aeroplanes, kidnap people, or murder political leaders. People who do this are called terrorists. Terrorism is the very opposite of freedom and democracy. Terrorists hate their opponents; democrats respect and accept their opponents. Terrorists kill people who disagree with them; democrats debate with people who disagree with them. Terrorists use violence to change the government leaders; democrats hold elections to change their leaders.

83. Terrorists operate in all parts of the world. Terrorist bands have included the Black Panthers in the United States, the Irish Republican Army in Ireland and Britain, and the Red Brigade in Italy. Terrorists have also operated in Canada. The Front de Libération du Québec (FLQ) was organized in the 1960's. They wanted to see Quebec become an independent country separate from the rest of Canada. During the 1960's, the FLQ robbed banks, stole dynamite, and bombed postal boxes and public

buildings. A few people were killed. Then, in October, 1970, the FLQ kidnapped a British representative, James Cross, and a Quebec provincial Cabinet Minister, Pierre Laporte. Cross was later set free but Laporte was murdered. The FLQ believed that it should be able to kidnap and murder people to win an independent Quebec. Prime Minister Trudeau and the federal government fought back. They declared the War Measures Act, brought in the army, and threw many people in jail. Most Canadians were shocked by the violence and killing of the FLQ. They disliked both terrorism and the need to use the Canadian army to maintain law and order. They believe that laws should be changed in a fair and peaceful way.

### The Citizen and the Law

84. Criminal and civil law are the two main types of law in Canada. Criminal laws are made by the federal government in Ottawa and all people living in Canada must obey these laws. Civil laws are usually made by the provincial government.

#### Criminal Law

##### Crimes

85. All **crimes** in Canada are listed and explained in a book called the Criminal Code of Canada. Crimes are actions against the government. Each year, a new Criminal Code is brought out to keep Canadians informed about the changes in criminal laws which have been made by Parliament. The police and certain courts enforce criminal laws in Canada.

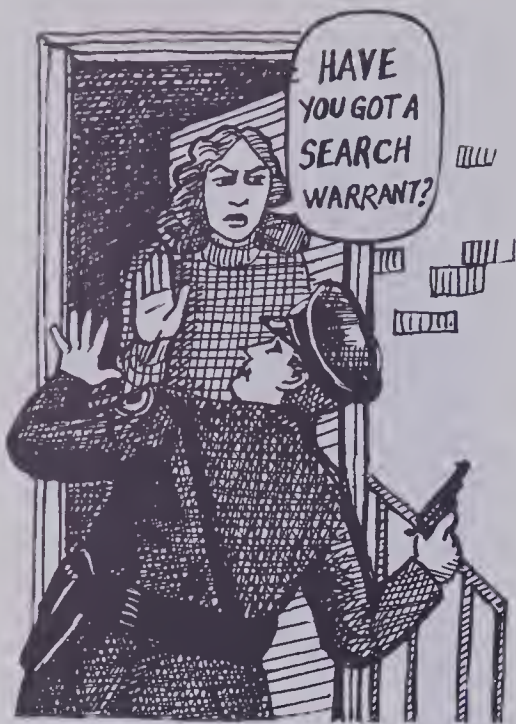
##### Search Warrants and Writs of Assistance

86. All Canadians should know their legal rights and responsibilities. Suppose the police knocked on your door and asked to search your house. Do you know what you should do to protect your rights? First, when the police knock on your door and say that they are going to make a search, you should ask for identification to make sure they are police officers. Then you should ask to see the search warrant. A search warrant must contain the name and address of the person living at that residence. It must also have the date of the search and must be signed by a judge. If you do not ask for a search warrant and you allow the police to search your home, you cannot do anything about it after the search is completed. If the police are chasing a suspected criminal and the suspect runs into your home to hide, the police can search your home without a warrant. A few members of the R.C.M.P. can enter your home without a search warrant. These R.C.M.P. officers are given Writs of Assistance which allow them to search anywhere at anytime without a judge's permission. A Writ of Assistance does not have the name



*James Cross, photographed by the FLQ to prove that he was still alive*





of the person whose home is being searched or the address or date of the search. To protect your personal freedom, you must check to see if the police officer at the door has a search warrant or a writ of assistance.

### An Arrest

87. If the police come to your door and accuse you of robbing a store, do you know your rights and responsibilities? If the police officers tell you to go with them, you should ask for identification and then ask if you are under **arrest**. An arrest means that you are under the control of the police officers and you must go with them to the police station. If you are not under arrest, you do not have to go. If the officer says that you are under arrest, you should ask the charge—what crime you are accused of committing. You should not resist a police officer.

### Lawyers and Courts

88. If police officers arrest you because they believe that you have committed a crime, you have the right to a lawyer. A lawyer is a person who is trained to help people with legal problems. Anything you say to a police officer can be used against you as evidence in a **court**. A court is a place where both sides in a case tell their stories and a fair decision is made by a judge or by a judge and **jury**. A jury is a group of citizens who hear the evidence of a case and make a decision—guilty or not guilty. Everyone is innocent until proved guilty in a trial.

### Arraignment and Bail

89. All people who are accused of committing a crime are **arraigned** (charged) in Provincial Court (in some provinces it is called Magistrate's Court). A person who is being held in jail has the right to apply for a **bail** hearing. The accused can ask to be released from jail until the time of arraignment in court and/or trial. If a person does not appear to be dangerous and does not have a long criminal record, that person might be released on a personal promise to appear in the court on the trial date. A criminal record is a list of the crimes that the person has committed in the past. If the person has a criminal record and is accused of committing a serious crime, that person may be made to pay a sum of money into the court before being allowed out on bail. This helps to make sure that the accused appears for the trial; failure to appear results in the loss of the bail money.

### The Verdict and the Sentence

90. Less serious crimes are tried by a Provincial Court judge. The judge hears the evidence and arrives at a decision called a **verdict**. If the verdict is "not guilty", the accused is released. If the

verdict is “guilty”, the accused will be sentenced. A sentence may be a punishment, an act of forgiveness, or a plan for rehabilitation. People with criminal records will usually receive a heavier sentence than those who have not committed crimes in the past.

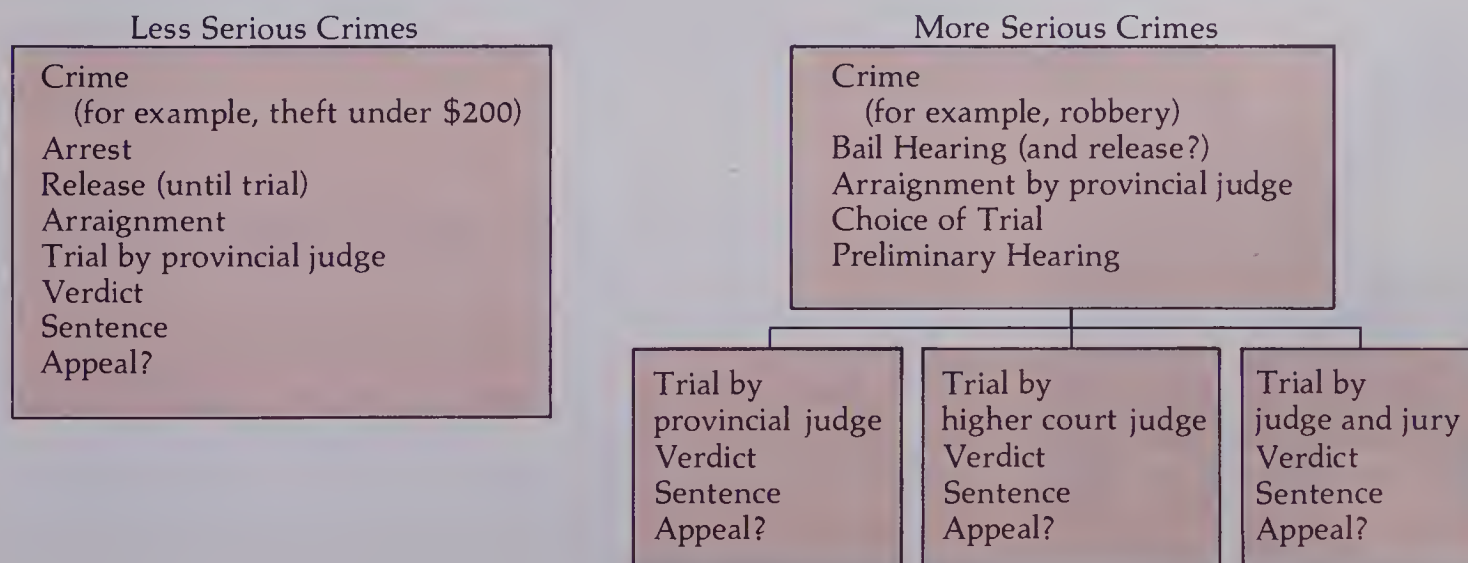
### The Preliminary Hearing

91. Robbery is a fairly serious crime because the person is accused of having a weapon when the theft was made. If you are accused of robbery, you will be arraigned in Provincial Court. Because robbery is a more serious crime, you are then given a choice of trial. You are asked if you wish to be tried by a higher (more important) criminal court. If you choose the higher court, you have the right to be tried by a judge alone or by a judge and jury. Most criminal juries have twelve jurors. If you decide to be tried by a higher court judge or a judge and jury, the provincial judge who is listening to your case will hold a **preliminary hearing**. A preliminary hearing is held to see if there is enough evidence to bring your case to trial in a higher court. It is very expensive to try someone in a higher court and the provincial judge wants to make sure that the taxpayers’ money is not wasted. The judge also wants to save the accused the embarrassment of a trial if there is not enough evidence. After listening to the evidence in a preliminary hearing, the provincial judge must decide if the case should be tried. If there is not enough evidence, the case will be dismissed and you are free to go. If the judge decides that there is enough evidence, a date will be set for your trial in a higher court.

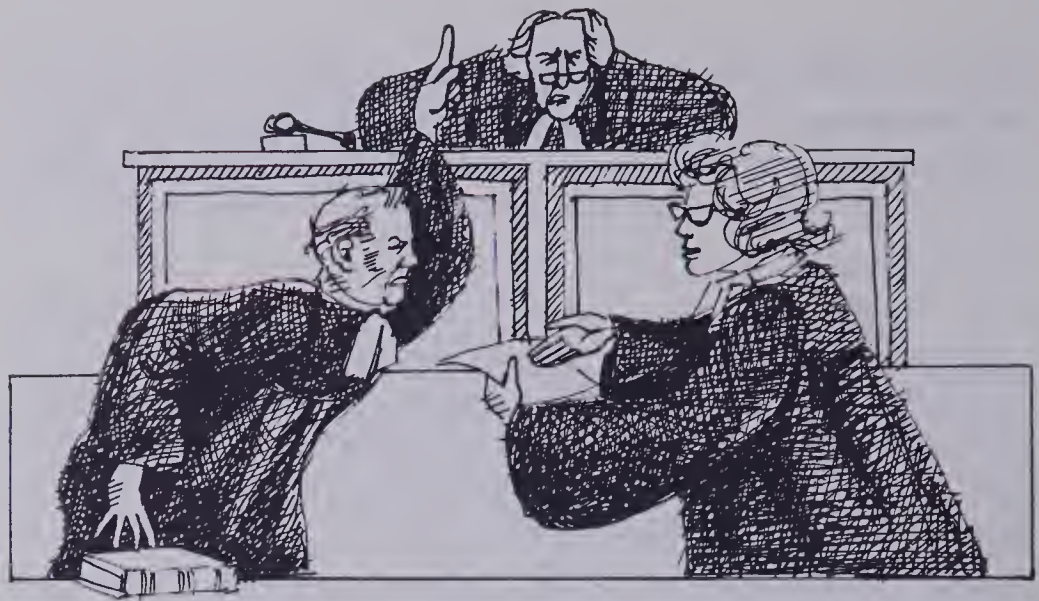
### Legal Aid and the Job of the Crown Attorney

92. When your trial begins, you will be represented by a lawyer. You are the defendant because you are defending yourself against the charge. Your lawyer is called the defence lawyer. If you cannot afford a lawyer, you can apply to **Legal Aid**. Legal Aid departments have been set up by most provincial governments to

### CRIMINAL PROCEDURES







provide lawyers for people who cannot afford them. The Crown Attorney is the lawyer hired by the government to prove that you are guilty. The Crown Attorney presents evidence to support the charge and calls witnesses to introduce this evidence. Witnesses must answer all the questions which they are asked in court by the Crown Attorney and by the defence lawyer. The defence lawyer may also call witnesses to support your side.

If all the jurors believe that you are guilty, then the verdict is "guilty". If they all believe that you are innocent, then you will be released.



93. The court that tries you will ask you for a plea—whether you are guilty or not guilty. If you have chosen to be tried by a judge and jury on the robbery charge and your plea is not guilty, the trial will begin. The judge and jury will listen to the evidence presented by the Crown Attorney and by the defence lawyer. Once all the evidence has been heard, the jury will leave the courtroom and will try to make a decision. All members of a criminal jury must agree on the verdict and must give a unanimous decision. However, if the jurors cannot agree on the verdict, there is a hung jury and no verdict is given. A new trial, with new jurors, will have to take place. If you are found guilty of robbery, the judge will give the sentence. If you have a long criminal record, you could receive the maximum punishment of life imprisonment.

94. After the trial, you can **appeal** the decision of the court to a higher court. You can ask a higher court to look over the evidence to see if a mistake has been made by the trial court. If the appeal court rejects your appeal, you might continue to appeal your case to the Supreme Court of Canada, the highest court. If the appeal courts decide that the guilty verdict and sentence were fair, you will have to serve your sentence in jail. If the jury found you innocent, the Crown Attorney could also appeal to the higher courts to review the verdict.

## Parole

95. Once you serve one third of your sentence in jail, you can usually apply for **parole** to be released from jail before you have served the full sentence. If your behaviour in jail has been good, you might be released on parole but you will have to report to a parole officer until your sentence is completed. The parole officer tries to help you find a job and checks to see that you are not getting into trouble. If you fail to report to your parole officer or you commit another crime, you will have to go back to jail to complete the sentence on the robbery charge.

## Fines, Probation, and Payments to Victims

96. When judges sentence criminals, they can also fine them and force them to pay money to the court. Judges also have the power to release criminals on **probation** which means that the criminals are not in jail but must report regularly to a probation officer. Sometimes, the judge may force the criminal to pay the victim a certain amount of money for the loss suffered by the victim.

## Civil Law

97. Civil law settles disagreements between people and helps to protect their rights in many situations. If someone believes that a loss has been suffered because of the actions of another person, the first person can take the second person to civil court and **sue** for damages. The person who is suing is called the plaintiff, and the person who is being sued is called the defendant. A plaintiff can sue someone for breaking an agreement (contract), physical abuse, or damage to property. The plaintiff must prove that the defendant has caused the damage. Some other areas of civil law are buying and renting of houses, marriage and divorce, and the care of children.

---

### UNDERSTANDING WHAT YOU HAVE READ

#### Paragraphs 1—8

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Laws are
  - (a) rules that police make to keep law and order
  - (b) punishments that criminals receive when they commit crimes
  - (c) legal rules that are enforced by the police and the courts
  - (d) none of the above
2. A democracy means that
  - (a) people elect their leaders to make the laws for them
  - (b) one person makes the laws for the people
  - (c) a small group of rich people makes the laws for all the people
  - (d) there is only one political party in the country
3. Representatives are
  - (a) people who make laws that best suit them
  - (b) meetings of smart people who make rules
  - (c) symbols in a computer
  - (d) persons who are elected by the people



4. Values are
  - (a) fair prices on goods in stores
  - (b) beliefs which determine what people think is right or wrong
  - (c) parents, friends, churches, schools
  - (d) issues that governments refuse to make into laws
5. Issues are
  - (a) bought in stores by people who have colds
  - (b) agreements between people on certain matters
  - (c) important matters on which large numbers of people disagree
  - (d) people who try to influence the government
6. Pressure groups are
  - (a) machines used by divers when they dive into deep water
  - (b) groups of issues that some people think are important
  - (c) individuals who disagree with each other on how something should be done
  - (d) made up of individuals who work together to influence the government to pass a law
7. A compromise
  - (a) is a decision in which both sides achieve something but fail to gain everything they want
  - (b) tells a person in what direction to go
  - (c) is an answer that pleases only one group of people
  - (d) is a question that people find very difficult to answer

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

8. Voting is important because
  - (a) it is the best way to control taxes
  - (b) laws could not be made if people failed to vote
  - (c) it is illegal to stay home on election day
  - (d) it allows citizens to elect representatives to make laws
9. The Canadian Bill of Rights is important because
  - (a) it was passed by the Canadian government in 1960
  - (b) it gives Canadians valuable rights that can never be taken away from them
  - (c) it allows certain Canadians to treat other people unfairly
  - (d) it tries to have all people treated fairly

### Questions

10. Why do schools and businesses set times at which people must do certain things?
11. Why are people punished for breaking the laws?
12. What values are important to you?

### Paragraphs 9—16

#### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. Adolf Hitler | —won the federal election of 1980  |
| Joe Clark       | —a dictator and leader of the Nazis  |
| Pierre Trudeau  | —leader of the Progressive Conservative Party who lost the 1980 federal election |

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The legislative function of government is
  - (a) reading laws
  - (b) making laws
  - (c) defeating laws
  - (d) all of the above
3. Civil servants are people who
  - (a) wait on tables in restaurants
  - (b) are elected by the voters to all levels of government
  - (c) run for election but lose
  - (d) work for the three levels of government
4. The executive function of government is
  - (a) carrying out the law
  - (b) enforcing the law
  - (c) administering the law
  - (d) all of the above
5. The judicial function of government is
  - (a) breaking the law
  - (b) carrying out the law
  - (c) interpreting and explaining the law
  - (d) none of the above
6. Federalism means
  - (a) having two or more levels of government
  - (b) having one level of government for a country
  - (c) having a different government in each community
  - (d) a democratic system of government

7. The constitution of Canada
  - (a) is called the British North America Act
  - (b) is a law that tells how the country is ruled
  - (c) was written by the Fathers of Confederation
  - (d) all of the above
8. A veto is
  - (a) an object fired by a submarine to sink a ship
  - (b) a pizza place
  - (c) the stopping of something from happening
  - (d) letting something happen

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

9. Canada has three levels of government because
  - (a) it is a very large country
  - (b) there are many different people with different languages and backgrounds
  - (c) the provinces have very different interests and needs
  - (d) all of the above
  - (e) some of the above

### Questions

10.
  - (a) Who makes laws in Canada?
  - (b) What may Canadians do if they do not like the laws that are made?
11.
  - (a) Why is the power to collect taxes very important?
  - (b) Does the federal or a provincial government have the stronger taxing powers?

### Paragraphs 17—35

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Joe Clark —appointed three Senators from B.C., Alberta, and Saskatchewan to the Cabinet
- Edward Schreyer —head of British Commonwealth of Nations and Canada's monarch
- George VI —Governor General of Canada
- Pierre Trudeau —eldest son of Queen Elizabeth II
- Prince Charles —was defeated on a vote of non-confidence in the House of Commons
- Elizabeth II —the monarch before Queen Elizabeth II

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. A riding is
  - (a) Canada's national sport
  - (b) an area of Canada represented by a Senator
  - (c) an area of Canada represented by a civil servant
  - (d) an area of Canada represented by an MP
3. Bills are
  - (a) suggestions for new laws made in Parliament
  - (b) laws that are defeated in the House of Commons
  - (c) laws that are passed in the House of Commons and defeated in the Senate
  - (d) reminders of the money you owe
4. Debated means that the elected representatives
  - (a) ignored a bill
  - (b) defeated a bill
  - (c) discussed a bill
  - (d) opposed a bill
5. A majority is
  - (a) half and half
  - (b) more than half
  - (c) less than half
  - (d) all



6. It is a minority government when
  - (a) most of the people vote for a proposal
  - (b) less than half the people vote for a proposal
  - (c) only ten people vote for a proposal
  - (d) less than half the MPs are in the government party
7. A vote of non-confidence occurs when
  - (a) the opposition parties try to defeat the government in a vote in Parliament
  - (b) the opposition parties support the government party
  - (c) the government defeats the opposition parties in a vote in Parliament
  - (d) the government supports the opposition parties

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

8. A bill must be debated and passed by a majority of the MPs in the House of Commons because
  - (a) the people's elected representatives are responsible for making laws
  - (b) the people have to be given a chance to suggest changes in the bill to their MPs before it becomes law
  - (c) it would be unfair and undemocratic to let a minority of MPs pass bills into laws
  - (d) all of the above
  - (e) some of the above
9. There are so many civil servants in Canada because
  - (a) the politicians refuse to do all the work
  - (b) the people want the governments to provide many services
  - (c) the young people need the jobs
  - (d) all of the above
10. Judges are appointed and not elected because
  - (a) the Prime Minister knows best
  - (b) elections take too long
  - (c) judges should be separate from politics so that they can make fair decisions
  - (d) criminals might try to influence judges during elections

### Questions

11. What are the three parts of the federal parliament?
12. In which federal riding do you live and who is your MP?
13.
  - (a) Why do some countries appoint their judges?
  - (b) Why do some countries elect their judges?
  - (c) Which system do you think is better?

### Paragraphs 36—48

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Peter Lougheed —leader of a majority government in Alberta
- William Davis —has been the leader of a minority government in Ontario

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. By-laws are
  - (a) rules made by the federal government
  - (b) rules made by the municipal government
  - (c) rules made by the provincial government
  - (d) rules that allow you to get whatever you want in a store

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. The Premier and Cabinet Ministers of a province are responsible to the Legislative Assembly because
  - (a) they need the support of a majority of the MLAs to pass laws
  - (b) the MLAs could pass a non-confidence motion and force them to call an election
  - (c) MLAs who sit in the Legislative Assembly are elected
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

4.
  - (a) In which provincial riding do you live and who is your MLA?
  - (b) Which political party is the government party in your province?
  - (c) Who is the Premier of your province?
  - (d) Who is the Leader of the Opposition in your province and which political party does he/she lead?
5. How does a provincial bill become a provincial law?
6. Why is the Premier more powerful than the Lieutenant-Governor in a province?
7. When does a convict go to a provincial jail?

8. (a) What type of municipal government do you have in your community?  
 (b) Who is the elected leader of your municipal government and what position does she/he hold?  
 (c) Who are your councillors and trustees?
9. (a) What is the difference between property, income, and sales taxes?  
 (b) Which tax does the municipal government collect?

## Paragraphs 49—60

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Eligible means that
  - (a) a person has the right to do something
  - (b) a person does not have the right to do something
  - (c) means that a bachelor is about to get married
  - (d) someone is a citizen
2. A citizen
  - (a) has the right to vote at twenty-one years of age
  - (b) is an immigrant who has been in Canada for three years
  - (c) is a person who cannot vote because of a jail sentence
  - (d) has certain rights and responsibilities
3. Representation by population
  - (a) exists where there are different numbers of voters in ridings
  - (b) are candidates who are elected to the federal government
  - (c) are people who want the government to make certain laws
  - (d) exists where there are about the same number of voters in each riding
4. Candidates are
  - (a) people who are very honest in what they do
  - (b) people who are trying to be elected to a certain position
  - (c) elected politicians to the federal, provincial, and municipal governments
  - (d) people who are confused about something

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

5. Ridings are different in size because
  - (a) Canada is a very big country
  - (b) some areas in Canada are more important than other areas
  - (c) some areas have more people than other areas
  - (d) all of the above
6. An election campaign is important because
  - (a) voters can collect the buttons and pamphlets of the different candidates
  - (b) voters can find out how their neighbours are voting
  - (c) it makes candidates spend money
  - (d) it allows voters to find out what the candidates stand for
7. Leadership conventions are important because
  - (a) they allow party delegates from all over the country to help decide who will become party leader
  - (b) they provide good entertainment for all television viewers
  - (c) businesses who make posters receive a great deal of business
  - (d) all the voters in Canada can vote for the person they want to be party leader

### Questions

8. Do you think that election campaigns affect the way people vote?
9. (a) Do Canadians vote directly for the person they want as Prime Minister?  
 (b) How are the selections of a Prime Minister and Premier democratic?
10. (a) Why is it important for a political leader to be a good speaker?  
 (b) What other qualities are necessary for a good political leader and why?



## Paragraphs 61—64

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. Allan Blakeney — Liberal Prime Minister of Canada from 1896 to 1911
- Alexander Mackenzie — succeeded W.L. Mackenzie King as Liberal leader and Prime Minister of Canada
- Wilfrid Laurier — Liberal Prime Minister of Canada before Pierre Trudeau
- William Lyon Mackenzie King — Prime Minister of Canada from 1968 to 1979 and from 1980 to 1986
- Louis St. Laurent — the first Liberal Prime Minister of Canada
- Lester Pearson — a provincial leader of the NDP in Saskatchewan
- Pierre Trudeau — the person who was Prime Minister for longer than anyone else

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. People join political parties because
  - (a) everyone must be a member of a political party in Canada
  - (b) they want their political party to win so that their opinions will be made into laws
  - (c) all the political parties agree on certain things
  - (d) people have always joined political parties and they do not want to be different
3. The Liberal Party was in favour of lower tariffs because
  - (a) it wanted to increase trade between the U.S.A. and Canada
  - (b) it wanted closer relations with the U.S.A.
  - (c) it wanted to create more jobs for the Canadian people
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

4. List the names of the leaders of the Liberal Party who became Prime Minister of Canada.
5. Where does the Liberal Party receive most of its support?

## Paragraphs 65—66

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. John A. Macdonald — elected Prime Minister of Canada in 1879
- Joe Clark — the Conservative leader who was Prime Minister of Canada during the Great Depression
- Louis Riel — the first Prime Minister of Canada
- Robert Borden — the French Roman Catholic Métis executed in 1885
- R.B. Bennett — the Conservative leader who won 208 seats in the 1958 federal election
- John Diefenbaker — the Conservative leader who defeated Wilfrid Laurier in the election of 1957

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. In the past, Conservatives favoured high tariffs because
  - (a) they wanted to become popular in French Canada
  - (b) they wanted to protect Canadian goods from cheaper foreign goods
  - (c) they wanted Canadians to buy more British goods
  - (d) they wanted to be different from the Liberals

### Questions

3. (a) Where does the Progressive Conservative Party receive most of its support?  
(b) Why does the Progressive Conservative Party not receive strong support in the province of Quebec?

## Paragraphs 67—69

### Knowing The People

Write the names of the following people in your notebook. Beside each name, write the statement that best describes that person.

1. J.S. Woodsworth —leader of the Social Credit Party in B.C.  
Tommy Douglas —first leader of the CCF  
Ed Broadbent —elected leader of the New Democratic Party in 1975  
Bill Bennett —leader of the Parti Québécois  
René Lévesque —first leader of the federal New Democratic Party

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

2. The CCF was formed in 1932 because
  - (a) some people were bored with the old parties and wanted something different
  - (b) Tommy Douglas wanted to lead a new party
  - (c) some people were looking for new ways to solve the problems created by the Great Depression
  - (d) the Conservative Party wanted to change its name

### Questions

3. What did the CCF want to do if it was elected to power?
4. Which political party would you support and why?

## Paragraphs 70—83

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. An Ombudsman is
  - (a) a woman who is a friend of a man
  - (b) a Swedish superstar
  - (c) a friend of the people who investigates the provincial government
  - (d) a person who investigates charges of discrimination against the government

2. Discrimination means
  - (a) treating people of a different race unfairly
  - (b) people with a different religion are harassed by others
  - (c) paying men and women different wages for doing the same work
  - (d) treating immigrants from different countries in different ways
  - (e) all of the above

### Knowing Why

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

3. Peaceful demonstrations are allowed in Canada because
  - (a) people have freedom of assembly
  - (b) this is a good way for a large number of citizens to tell the government that they dislike a law
  - (c) this is a good way to win more public support for a cause
  - (d) all of the above
  - (e) none of the above

### Questions

4. When should citizens turn to a lawyer for help?
5. Why is it very important to know the powers and responsibilities of the three different levels of government?
6. Why would a federal civil servant be unable to answer your questions about high school graduation?
7. List the different people and groups to which you could turn if you had a problem with the government. To which one could you turn first and why?
8. What are the beliefs of a democrat?

## Paragraphs 84—88

### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Crimes are
  - (a) laws that the people consider to be unfair
  - (b) committed by the federal government
  - (c) actions against the government
  - (d) committed by Parliament



2. An arrest
  - (a) means that a person is under the control of a police officer
  - (b) occurs when something goes wrong with your car and it stops
  - (c) means that a police officer puts handcuffs on a suspect
  - (d) means that a policeman is illegally going against your rights
3. A court
  - (a) is a place where lawyers relax at the end of a long day
  - (b) is a place where people discuss their legal problems and try to learn more about their legal rights and responsibilities
  - (c) is a decision made by judges after they listen to the defence lawyer and Crown Attorney
  - (d) is a place where cases are tried
4. A jury
  - (a) is made up of judges and lawyers who decide if a person is guilty or not guilty
  - (b) helps a judge to find evidence to find someone guilty
  - (c) is made up of citizens who listen to the evidence of a legal case and make a decision
  - (d) is punished if they make a wrong decision in a legal case

### Questions

5. (a) What does the Criminal Code contain?  
(b) Why is it necessary to bring out a new Criminal Code each year?
6. (a) What must appear on a proper search warrant?  
(b) Under what circumstances can a police officer enter a home without a search warrant?  
(c) How is a writ of assistance different from a search warrant?

### Paragraphs 89—91

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Arraigned means that
  - (a) people are arrested by a police officer
  - (b) people are charged in Provincial Court
  - (c) people who have legal problems go to a lawyer
  - (d) a person has a long criminal record

2. Bail
  - (a) is a package of laws about which all Canadians must know
  - (b) is a list of crimes that a person has committed
  - (c) may occur when a person is released from jail until his appearance in court
  - (d) is given to people who are considered to be dangerous criminals
  - (e) all of the above
3. A verdict
  - (a) is a decision made by a criminal court
  - (b) is made by someone who has been found guilty
  - (c) means that a person is sent to jail
  - (d) is a person who has no criminal record
4. A preliminary hearing
  - (a) is held by a Provincial Court judge
  - (b) is held to see if there is enough evidence to bring the case to a higher court
  - (c) is held to save taxpayers' money and to prevent unnecessary embarrassment for the accused person
  - (d) all of the above

### Questions

5. In what court are all accused persons arraigned?
6. When will a person be released on bail?

### Paragraphs 92—97

#### Testing Your Vocabulary

Choose the best answer. Write the complete statement in your notebook.

1. Legal Aid
  - (a) helps people with medical problems
  - (b) pays witnesses for the time they miss work while at court
  - (c) helps people who cannot afford lawyers
  - (d) helps lawyers to recover money from people who refuse to pay their bills
2. An appeal
  - (a) takes place when the defence lawyer asks the jury to find the defendant innocent
  - (b) is made by the Crown Attorney when the verdict of a court is guilty
  - (c) is made when either the defendant or Crown Attorney asks a higher court to reject the decision made by the trial court
  - (d) all of the above

3. Parole
  - (a) means that a person is released from jail before serving his full sentence
  - (b) means that a person must report to a parole officer once released
  - (c) is given to a prisoner if his behaviour in jail has been good
  - (d) all of the above
4. Probation
  - (a) is the payment of a fine by criminals
  - (b) allows criminals to go free
  - (c) is money paid by the criminal to the victim
  - (d) all of the above
  - (e) none of the above
5. To sue means
  - (a) a person takes another person to civil court and tries to collect damages
  - (b) a person is charged in criminal court
  - (c) a defendant is arguing that the plaintiff owes him money
  - (d) a marriage has just taken place

### Questions

6. What jobs do the defence lawyer and the Crown Attorney have in court?
7. Will a trial take place if a person pleads guilty to a crime?
8. Why is the right to appeal a verdict important?
9. Do you think it is a good idea to make criminals pay money to their victims? Explain.

### DEVELOPING YOUR IDEAS AND SKILLS

1. Invite the President of the Student Council into your classroom and ask her/him the following questions.
  - What are the powers of the student government?
  - Does the student government have a constitution?
  - What controls exist on the decisions made by the student government?
  - How do students influence and control the student government?
  - How can a student become an active working member of the student government?
  - How can a student become Student Council President or an Executive Officer?
  - What are the jobs of a Student Council President and the Executive Officers?
  - Discuss your student government in class and compare it to other levels of government in Canada.

2. In a copy of the Canadian Criminal Code, find out the maximum penalties for the following crimes that could be committed by terrorists—murder, kidnapping, bank robbery, arson, and hijacking an aeroplane or ship.

### EXPRESSING YOUR IDEAS

1. Visit a government office of your choice. Some possibilities are: municipal offices, provincial Legislative Assembly, federal Parliament buildings, local office of a political party, local office of your MP or MLA, Board of Education offices, police department. Write or telephone before your visit. Prepare a list of questions that you would like to ask the government official(s) whom you meet. The questions will depend on the office which you visit. The following are a few questions to get you started:
  - For which level of government do you work?
  - How many people work in your department?
  - What is your job and what are your responsibilities?
  - From what law do you receive your authority and power?
  - How do your decisions affect the people in the community?
  - Who provides the money to the government that buys the equipment you use and pays your salary?
  - What does a citizen have to do to get a job with your department?
2. What are the laws that you would like to see changed? Write down one of them in your notebook and then explain how you could try to change it by (a) creating a pressure group, (b) joining a political party, and (c) holding a demonstration. For a planned demonstration you should do the following:
  - Ask the local police about the laws on public marches in your community.
  - Draw a map showing the route your group would march along.
  - Design some signs which you could carry.
  - Write some slogans which you could put on the signs or shout at the meeting.
  - Prepare a brief statement of your ideas or suggestions for the new law. This statement would be given to the political leader you are marching to see. The statement would also be given to the reporters covering your peaceful demonstration.



# INDEX

## A

Abbott, John, 66  
 Aberhart, William, 146, 147  
 Abyssinia, 158, 159  
 Acadians, 270, 271  
 Afghanistan, 197, 198, 213  
 Alaska Boundary Dispute, 88, 89  
 Alberta, 57, 76, 88, 102, 117, 135, 139, 146-148, 195, 196, 232, 233, 245, 246  
 aeroplanes, 98, 99, 120, 121, 158, 159, 162, 163, 166, 170, 174  
 aggressor, 158, 159  
 alcohol, 36, 101, 102, 127, 128, 132, 139  
 Allan, Hugh, 34, 35  
 alliances, 95  
 Allied Powers, 95, 113  
 annexation, 60, 90, 106  
 anti-semitism, 167  
 apartheid, 192  
 appeasement, 159-162  
 armistice, 109  
 arrest, 320  
 assassination, 95  
 Assembly, 8  
 assembly line, 121  
 assimilation, 13, 20, 21, 31, 86, 89, 106, 256, 257, 270, 271  
 atomic bomb, 166, 187, 209-211, 236  
 Avro "Arrow", 234  
 Auto Trade Pact, 220

## B

bail, 320  
 ballet, 285  
 Batoche, 53-55  
 Bell, Alexander Graham, 121  
 Bennett, Bill, 315  
 Bennett, Richard B., 119, 137-139, 148-150, 314  
 Bethune, Norman, 194  
 Big Bear, Chief, 53, 54, 56  
 bicultural, 31  
 bilingual, 266  
 bills, 300, 306, 307  
 Bill 22, 266  
 Bill 101, 267  
 Bishop, Billy, 99  
 Blake, Edward, 68  
 Blakeney, Allan, 313

blitzkrieg, 162-165, 172  
 blockade, 98  
 Boer War, 86-88  
 Bomarc missile, 236  
 books, 287, 288  
 bonds, 104, 170  
 Borden, Robert, 90, 95, 103-109, 314  
 Bourassa, Henri, 87-90, 105-107  
 Bourassa, Robert, 265-267  
 Bowell, Mackenzie, 66  
 boycott, 189, 192, 193, 198  
 branch plants (see foreign ownership)  
 bribery, 107  
 British Columbia, 32-34, 38, 102, 141, 146-148, 168, 221, 315  
 British Commonwealth, 138, 172, 191, 192  
 British Empire, 84  
 British North America, 8  
 British North America Act (B.N.A. Act), 23, 26, 299  
 Broadbent, Ed, 245, 313, 315  
 Brown, George, 11, 18, 36  
 budget, 236  
 by-laws, 308

## C

Cabinet, 35, 298, 301, 302, 304, 306, 307  
 Canada Council, 288  
 Canada East, 11, 13, 21  
 Canada West, 11-13, 20  
 Canadian Armed Forces: WWI 95, 97, 98, 101, 104-106, 108, 109; WWII 165, 166, 170, 172, 173, 238  
 Canadian Bill of Rights, 234, 297, 317  
 Canadian Broadcasting Corporation (CBC), 123, 221, 280, 281  
 Canadian Development Corporation (CDC), 216  
 Canadian Film Development Corporation (CFDC), 287  
 Canadian Labour Congress, 146  
 Canadian Opera Company, 285  
 Canadian Pacific Railway Company (C.P.R.), 46-48, 58, 59, 139  
 Canadian Radio Broadcasting Commission (CRBC), 221  
 Canadian Radio-Television and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC), 222, 280, 281  
 candidates, 34, 310  
 Cariboo Road, 32  
 Carr, Emily, 124  
 cars, 120, 122, 128  
 Carter, Jimmy, 197, 207  
 Cartier, George-Etienne, 13, 14, 18, 19, 21  
 Caouette, Réal, 236  
 censorship, 103, 157  
 Central Powers, 95, 113  
 Chamberlain, Joseph, 85  
 Chaput, Marcel, 239, 262  
 Charlottetown Conference, 18, 19  
 China, 194  
 Chinese labourers, 46, 47  
 Churchill, Winston, 163  
 citizen, 309-311, 315-319  
 civil law, 319, 323  
 civil servants, 35, 298, 304, 307, 308  
 Civil War (U.S.A.), 10  
 Clark, Joseph, 207, 245, 247, 298, 301-303, 315  
 closure, 233  
 coalition, 18, 108  
 Cold War, 187, 188, 209-211  
 collective bargaining, 115  
 Colombo Plan, 192  
 colonies, 8, 84, 214  
 Columbia River Treaty, 221  
 Committee for an Independent Canada (CIC), 215  
 communists, 109, 116, 138, 140, 141, 145, 157, 162, 164, 175, 194  
 compromise, 30, 87, 297  
 Confederation, 8, 18, 21-23, 32, 33, 262, 299  
 conscientious objectors, 108  
 conscription: WWI, 105-108, 116, 118, 119; WWII, 162, 171-174, 313  
 Conservative Party, 13, 34, 35, 57, 60, 66-68, 87, 90, 106, 107, 119, 120, 137, 139, 145, 148-150, 172, 234, 301, 302, 314, 315  
 constitution, 23, 248, 267, 299  
 convoys, 172

Co-operative Commonwealth Federation (CCF), 145, 146, 150, 172, 229, 230, 315  
 corrupt, 258  
 courts, 63-65, 298, 304, 305, 320  
 Crerar, Thomas, 117  
 criminal law, 319-323  
 Cross, James, 265, 319  
 Crown Attorney, 63, 322  
 crown corporation, 219  
 Cuban missile crisis, 210  
 culture, 123-125, 129, 170, 171, 221, 222, 260-262, 271, 279-281, 288  
 Currie, Arthur, 109  
 Czechoslovakia, 160-162

**D**

Davis, William, 307  
 deadlock, 14, 18, 189  
 defect, 187  
 defence lawyer, 63, 322  
 De Gaulle, Charles, 176, 263, 264  
 democracy, 155, 156, 296, 318  
 demonstrations, 318  
 depressions, 37, 42, 133-150  
 detente, 213  
 dictator, 155, 157-159, 297  
 Diefenbaker, John, 194, 207, 210, 211, 233-236, 242, 314, 315  
 Dieppe, 165  
 diplomat, 237  
 disallowance (see veto)  
 discrimination, 46, 102, 128, 167, 168, 279, 284, 297, 317  
 Dorion, A.A., 13, 21  
 Douglas, Tommy, 230, 236, 315  
 Doukhobours, 76  
 draft dodgers, 212  
 Drapeau, Jean, 193  
 drylanders, 71  
 Dumont, Gabriel, 54, 55  
 Dunkirk, 163  
 Duplessis, Maurice, 147, 171, 257-259

**E**

Egypt, 190, 191, 194  
 Eisenhower, Dwight, 165, 207  
 electricity, 123, 128  
 eligible voter, 309  
 embargo, 195  
 environment, 218, 266  
 Ethiopia (see Abyssinia)  
 European Economic Community, 209

Expo '67, 192, 193, 241  
 export (see trade)  
 executive function, 298  
 external affairs, 83, 89, 90, 162

**F**

fascism, 155, 157  
 Fairclough, Ellen, 233  
 family allowances, 230  
 farmers, 99, 116, 117, 120, 134-137, 145-149  
 Fathers of Confederation, 23, 26, 299  
 federal elections: 1867, 30; 1872, 34, 35; 1874, 36, 37; 1878, 42-44; 1887, 60; 1891, 60, 61; 1896, 66-68; 1911, 90; 1917, 108; 1921, 117-119; 1925 and 1926, 118, 120; 1930, 118, 137, 139; 1935, 119, 139, 146, 149-150; 1940, 172; 1945, 174, 230; 1949, 231; 1953, 231; 1957, 234; 1958, 234; 1962, 234; 1963, 236; 1965, 243; 1968, 243; 1972, 244; 1974, 244; 1979, 245, 301; 1980, 302  
 federal government, 19, 23, 103, 104, 116, 123, 127, 137, 147, 150, 168, 171, 216, 239, 260, 261, 299, 305  
 federalism, 299  
 feminists, 102  
 Fenians, 10, 20, 23  
 Fielding, W.S., 59, 60  
 filibuster, 67  
 Ford, Gerald, 207  
 foreign aid, 199  
 Foreign Investment Review Agency (FIRA), 216  
 foreign ownership, 78, 121, 122, 214-217, 288  
 free enterprise, 149  
 free trade, 9, 10, 37, 60, 83, 117, 221  
 Front de Libération du Québec (FLQ), 239, 244, 263, 265, 318, 319

**G**

Gordon, Walter, 215, 236, 238  
 Governor-General, 24, 26, 30, 35, 303, 307  
 Greenway, Thomas, 67-69  
 Group of Seven, 124, 289  
 guerrilla warfare, 54, 86, 197, 212

**H**

Halifax, 99, 106, 117  
 Hatfield, Richard, 270, 271  
 Hellyer, Paul, 238  
 Hitler, Adolf, 156-168, 297  
 House of Commons, 24, 25, 35, 300-302  
 Howe, Joseph, 12, 23, 30, 232, 233  
 Hudson's Bay Company, 30, 31, 46  
 Human Rights Commission, 316, 317  
 humour, 124, 125, 290, 291  
 hung jury, 63, 322

**I**

immigrants, 47, 76, 108, 120, 138, 167, 278, 279, 309  
 Imperial Council, 85, 86  
 Imperial Federation League, 84  
 Imperial War Cabinet, 107, 109  
 imperialism, 83, 94  
 Indians, 31, 37, 52-54, 56, 57, 234, 266, 278, 284  
 industrialization, 78  
 inflation, 104, 169  
 International Joint Commission, 90, 221  
 Iran, 196-198  
 isolation, 158  
 Israel, 190, 191, 194, 195

**J**

James Bay project, 266  
 Jesuit Estates Act, 58  
 Jews, 76, 157, 167, 194, 200  
 Johnson, Daniel, 261, 265  
 Johnson, Lyndon, 207, 212  
 judges, 298, 304, 305, 307, 319-323  
 Judicial Committee of the Privy Council, 232  
 judicial function, 298  
 jury, 63-65, 322

**K**

Kennedy, John, 207, 210, 211  
 Klondike Gold Rush, 77  
 Khomeini, Ayatollah, 197  
 King, W.L. Mackenzie, 117-119, 137, 150, 159, 162, 171-175, 207, 208, 230, 231, 314  
 Korean War, 189, 190

**L**

lacrosse, 281, 282  
 Laporte, Pierre, 265



Laurier, Wilfrid, 60, 66-70, 85-90,  
105-108, 118, 119, 313  
laws, 296, 297, 306, 319  
Leacock, Stephen, 124, 125  
Leader of the Opposition, 36, 118,  
301, 307  
League of Nations, 109, 158-160,  
174  
legal aid, 321  
Legislative Assembly, 305-307  
legislative function, 298  
legislative union, 19, 20  
Lenin, 109  
Lesage, Jean, 239, 259-261  
Lévesque, René, 245, 259, 260, 262  
263, 266-269, 315  
Lewis, David, 244, 245  
Liberal Party, 34-38, 57, 60, 66-70,  
88-90, 106-108, 118-120, 137,  
145, 150, 171-174, 247, 248,  
301, 302, 313, 314  
Lieutenant-Governor, 305  
Lightfoot, Gordon, 294  
Lougheed, Peter, 245-247, 307

## M

MacArthur, Douglas, 189  
Macdonald, John A., 12-14, 18-20,  
30, 33-35, 42-44, 46, 48, 52, 53,  
57-61, 66, 83, 139, 214, 314  
Mackenzie, Alexander, 35-38, 44,  
313  
MacPhail, Agnes, 128  
majority, 30, 300  
majority government, 118-120,  
233, 255  
Manchuria, 155, 158  
Manitoba, 31, 59-61, 66-69, 102,  
105, 117, 135, 146, 148  
Manitoba Schools Question, 66-69  
Mao Tse Tung, 194  
Maritimes, 22, 90, 117, 120, 135  
Maritime Union, 18, 19  
Marshall Plan, 188, 209  
Massey, Vincent, 232  
McClung, Nellie, 102  
media, 315, 316  
medicare, 239  
Meighen, Arthur, 107, 117, 120,  
139  
Mennonites, 37, 76  
Mercier, Honoré, 58-60  
Métis, 31, 32, 52-57  
middle class, 120, 128  
middle power, 177  
Middleton, General, 54, 55

militarism, 94  
Military Service Act, 107, 108  
minority, 20, 301  
minority government, 118-120,  
244, 255, 301  
monopoly, 59  
Morris, Alexander, 34  
Moslems, 195-197  
Mowat, Oliver, 59  
movies, 103, 121-124, 144, 157,  
170, 171, 287  
music, 123, 145, 284, 285  
Munich Conference, 161, 162  
municipal government, 308  
Mussolini, Benito, 155, 158, 159,  
166

## N

National Ballet of Canada, 285  
National Film Board of Canada  
(NFB), 287  
nationalism, 94, 124, 157, 188, 189,  
209, 257, 261, 262, 264, 284  
nationalist, 87, 95  
nationalized, 190  
national policy, 12, 42-48, 58-61,  
70, 117, 134, 214  
National Progressive Party, 117,  
120  
NATO, 188, 189, 209  
natural resources, 134, 155, 164,  
174, 214  
Naval Question, 87, 106  
neutral, 95, 210  
New Brunswick, 10, 14, 19, 20, 135,  
139, 148  
New Democratic Party, 146, 315  
Newfoundland, 22, 140, 148, 232  
Nixon, Richard, 207, 212  
Nobel Prize for Peace, 191, 237  
non-confidence, 35, 120, 301, 302  
NORAD, 210  
Northwest, 30, 31  
North West Mounted Police, 34, 52  
Nova Scotia, 14, 18-20, 30, 78, 106,  
107, 117, 141, 148  
nuclear weapons, 210, 211, 213,  
236

## O

obsolete, 210  
Official Languages Act, 243, 244,  
261  
oil, 195-197, 232, 233, 245-248,  
253, 254  
Olympic Games, 125, 126, 193, 198

Ombudsman, 316, 317  
Ontario, 59, 89, 105, 117, 118, 140,  
148, 172, 307  
OPEC, 195  
opera, 285  
opposition parties, 301, 302, 306,  
307

## P

Pacific Scandal, 12, 34, 35, 37  
painting, 124, 289  
Parliament, 24-26, 300  
parole, 323  
Parti National, 59  
Parti Québécois, 245, 262, 263, 267,  
268, 315  
pasteurization, 79  
patriotism, 105  
Pearl Harbour, 165, 208  
Pearson, Lester B., 190, 191, 207,  
211, 212, 236-242, 264, 314  
pensions, 229, 233, 239  
petition, 53  
Petro-Canada, 219  
pipeline debate, 232, 233  
plays, 285, 286  
plebiscite, 173  
pollution, 220, 221, 298  
Poundmaker, Chief, 53-56  
preliminary hearing, 321  
Premier, 298, 305-307, 312, 313  
pressure group, 297, 317, 318  
primary industries, 77  
Prime Minister, 30, 35, 298,  
301-304, 307, 312, 313-315  
Prince Edward Island, 22, 33, 148  
probation, 323  
Prohibition (see alcohol)  
profiteering, 104  
Progressive Conservative Party  
(see Conservative Party)  
propaganda, 103, 155, 157  
Provincial Conference, 60  
provincial governments, 305-307  
provincial rights, 59, 299

## Q

Quebec Conference, 19  
Quebec, 87-90, 106, 108, 139, 147,  
148, 171, 314, 315  
Quebec Resolutions, 20, 23  
Quiet Revolution, 259, 260

## R

radar, 164, 209, 210

radio, 120-123, 125, 145, 147, 149, 157, 171  
rationing, 169, 229  
rebellion, 30, 31  
reciprocity, 10, 14, 38, 60, 90, 106, 117  
Reconstruction Party, 149, 150  
referendum, 36, 232, 248, 267, 268  
Reformers (see Liberal Party), 11, 14  
refugees, 200, 201  
Reagan, Ronald, 207  
relief, 140-143, 148  
renewable energy, 219, 246  
representation by population, 11, 13, 20, 309  
representatives, 11, 296, 316  
reservations, 34  
revolution, 109  
riding, 36, 300, 309, 312  
Riel, Louis, 32, 52-57  
RIN, 262  
riots, 108, 318  
Roosevelt, F.D., 148, 174, 207, 208  
Roosevelt, "Teddy", 88  
Royal Canadian Mounted Police, 34, 52, 85, 116, 124, 138, 141, 144, 319  
Royal Commission on Bilingualism and Biculturalism, 239, 260, 261  
Ryan, Claude, 248, 268

## S

St. Laurent, Louis, 174, 187, 189, 207, 231-233, 314  
St. Lawrence Seaway, 220  
Saskatchewan, 76, 88, 102, 135, 140, 141, 146, 148, 313  
Schreyer, Edward, 303  
Scott, Thomas, 32, 52  
sculpture, 289  
secondary industries, 77, 78  
secret ballot, 37, 310  
Security Council, 189  
Senate, 24-26, 102, 106, 302, 303  
separatist movements, 30, 59, 60, 239, 245, 262-269  
settlement, 47, 48, 72-77  
shares, 133  
Sifton, Clifford, 71, 75, 76  
slavery, 10  
Smallwood, Joey, 232  
Smith, Donald, 46  
Social Credit Party, 146, 147, 150, 236, 315

socialism, 146, 149  
sovereignty-association, 268  
sports, 121, 123, 125, 126, 281-283  
Stalin, Joseph, 164, 175  
Stanfield, Robert, 235, 242-244  
Statute of Westminster, 162, 191  
Stephen, George, 46  
Stevens, H.H., 148, 149  
strategy, 96  
Sudetenland (see Czechoslovakia)  
Suez crisis, 190, 191  
suffragettes, 101, 125  
super-power, 187, 188, 213  
Supreme Court of Canada, 102, 150, 232, 304, 322

## T

tariff, 9, 44, 48, 53, 61, 116, 117, 120, 134, 137, 138, 214, 220, 246  
Task Force on Canadian Unity, 267, 268, 272  
technology, 9  
terrorists, 193, 194, 318, 319  
Third World, 188, 199-201  
Thompson, John, 66  
Tilley, Samuel, 14, 20, 23  
trade, 77, 134, 137, 150, 178, 313  
transcontinental railway, 44, 46  
Treaty of Versailles, 109, 153, 160  
Treaty of Washington, 83  
trench warfare, 97, 112, 113  
Triple Alliance, 94, 95  
Triple Entente, 94, 95, 109, 113  
Trudeau, Pierre, 207, 213, 242-245, 247, 259, 261, 264, 265, 298, 301-303, 314, 319  
Truman, Harry, 166, 188, 207  
Tupper, Charles, 12, 14, 20, 22, 66, 106

## U

unemployment insurance, 229, 244  
union, 79, 115, 116, 258, 259  
Union Nationale Party, 147, 234, 257-259, 261  
Unionist Party, 108  
United Nations, 174, 189-191, 206, 209  
unrestricted reciprocity, 60  
urbanization, 78

## V

values, 296, 297  
Van Horne, William, 46, 58, 79  
veto, 59, 60, 147, 174, 175, 299

Vietnam War, 211, 212  
Vimy Ridge, 97, 98  
volunteers, 87, 95, 105-108, 172

## W

wage and price controls, 244, 245  
Walkem, George, 38  
War Measures Act, 103, 168, 169, 244, 265, 319  
Warsaw Pact, 189  
welfare state, 230  
western Canada, 90, 115-117, 133, 139, 140, 315  
Wilson, Woodrow, 158  
Winnipeg General Strike, 115, 116, 146  
women, 99-103, 128, 129, 170, 231, 317  
Woodsworth, James, 116, 120, 146, 315  
workers, 104, 115, 116, 120, 134-138, 140, 141, 145-147, 150, 169

## Y

Yukon, 77



# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The publishers wish to acknowledge permission from the following for the use of photographs reproduced on the pages listed.

Academy of Medicine, 125; Atomic Energy of Canada Ltd., 200L; Bell Canada, 121; donated by office of Ed Broadbent, 116, 245; Canadian Forces, 209, 213, 236; Canadian Press, 126 (Ruth, Dempsey), 144 (Temple), 155, 157, 160, 161, 162, 164, 165, 166 (Marines, Nagasaki), 174, 177, 187, 188, 193, 194, 197, 201, 211, 231, 233, 244, 259, 263, 264, 265, 267, 280, 282 (Read, Henderson), 283, 284, 286 (Tremblay), 287 (Plummer, Sutherland), 288 (Roy), 289, 290, 310, 319; City of Toronto Archives, James Collection, 122B, 129L; Eaton's Archives, 128 ("The Eaton News", March 23, 1929); General Motors, 214; Glenbow Alberta Institute, 146, 278; *The Globe and Mail*, Toronto, Canada, 212; Macpherson cartoons, *Toronto Star*, March 3, 1970, 216; 240; Manitoba Archives, 31T, 56, 67, 116; McClelland and Stewart, 288 (Atwood, Berton); Metropolitan Toronto Library Board, 173; courtesy of Ted Michener, 222; Miller Services, cover, Richard Vroom, 93, 144 (McDonald and Eddy), 295; Ministry of Industry and Tourism, 186, 220; National Ballet, 286TL; National Film Board (NFB Phototheque), 245 (Lougheed), 262, 285 (Forrester), 286TR, 287 (Jutra), 300, 307; Thomas Nelson Company, *Picture History of Canada*, J. McEwen, K. Moore, "Confederation Days" by E.J. Dinsmore, 7; NORAD photo, 210; Novosti Press Agency, 109 (Lenin from painting by V.A. Serov); Ontario Archives, 59, 85, 120, 124, 144 (Grey Owl, Dionne quints); Ontario Hydro, 219; Provincial Archives of Alberta, 70, 74; Provincial Archives of British Columbia, 47 (#75088); Public Archives, 11 (C18737), 11 (31003), 12 (C686), 12 (8101), 13 (26375), 21 (74105), 23 (25465), 24 (C72924), 31B (8214), 36 (2C-96), 41 (C43905), 42 (C95470), 46 (3841, 8549, 4634), 54 (C7663, C17430, 28853, 12197), 58 (23361), 60 (C6536), 63 (C1879), 68 (C1971), 75 (C114143, C63482), 77 (C5391), 78 (C5394), 86 (C3477), 88 (C4956), 99 (1461, C18734), 101 (18863), 102 (30212), 104 (C29568), 106 (C694), 109 (1267), 117 (43102, C691), 122T (C36184), 123 (98735, C29468), 126 (50333—Catherwood, 50708—Conacher, Canadian Sports Hall of Fame); 128 (C21557), 139 (C7731), 141 (35137), 147 (C19526, 52393), 159 (C16766); 163 (C33446), 164 (52371), 166 (115124), 168 (C46355), 169 (108300), 170T (C75211), 170B (C81420), 189 (C692), 191 (C94168), 208 (C14169), 232T (C31327), 232B (C85165), 236 (110220), 237 (115206), 240 (117488), 242 (C27659, photo by Karsh), 243 (115205), 257 (C19522), 258 (C53643—*The Gazette*, Montreal), 261 (117469), 281 (C1633), 282 (112691—Scott), 312 (115204); R.C.M.P., 34; Saskatchewan Archives Board, 74, 229; Paul Till, 296; Ting Cartoons/M.R. Tingley, 210T; *Toronto Star*, 246 (photo by Doug Griffin), 314; Toronto Symphony Orchestra, 285; Toronto Transit Commission, 129R; United Church of

Canada Archives, 79, 279; United Nations, 175 (photo by M. Grant), 192, 200R; Vancouver Public Library, 141L (#12748), 172; *The Vancouver Sun*, 221.

The publishers wish to acknowledge permission from the following for the right to reprint extracts from published works.

112, *First World War*, R. Musman, page 32, Chatto and Windus; 113, *The Great War and Canadian Society*, D. Read, page 141, New Hogtown Press; 125, *Moonbeams From The Larger Lunacy*, S. Leacock, New Canadian Library, McClelland & Stewart Limited; 135, 140, *Ten Lost Years*, B. Broadfoot, Doubleday and Company; 136, 138, 141, *The Dirty Thirties*, edited by Michael Horn, 1972, Copp Clark Publishing Company; 138, quoted in *The Wretched of Canada: Letters to R.B. Bennett*, edited by M. Bliss, L.M. Grayson, page 13, University of Toronto Press, 1971; 147, quoted in *The Social Credit Movement in Alberta*, J. Irving, pages 252, 255, University of Toronto Press, 1959; 165, 183, *Six War Years*, B. Broadfoot, Doubleday and Company; 167, *I'm Still Living*, Chava Kwinta, Simon and Pierre, Toronto; 168, *Years of Sorrow*, B. Broadfoot, Doubleday and Company; 212, 217, 221, *As They See Us*, Walter Stewart, reprinted by permission of the Canadian publishers, McClelland & Stewart, Toronto; 226, Canadian Press; 226, 227, *The Globe and Mail*, Toronto; 230, *Mackenzie King of Canada*, Reginald Hardy, page 49, Oxford University Press; 238, *A Choice for Canada*, Walter L. Gordon, reprinted by permission of the Canadian publishers, McClelland & Stewart, Toronto; 253, 254, "Payoff in Oil", Scott Young, *Maclean's*; 263, "Mon Pays", Gilles Vigneault; 279, "The Stranger", Pauline Julien (translated by Philip Stratford), reprinted by permission from *Voice from Quebec*, P. Stratford, Van Nostrand Reinhold, Toronto, 1977; 291, *Canajan, Eh?*, M.M. Orkin, reprinted by permission, General Publishing Company Limited, Don Mills; 294, "Canadian Railroad Trilogy", © 1967 by Warner Bros. Inc. All rights reserved. Words by Gordon Lightfoot. Used by permission. All opinions given on pages 260, 266, 268, 271 are from the report of the Task Force on Canadian Unity.

EDITOR: Lou Pamenter

DESIGN: Jack Steiner Graphic Design

POLITICAL CARTOONS: Rob McPhail

MAPS: Sam Daniel

CARTOONS: Matti Korhonen

DIAGRAMS: Rick Eskins





# DATE DUE SLIP

DUE EDUC OCT 14 '85	APR 13 RETURN
OCT 09 RETURN	DUE EDUC APR 24 '88
DUE EDUC NOV 04 '88	APR 27 RETURN
NOV 04 RETURN	DUE EDUC OCT 25 '88
DUE EDUC JAN 18 '88	OCT 25 RETURN
JAN 17 RETURN	DUE EDUC APR 10 '89
<del>DUE EDUC JAN 25 '86</del>	APR 04 RETURN
R DUE EDUC JAN 25 '86	DUE EDUC APR 15 '89
JAN 23 RETURN	APR 11 RETURN
DUE EDUC FEB 20 '88	DUE EDUC OCT 26 '89
FEB 15 RETURN	OCT 14 RETURN
DUE EDUC MAR 21 '88	DUE EDUC DEC 23 '89
MAR 18 RETURN	
DUE EDUC MAR 23 '88	DEC 28 RETURN
MAR 24 RETURN	DUE EDUC NOV 18 '90
DUE EDUC APR 10 '88	NOV 13 1991 RETURN

FC 170 H98 1981 C-2  
HUX ALLAN D 1948-  
CANADA A GROWING CONCERN/

39574251 CURR



\*000011302726\*

FC 170 H98 1981 C. 2  
Hux, Allan D., 1948-  
Canada, a growing concern /

39574251 CURR



**B35429**

ISBN 0-88996-043-3